

EPiSERVER COMMERCE

Version 1 R2 SP2



User Guide

EPiSERVER

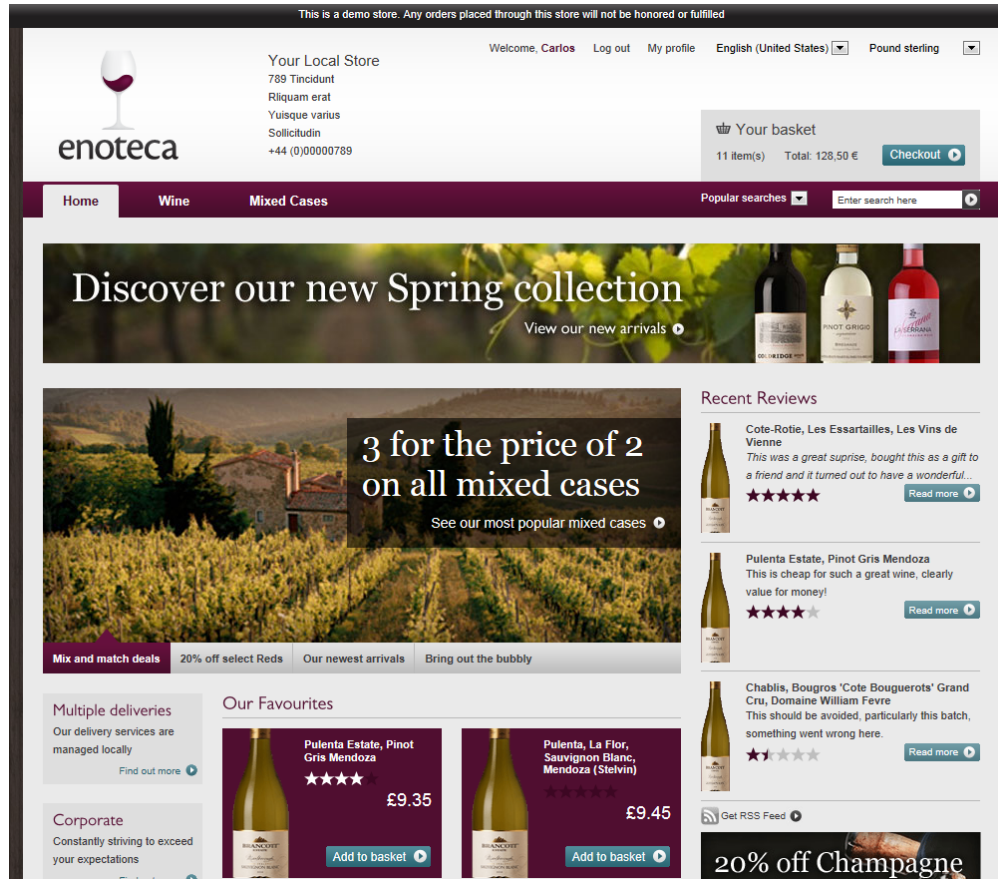
Table of Contents

Introduction	5
About This Documentation	5
How to Access EPiServer Help System	6
Online Community on EPiServer World	6
Copyright Notice	6
Terminology	6
About EPiServer Commerce	13
The EPiServer Platform	13
EPiServer Commerce	13
The EPiServer Commerce Sample Site	14
Function Overview	14
Roles	15
Shopping Workflow	16
Prerequisites	19
Getting Started	20
Logging in to the Website	20
Accessing the Different Modes	20
Logging in to Commerce Manager	21
Navigation	21
Access Rights	23
User Access for Commerce Manager	24
User Access for CMS	25
Globalization	27
Language Settings	27
File Management	30
Working With Files	30
Searching	32
Introduction	32
Accessing Search	32
How to Search	34
Displaying Search Results	35
Administering and Configuring Search	35
Search in EPiServer Commerce	35
Commerce Manager	36
Dashboard	36
Customer Management	38
Catalog Management	63
Order Management	111
Marketing	138
Asset Management	155
Reporting	163
System Administration	164
Adding Fields to Business Objects	168
Editing Fields of Business Objects	171
Adding a 1 to Many Relation	172
Adding a Many to 1 Relation	174
Adding a Many to Many Relation	176
Customizing an Existing Form	178
Editing the Layout of a Form	178

Adding Sections and Fields.....	179
Deleting Sections and Fields.....	183
Recreating a Form.....	184
Saving a Customized Form.....	184
Adding Contracts to an Organization.....	190
Sample Site.....	219
Display Templates.....	219
Sample Catalog.....	220
Page Templates.....	222
Tools and Plug-ins.....	252
Gadgets.....	255
Faceted Navigation.....	259
Tag Cloud Management.....	260
Personalization.....	262
Social Features.....	264
Newsletters.....	267
Payment Providers.....	267
Payment Providers Available with the Sample Site.....	268
Scheduled Jobs.....	269

Introduction

This is the **User Guide for EPiServer Commerce**, a state-of-the-art solution for building e-commerce websites. With EPiServer Commerce you can quickly create and deploy a flexible e-commerce website, combining powerful content display with advanced back-end online store management.



This User Guide provides guidance to the usage of the various functions of EPiServer Commerce, both within web store administration as well as content management for your website. The purpose of the EPiServer Commerce sample site, which is described here, is to provide an example of how you can work with EPiServer Commerce, in order to get your web store up and running in as little time as possible.

To find out more about how to integrate and extend the functionality of EPiServer Commerce, please refer to the *EPiServer Commerce Developer Guide*.

About This Documentation

Target Groups

The EPiServer Commerce documentation is intended for the target groups as described below.

- The **EPiServer Commerce User Guide**:
 - Web shop administrators working with online store procedures in EPiServer Commerce.
 - Content editors and system administrators working in EPiServer Commerce.

- The **EPiServer Commerce Developer Guide**:
 - Developers working with development and customization of EPiServer Commerce sites.
 - System architects and others with an interest in the technical features of EPiServer Commerce.

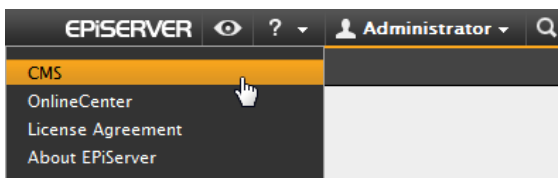
References

This documentation describes features in EPiServer Commerce. Features in other EPiServer products will not be covered here. Therefore, the following documentation available from world.episerver.com, may be useful for reference purposes:

- User documentation for editors of EPiServer CMS.
- User documentation for administrators of EPiServer CMS.
- User documentation for EPiServer Mail.
- SDK for EPiServer CMS and the EPiServer Framework (for developers).

How to Access EPiServer Help System

You can access the web help from the EPiServer OnlineCenter menu (which is always visible at the top). Click the ? icon and select the system for which you want to view the help. Browse or search for the topic where you need guidance.



- From each view in the user interface with a help icon provided, click the icon to get context-sensitive help.

You can also access the web help by browsing to webhelp.episerver.com.

Online Community on EPiServer World

EPiServer World is an online community where you can find the latest product information. It is open to the public, for partners, customers, and everyone working with EPiServer products, such as editors, webmasters, site owners and developers. Here you can download material, participate in discussions, read articles, receive support and much more. Feel free to sign up as a member.

Copyright Notice

Copyright © 1996 — 2011 EPiServer AB. All rights reserved.

Changes to the contents, or partial copying of the contents, may not be done without permission. The document may be freely distributed in its entirety, either digitally or in printed format, to all users of EPiServer Software. We assume no liability or responsibility for any errors or omissions in the content of this document. We reserve the right to alter functionality and technical system requirements. EPiServer is a registered trademark of *EPiServer AB*.

Terminology

In this section we will describe some of the specific terms used in e-commerce and EPiServer Commerce.

Editorial Content

Content such as articles or news, created by website editors through the EPiServer CMS editorial interface. Compare this to content that is displayed as pages on the website, but where the content itself is data fetched from Commerce Manager. This type of data cannot be only be edited in Commerce Manager.

Modes

You will work with EPiServer Commerce in different modes.

View mode

The content that will be displayed to visitors to the website. A visitor can be anonymous or logged in to a user account in View mode.

Edit mode

Editors will work in the EPiServer CMS Edit mode when creating and editing EPiServer CMS content pages of the website.

Admin mode

System administrators will work in the EPiServer CMS Admin mode to administer the system, for instance to modify system settings and access rights for the entire website.

Commerce Manager interface

Store administrators will access the Commerce Manager interface to manage online store data and activities. The Commerce Manager interface can be reached either from inside the EPiServer OnlineCenter, or directly from View mode when right-clicking in a page.

Roles

EPiServer Commerce has a number of different roles that are active in the editorial and online store management activities. These are described further in the following.

Visitor

A visitor is someone using a web browser to visit the website and use available functions and services. A visitor can register an account and become a customer when purchasing a product. Customers can update information related to their personal account. In EPiServer Commerce, visitors use the same login procedure to the website as site administrators, without getting access to the back-end functions.

Editor

The editor will work with website content from the EPiServer CMS Edit mode. Working with content here means create editorial content such as news, company related information, or articles on different subjects.

Store Administrator

The store administrator works in the Commerce Manager interface, with information related to customers, orders and products. Store administrators may also work with configuration of the Commerce Manager system settings.

System Administrator

The system administrator works with the administration of the entire EPiServer Commerce platform. This is done from the EPiServer CMS administration mode and involves setting access rights for pages, website language management and other tasks.

Commerce Manager roles

The Commerce Manager system has its own set of user roles covering the different tasks that online store managers work with. Order Supervisor, and Order/Shipping/Receiving Manager are examples of the role setup.

Roles are described further in the *Commerce Manager section under Customer Management*.

Commerce Manager Glossary

Application Configuration

- **Shipping Gateways** - under Shipping Providers, a shipping gateway is the specific class that you select (Generic Gateway or Weight/Jurisdiction Gateway).
- **Shipping Jurisdictions** - an option which allows you to define values for region-specific shipping rates; this is only used when you select the Weight/Jurisdiction Gateway (i.e. California).
- **Shipping Jurisdiction Groups** - group of jurisdictions; this is a required field when configuring the Shipping Method parameters (i.e. Southwest region).
- **Shipping Method** - a shipping method manages a set of information and rules that determines the shipping cost and displays it on the front-end public site while a customer checks out an item from his/her shopping basket. The shipping fee is added to the total price of the purchase. A shipping method is mapped to a shipping provider visible to a back-end administrator in Commerce Manager. This allows the public site to display friendly names such as "Ground Shipping" to the customer and this is mapped to a provider such as UPS. Therefore, when a customer picks "Ground Shipping," he/she will be using UPS.
- **Shipping Providers** - a shipping provider is the class(es) that interacts directly with one or more actual shipping services such as USPS, UPS, or FedEx. It retrieves shipping price information from the shipping service(s) its associated with. One typical scenario would be to have a provider that represents a particular service (e.g. USPS). A provider can also represent a particular type of shipping situation. One example is that you could have a provider for overnight delivery. The provider could retrieve pricing for that service to determine the lowest price given the location of the customer. A provider could also represent other specific scenarios with one or more services such as price by weight or ground shipping.

Business Foundation

- **Business Foundation Object (BF Object)** - similar to a meta class; allows end users to create custom objects with UI presentation, business objects, and a database layer without modify code.
- **Bridge** - a "many to many" or N:N relationship between two business objects.
- **Extension** - this allows you to extend an existing meta class with extra properties. For example, you can have a download class and you can extend it with "imagedownload" which contains width and height as extra parameters.
- **Field Type** - the type of data that the data field supports. There are multiple types included with Commerce Manager out of the box:
 - Boolean
 - Currency
 - DateTime
 - Dictionary items
 - File
 - Guid

- Integer
- Referenced Field (read-only)
- String
- **1 to Many Relationship** - 1 object can be associated or related with multiple object-related data. For example, one organization can be associated with multiple contracts.
- **Many to 1 Relationship** - multiple object-related data can be associated or related with a single object. For example, multiple contacts can be related to a single organization.
- **Many to Many Relationship** - multiple object-related data can be associated or related with multiple objects. For example, different SKUs (Store Keeping Unit) can be associated with one or more Warehouses for tracking and storage.

Catalog Management

- **Assets** - downloadable contents such as documents, links, videos, and images that can be linked to specific products.
- **Associations** - one or more products can be related to or associated to another product so that these associated products can be displayed or advertised on the public site as a product accessory, or as an upselling/cross-selling item. Associations can be made from any of the individual products (Product Entries, SKUs, Bundles, Packages, and Dynamic Packages).
- **Catalog** - a catalog is a top-level container for all catalog entries such as Categories, Products and SKUs.
- **Category** - a category is a grouping of purchasable products.
- **Node** - a node is the same thing as a category.
 - **Product** - a product represents various forms of merchandise that you can display and purchase from the public site, including Products, Variations/SKUs, Bundles, Packages and Dynamic Packages.
 - **Product Entry** - a product entry typically contains a product name, part number, description and images.
 - **Variation/SKU** - a variation or SKU (Store Keeping Unit) corresponds to a specific type of product with specific characteristics. For example, a product of Shirts will have an individual variation/SKU which includes size, color and sleeve length.
 - **Bundle** - a bundle is a collection of variations and SKUs allowing customers to purchase two or more items at once.
 - **Package** - a package is comparable to an individual SKU because the package item must be purchased as a whole (i.e. computer system).
 - **Dynamic Package** - a dynamic package is similar to the package definition above with the added ability to configure the package during checkout.
- **Tax Category** - the separation of taxes by category allows you to charge a different rate of taxes depending on what is being purchased; for example, you can have one rate for "General Sales" items and another rate for "Luxury Sales" items.

Customer Management

- **Account** - a user account that can be created under a Contact. Once an Account has been created, the Contact can be assigned Roles and access the Commerce Manager. A user account is automatically created for a user who registers from the front-end public website which allows a customer to login prior to checking out. They default to the "Everyone" and "Registered" roles and permissions.

- **Contacts** - these are users that are created either when an external customer registers on the public site or when a Commerce Manager admin creates them directly from the Commerce Manager; typically, users that are internal to your organization are assigned to organizations or organization units and assigned varying permissions based on role. By default, new users that are created by registering from the public site are given the "Registered" and "Everyone" roles.
- **Organizations** (or organization units) - groups or sub-groups of registered users and customers. An organizational unit is a "child" or subsidiary of a "parent" organization. Within Commerce Manager, you can assign an organization as a parent of another organization. For example, the parent company Company X, and the organizational units are Company X West and Company X East. Organization units include regional branches or departments or you could name them by business categories such as "Computer and Electronics" or "Clothing and Accessories." Organizations can be structured into a tree structure with sub-units with different levels of permissions assigned to each. So for example, you can set up your company as a parent level organization while your departments such as Sales & Marketing, IT/Development, and Operations as organization units. With this scenario, you can allow users in each departments to have access to only relevant sub-systems, screens and functionality within Commerce Manager.
- **Roles** - these control the level of access privileges of each user account in Commerce Manager. Users can be either granted or restricted access to an entire subsystem or a particular menu item within a subsystem based on the role assigned to them. Different roles may be added to user accounts (i.g., store operator or webmaster) so that they can access, edit, or process relevant information. By default, a customer who registered his/her account to make a purchase in the front-end site will have no roles assigned to them, hence giving him/her preventing access to both the editing feature of the front-end site as well as the back-end Commerce Manager.

Marketing

- **Campaigns** - a way to organize marketing activities. Campaigns must be associated with Promotions in order to provide customer discounts. Optionally, Campaigns can also be tied to Customer Segments for targeted marketing purposes.
 - For example, you can create a seasonal campaign that will include different Promotions targeted for the Spring season.
- **Customer Segments** - determine the target audience for the Promotions. Customer Segments determine the target audience for the Promotions. Within a Campaign, all Promotions will be applied to whatever Customer Segments associated with the same Campaign. Members of the Customer Segments can be pre-defined in static groups or you can use the Expressions Engine to create dynamic groups whenever Promotions are run.
 - For example, you can have a Customer Segment that targets all users from the Los Angeles area. You can create an Expression that will include all the customers whose home city is Los Angeles. Thus, when a user registers on the site he immediately becomes part of the target Customer Segment.
- **Expressions** - these are customizable Conditions which allow users to extend different aspects of the Marketing system -- Promotions, Customer Segments and Policies all rely on Expressions. There is an Expressions Engine which is a core technology behind the Marketing system.
 - For example, you want to set a Promotion for "40% off Item X." The Expression or Condition to enable this Promotion would include: Catalog ID for Item X and Reward of 40%.
- **Policies** - rules that are always executed when Promotions are applied. This allows a Marketing manager to declare rules just once for the whole site.
 - An example of a rule is as follows: Do not allow negative orders.

- **Promotions** - a way to apply various discounts to the products, order totals or shipping. A Promotion is a marketing tool used to increase sales of certain products or product lines. Various incentives such as lowered pricing and other discounts can be employed as part of a Promotion.
 - Promotions are always tied to Campaigns.
 - Promotions can be classified into two types: 1) either you can create a Promotion that is visible prior to checkout or 2) you can configure the Promotion to be displayed during the checkout process.
 - The most powerful aspect of the Marketing system is the Expression Engine which allows variable conditions to be applied when creating a Promotion. These conditions vary from the number of items, the percentage discount, shipping rates and many others.

Order Management

- **Browsing and Creating Purchase Orders**
 - **Purchase Orders** - the manual method of generating an order for a customer (rather than having the customer checkout and complete an order from the front-end website). It allows Commerce Manager users to generate orders directly from the Commerce Manager.
 - **Status** - can be set for an order to "NewOrder," "Submitted," "Processing," "Canceled," "Rejected," "Shipped".
 - **Currency** - select a Currency type from the drop-down menu.
 - **Customer** - select a Customer from the drop-down list of Contacts.
 - **Billing Address** - select a Billing Address from the drop-down menu.
 - **Affiliate** - select an Affiliate from the drop-down list. (Affiliates can be used when integrating with other systems and can only be edited in the database. Users do not have Commerce Manager access for managing Affiliates).
 - **Tracking Number** - used for tracking shipment of orders, enter in a Tracking Number of the shipment.
 - **Expiration Date** - enter in an Expiration Date for the order, used if this order is tied to a recurring payment plan for subscription-based transactions.
 - **Parent Order Id** - this can be used to relate Purchase Orders to a payment plan or other order. When creating a Purchase Order from a Recurring Payment Plan, the Parent Order ID is automatically associated with the Payment Plan ID.
 - **Line Items** - you can associate actual Products/SKUs/Packages/Bundles to orders or Purchase Orders.
 - **ID** - it is automatically generated.
 - **Display Name** - this can be edited and changed.
 - **List Price** - enter in the price that will appear for the item.
 - **Discount** - enter is the Discount value that will subtract from the List Price.
 - **Shipping Address** - This is automatically generated if a Shipping Address has already been associated with the Purchase Order.
 - **Shipping Method** - This is automatically generated if a Shipping Address has already been associated with the Purchase Order.
- **Creating a Recurring Payment Plan**
 - **Recurring Payment Plans** - payments that are initiated by the Commerce Manager on a regular cycle (i.e. applicable in a subscription-based scenario).

- **Plan Cycle** - this determines the period of time that a payment plan will be initiated. Options include: "No Cycle," "Daily Cycle," "Weekly Cycle," "Monthly Cycle," "Yearly Cycle."
- **Cycle Length** - Unit of the PlanCycle.
- **Max Cycle** - the maximum number of cycles that this payment plan will be initiated.
- **Completed Cycles** - this value displays the number of times that this payment plan has been initiated.

Reporting

- **Best Sellers Report** this report is used to determine which products sold the most in terms of quantity and total revenue over a period of time.
- **Low Stock Report** - this report is used to determine which products are running low in inventory. If a product's inventory is less than its reorder minimum quantity, it will be included in this report.
- **Sales Report** - this report provides an overview of a site's sales performance over a period of time.
- **Shipping Report** - this report provides the shipping method, number of orders and total shipping cost over a period of time.

About EPiServer Commerce

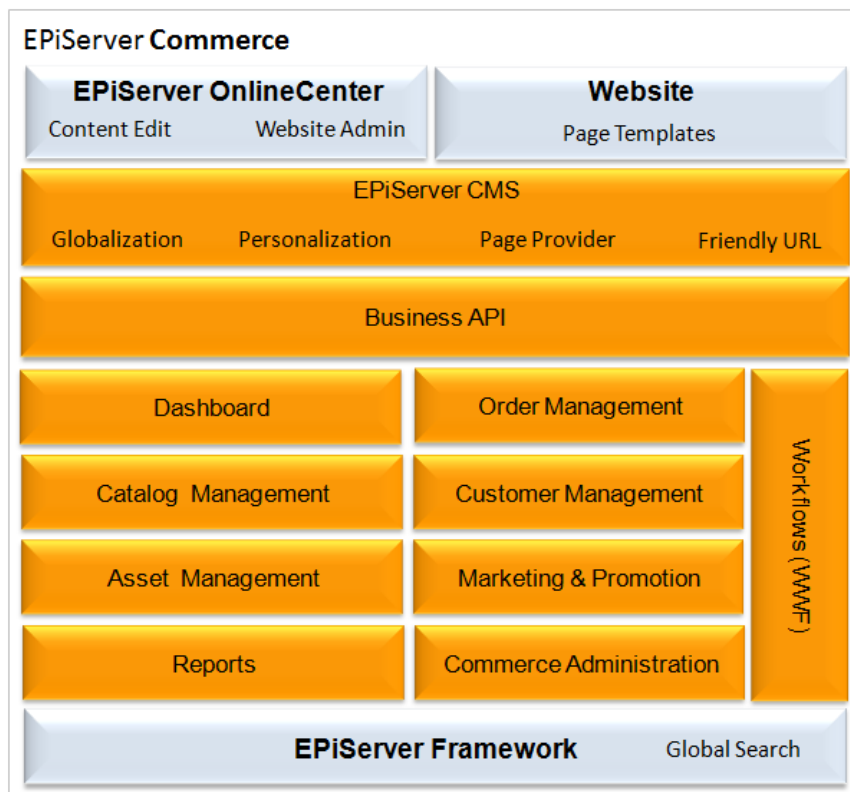
The foundation of the EPiServer Commerce platform is an **e-commerce core** for web store management, and **EPiServer CMS** for content presentation.

The EPiServer Platform

The EPiServer platform contains common functionality shared by all EPiServer products:

- **OnlineCenter** - "entrance" to the website dashboard and integrated systems, with gadgets and access to website edit/admin interfaces.
- **Website** - page types and templates for content display.
- **Framework** -data storage and global search.

EPiServer Commerce



EPiServer Commerce contains the following parts:

- Complete **commerce management** features:
 - Business API for integration
 - Workflows based on Windows Workflow Foundation (WWF)
 - Commerce dashboard for sales monitoring
 - Order, Catalog, Customer and Asset Management
 - Marketing & Promotion
 - Reporting functionality
 - Administration interface

- **EPiServer CMS** providing content management functions such as globalization, personalization and page providers for product display.
- A set of **page templates** with examples of how to display content and illustrate e-commerce procedures for both B2B and B2C businesses.

The EPiServer Commerce Sample Site

EPiServer Commerce comes with a sample site including a complete set of page templates containing all the necessary functions for setting up a website with an online store. The purpose with the sample site is to exemplify and illustrate the code behind the templates, and to provide inspiration when building your own e-commerce solution.

Function Overview

This section provides an overview of the functionality of EPiServer Commerce. The main parts of EPiServer Commerce are **Commerce Manager** - for administration of back-end online store tasks, and **EPiServer CMS** - for managing and displaying website content.

Store Management

System Administration and Configuration

System Administration includes various configuration tasks such as setting up shipping and payment gateways, your default language, currency, units, tax configuration, licensing, and search settings.

- *System Administration*

Administrative Users and Customers

Users and customers are managed by the Customer Management system. Users are internal to your organization and should not be confused with customers, partners and organizations. Generally, only your team of internal users will have access to the Commerce Manager and depending on their permissions will have varying access to the systems and menu items within each system.

- *Customer Management*

Catalogs and Product Entries

A Commerce Manager front-end site allows customers to shop for products. Products are arranged into a particular catalog. Catalogs are independent from one another and you may create as many catalogs as you need. Catalogs can be structured in a number of ways and organized into Categories, Products, SKUs, Bundles, Packages and Dynamic Packages.

The Catalog Management system provides users with the ability to manage catalogs, product categories and products. A default B2C Sample Site along with a default electronics catalog (consisting of a Brands catalog + Everything catalog) is included giving you a running demo site after you run the installer.

- *Catalog Management*

Purchase Orders, Shopping Carts, Shipping, and Returns/Exchanges

The Order Management system is where you can monitor, track, change or create new orders, ship out items, and create returns/exchanges. Orders are highly flexible, giving internal Commerce Manager users the ability to create Purchase Orders with various options including split payments, split shipping, and split shipping addresses.

- *Order Management*

Customer Campaigns, Promotions, and Discounts

One area handled by the Marketing system is promotions. A Promotion is a marketing tool used to increase sales of certain products or product lines. Various incentives such as lowered pricing and other discounts can be employed as part of a promotion.

Promotions can be classified into two types: either you can create a promotion that is visible prior to checkout or you can configure the promotion to be displayed during the checkout process. The most powerful aspect of the Marketing system is the Workflow Engine which allows variable conditions to be applied when creating a Promotion. These conditions vary from the number of items, the percentage discount, shipping rates and many others.

Creating custom promotions is incredibly powerful; users have many ways in which to configure promotions based on their needs.

Marketing teams also have the ability to target specific customer segments by region, individual customers or customer groups.

- *Marketing*

Assets and Web Files

The Asset Management system allows for Assets including images, MP3s, PDFs, software packages and other downloadable files to be centrally stored, displayed on either the public site or the Commerce Manager site and ultimately to be shared or purchased.

- *Asset Management*

Content Management

Editing Content

Web editors will work inside the EPiServer CMS editorial interface to update content of web pages. Perhaps you want to create news or article content related to the products in your online store. This is most typically done by web editors creating EPiServer CMS pages.

The EPiServer Commerce page types in the sample site do not require much editorial work, since most of these are only for display purposes fetching data from elsewhere. Some editorial efforts are often needed on content pages such as news listings, privacy and shopping policies and similar.

Administering the Website

The EPiServer CMS administration interface is where you will manage the administrative tasks for the website. These may involve setting access rights for EPiServer CMS web pages in the page tree structure, configuration of page types, management of scheduled jobs, and globalization settings.

For more information on the functionality and how to use EPiServer CMS, refer to the user documentation for *EPiServer CMS*.

Roles

E-commerce solutions with online stores can be set up in many different ways, depending on the purpose they serve. An EPiServer Commerce sample installation is based on a setup of certain roles with specific tasks and access rights. The description in this documentation reflects these roles in order to make it easier to understand the underlying work procedures.

Visitor

A **visitor** in EPiServer Commerce is someone using a web browser to visit the website with purchasing intentions ("shopper"). In a standard installation of EPiServer Commerce (B2C), purchasing can be done either anonymously or by registering an account. Registered visitors can also rate and comment on products.

Store Administrator

The **store administrator** works in the Commerce Manager interface, with information related to customers, orders and products. Store administrators may also work with configuration of the Commerce Manager system settings. Depending on how the organization is set up, the store administrator role may be sub-divided into sub-roles in Commerce Manager, with specific access rights and tasks:

- **Order Supervisor** - full permission for the entire order management.
- **Order Manager** - creates returns and exchanges, edits orders, sends notifications, processes payments and split shipments.
- **Shipping Manager** - handles packing and completion of shipments.
- **Receiving Manager** - handles shipments and returns.

System Administrator

In the Commerce Manager back-end system, this **administrator** role has extensive administration rights in areas such as assets, catalogs, core functions, marketing and customer and order management.

Website Administrator

The **website administrator** is someone responsible for administrative tasks for the website, including the setting of access rights for editors on the website. Usually has full access to both the editorial and administrative interfaces in EPiServer CMS.

Website Editor

Someone creating and editing content on the website with access to the editorial interface. **Editors** can be either frequent editors or occasional editors, and they may or may not have publishing rights.

Website Owner

The **website owner** is someone with an overall responsibility for one or more websites. Creates content occasionally, approves and publishes content created by others, and uses OnlineCenter and gadgets to monitor website activities. May also be a marketer with a market perspective.

Refer to *Access Rights* for more information on access rights for different roles in Commerce Manager.

Shopping Workflow

There are many different types of e-commerce websites, however the two most common ones are:

- **Business-to-Consumer (B2C)** - typically designed for selling goods and services to consumers.
- **Business-to-Business (B2B)** - used to build strategic relationships with other businesses, and to ease the supply and procurement processes that characterize trade among those organizations.

Sites can also have multiple roles, and a single EPiServer Commerce site can provide several functions. EPiServer Commerce is a flexible platform allowing for seamless integration with external systems such as financial, CRM, inventory, warehouse and customer service systems.

Depending on how you choose to work with editorial content and your online store administration, you will define your user roles and groups, and give them access rights to the different parts. Example of user roles in EPiServer Commerce are content editors, marketers, business owners, and store and system administrators.

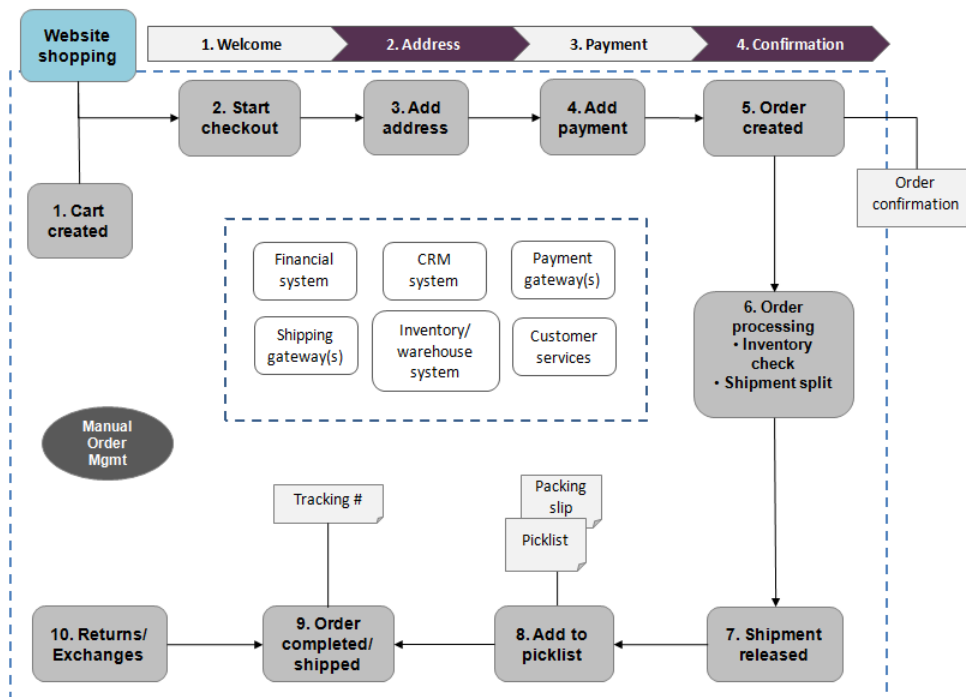
Step-by-Step Process

A typical "shopping workflow" involves a number of interactions between a "shopper" on the website, EPiServer Commerce, and any integrated external system.. Depending on how the system is set up, the

shopping workflow can be fully automated so that it requires little manual attention. However, a purchase order can always be monitored, accessed and handled manually from the **Order Management** part of Commerce Manager if needed.

In the following we will describe an example of a shopping workflow and the actions and tasks involved. This example is mainly based on a standard installation of EPiServer Commerce, which is a B2C type of e-commerce site.

Shopping Process



1. Cart created

In this example, a shopper does not need to register on the site in order to buy. The order process actually starts as soon as the shopper selects a product and adds it to a shopping cart. A **cart** will be created and saved in the system, and can be viewed in Order Management under "Carts". If the shopper doesn't complete the checkout procedure, the cart will remain in the system for a specified time.

When the shopper returns to the website, the cart will be "remembered" and made available for continued shopping. Already in this early step the system will perform an **inventory** and **pricing** check, to look for availability in the **warehouse**, as well as **discounts** for selected products in the cart. This will be updated if and when the shopper returns to the cart at a later stage.

2. Start checkout

When the shopper decides to complete the purchase and chose to "proceed to checkout", the first step of the **checkout** procedure is initiated.

3. Add address

In the second step of the checkout procedure, the **shipping and billing address** information is added together with the preferred type of delivery (First class/Express etc). The address information can be entered manually by an "anonymous" shopper, or automatically if the shopper is logged in and has a registered user profile with address information. The system can also be set up so that it is possible to **split shipments** in different parts and to different addresses here.

4. **Add payment**

In step three of the checkout procedure, the **payment** is added to the "purchase order to be". The system will calculate the total sum including the purchase amount and the **shipping fee**. In this step the shopper selects a payment method, for instance by credit card or PayPal. The payment will be registered and verified. This may happen instantly or after a certain specified time, depending on how the payment process is set up and the type of e-commerce solution (B2C or B2B). In this step it is also possible to **split payments**, if the system is configured for this.

5. **Order created**

Usually the actual **purchase order** is created in the system when the payment is settled. In the last checkout step, a purchase order number is created, the shopper confirms the purchase, and an order confirmation is sent to the shopper. The shopping cart is now converted to a purchase order which is visible with status "In Progress" under "Purchase Orders" in Order Management.

6. **Order processing**

When the order is created the order processing starts. This consists of steps to check the warehouse and inventory status for the products in the order, and for creating the actual **shipment**. Depending on the inventory status for the products, the order may be split into more than one shipment.

7. **Shipment released** - when the shipment is verified, it will be **released**. The purchase order will now appear in Order Management, under "Shipping/Receiving" and "Released for Shipping".

8. **Add to picklist**

This steps involves the addition of the shipping items to a **picklist**. The picklist is the list that the warehouse will use to create the **physical shipping** of the products in the order. This step will also produce a **packing slip**, which is the paper slip that will be attached to the physical package to be shipped.

9. **Order completed/shipped**

When the picklists with the different orders and their respective packing slips have been created, the order will be set to **completed**. In the system this involves the creation of a shipment validation number which is associated with **tracking number**. The tracking number can be entered manually or automatically, if such an integration exists. The tracking number connects the physical package with the shipping provider for the delivery, and is used for tracking the package on its way to the delivery address. The purchase order will now appear in Order Management under "Purchase Orders" again, with status "Completed".

10. **Return/Exchanges**

Only completed orders can be subject to **returns/exchanges**. Depending on how the system is set up, returns can be created automatically or manually. Creating a return usually involves replacing a delivered product with another one in **exchange**, and/or a payment **refund**. When the return is created it will appear in Order Management under "Shipping/Receiving" and "Returns". Order status can be for instance "Awaiting Exchange".

If the return involves replacement of a new product, the shipping procedure will be initiated again. The return may also involve receiving a faulty product, in which case a receiving procedure is initiated involving the acknowledgement of a receiving receipt for the returned product.

Integration with External Systems

EPiServer Commerce is a flexible platform built for integration with other business systems needed in an e-commerce environment. These systems are typically integrated with various parts of the shopping workflow, for exchange of data with EPiServer Commerce.

Examples of such external systems:

- **Financial system** - for instance invoice management, payment refunds, and sales reporting.
- **CRM system** - for management of customer profiles and address information.
- **Payment gateways** - the setup of different payment solutions for instance credit cards and PayPal.
- **Shipping gateways** - the management of shipping providers and exchange of tracking information.
- **Inventory/Warehouse system** - exchange of inventory information in connected warehouses.
- **Customer Services** - exchange of for instance order status information.

Prerequisites

This documentation is intended for website editors, and store and system administrators. The documentation describes a **sample installation** based on the sample template package of EPiServer Commerce. Please be aware that your specific system may differ from what is described here, since your website is most likely customized and may be integrated with additional systems.

Getting Started

In the following sections we will describe how you can access, log in to and navigate an EPiServer Commerce website. Note that the login procedures may be slightly different from what is described here, depending on how your website and infrastructure is set up.

Logging in to the Website

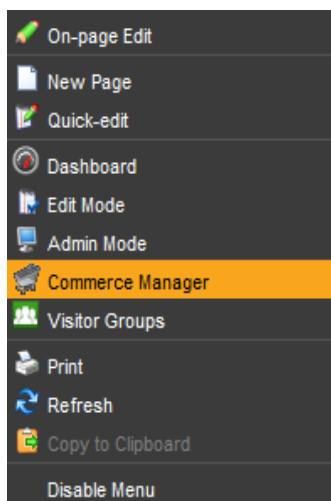
To access the website, open a web browser and enter the address of the website. Most often, Commerce Manager is accessed through the front-end of the EPiServer CMS site. There are different ways of logging on as an editor or administrator of an EPiServer Commerce site. Often you add a path such as "epi/ui/edit" or "epi/ui/admin" to the URL of your website, or there might be a login link as for the EPiServer Commerce sample site.

On the EPiServer Commerce sample site, clicking **Log In** in the top menu will take you to the login page of the website. Enter your user name and password, and click **Log In**. Note that this login page is the same for both customers logging on to their account, as well as for web editors and store administrators logging on to work with content or administer the online store parts. What you are allowed to do after logging on to the website depends on your access rights.

Accessing the Different Modes

When you are logged on to your EPiServer Commerce website, right-clicking on a page will display a menu with a number of options. What you see here depends on your access rights, here we assume that you have full permission to the different parts.

From the EPiServer right-click menu you can directly access the **Commerce Manager** module of EPiServer Commerce. Choosing this option will take you directly to the Commerce Manager administration interface. Selecting the **Edit** or **Admin** mode will take you to the EPiServer CMS editor or administration interface. If you select **Dashboard** you will be taken to the Dashboard of the EPiServer OnlineCenter.



For the other options available, please refer to the EpiServer CMS user documentation.

Logging in to Commerce Manager

You can access Commerce Manager through right-clicking in View mode after logging in to the website, and then select **Commerce Manager** in the right-click menu. You can also select **Commerce** in the top menu when you are in the EpiServer Online Center or from the EpiServer CMS Edit mode.



You may be required to provide your logon credentials once more when accessing the Commerce Manager module. When you log in you will be taken to the **Commerce Manager Dashboard Home** page.

Navigation

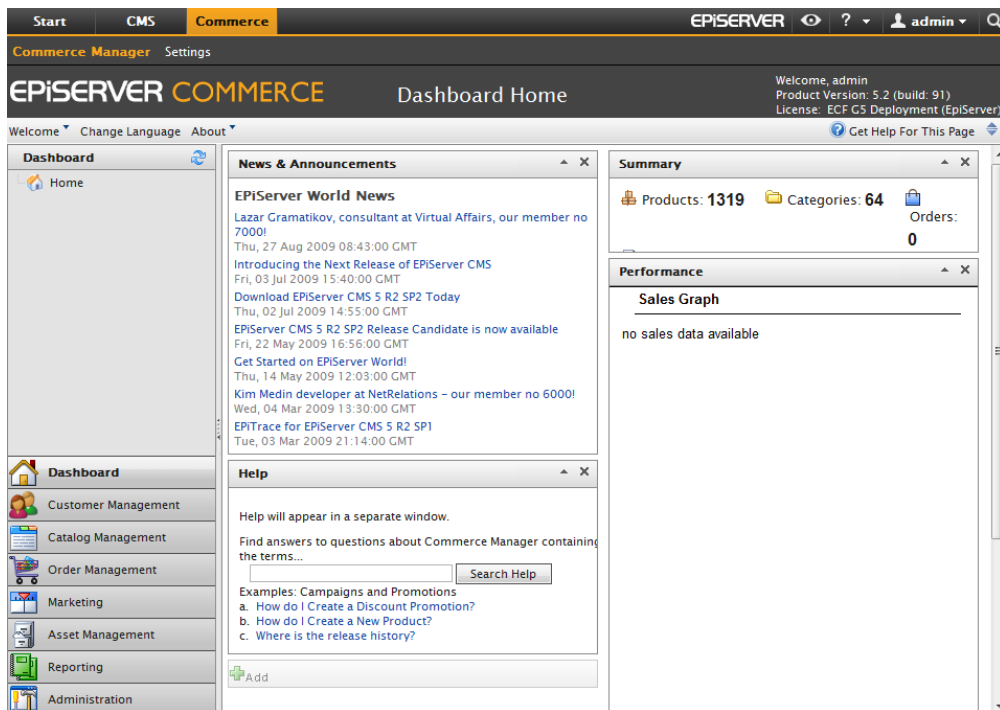
EpiServer Commerce has an intuitive navigation. When logged on to EpiServer Commerce, use the right-click menu to go directly to the **Commerce Manager** interface to work with web store back-end procedures. Or, chose the **EpiServer CMS Edit or Admin mode** to work with content management or system administrative tasks. See also *Accessing the different modes* .

Navigating Commerce Manager

Once you first login to Commerce Manager, you are directed to the Dashboard homepage.

- The Dashboard has Controls showing various information, including **Alerts, News & Announcements, Help**, and a **Summary**.
- More Controls can be added by clicking on **Add**.
- On the left is the Left Menu or Navigation iframe where users can switch between Commerce Manager systems and navigate a folder trees of options.
- On the top-right, you can see your login name, product version, and installed license.
- By clicking on the top-left header, you will be directed back to the front-end site.
- On the menu bar below header, there are additional options available to the user.
 - By clicking **Welcome**, you can adjust your **Settings, Sign In As a Different User**, or **Sign Out of Commerce Manager**. You can also change the language used to a different one if your Commerce Manager is configured for multiple languages.
 - By clicking **About**, you can **Send Feedback** using a form, get information on the **Database Schema** for support purposes, and open up our **Online Help** repository.

- On the right side of the menu bar, you can click on **Get Help For this Page** to get help on a specific page you are in, such as the **Catalog Edit page** under **Catalog Management**.
- Right next to the **Get Help For This Page** button is an **Up-Down Arrow**, which allows you to hide or display the header above the menu bar to save screen space.



Other Navigation Elements

- The Dashboard Controls can be collapsed, rearranged, and closed by clicking on the **Arrow** button, clicking on the **X** button, and click-dragging the title bar, respectively.
- There are tabs below the left navigation frame that corresponding to a specific system of the Commerce Manager. Clicking on each button results in a change of the top side menu.
- A common navigational model is the hierarchical folder/node structure.
- Some systems, such as Customer Management, do not have collapsible nodes. Instead, you click directly on the menu options to access its contents.

Access Rights

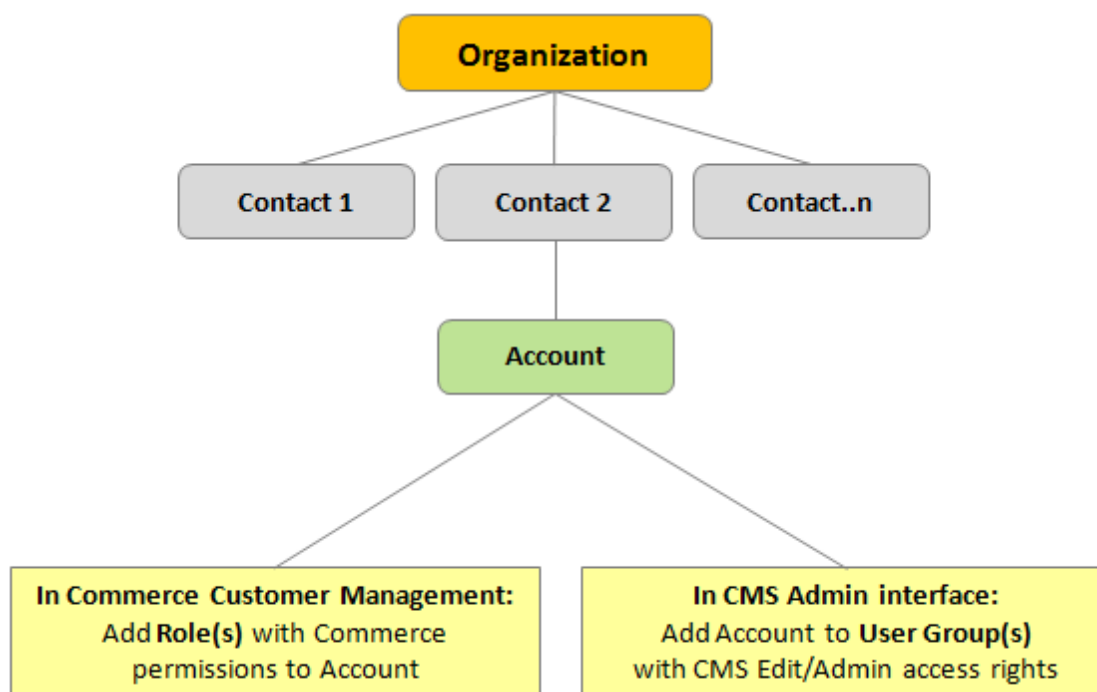
By default, EPiServer Commerce uses a customized role and membership provider where users are stored in the **Commerce Manager database**. Users with Commerce Manager accounts will be available both from inside Commerce Manager under Customer Management, as well as from the EPiServer CMS Admin mode. You will administer access rights both for users working with web shop administration in Commerce Manager, as well as users working with editorial content in the CMS system. These may or may not be the same individuals, depending how your organization is set up.

The user administration in Commerce Manager is based on **contacts**. A contact can have an **account** associated with it, which is needed if you want to assign Commerce Manager access rights to that contact. Only contacts with associated accounts will appear in the CMS user administration interface.



A contact must have an **account** associated with it in order to be able to apply roles and set access rights in Commerce Manager and the CMS system respectively. Users created from the CMS Admin interface will not appear in Commerce Manager.

When an online shopper decides to register with the website, a contact with an account is created. However, anonymous shopping is allowed, which means that shoppers are not required to create an account in order to purchase. Contacts can belong to **organizations**. The relationship between organizations, contacts, accounts, roles and user groups, is illustrated below.



Contacts, accounts and organizations are administered from the *Customer Management system* in Commerce Manager. This includes managing user accounts and adding roles to users (contacts). Setting access rights for editorial content management in the page tree of the website is done from the CMS administration interface.

The EPiServer Commerce sample site has a number of predefined users, roles and groups both for administering e-commerce tasks as well as managing editorial content. Remember that these users and groups are only examples of how you can set up access rights for your website.

User Access for Commerce Manager

Managing users and roles for store administrators is done in the *Customer Management* system. EPiServer Commerce is built with flexibility in mind for structuring internal teams and departments as well as external organizations, partners and customers. The Customer Management system allows for creating users and groups with either **pre-configured Roles** or **custom Roles** which control access to different systems or individual elements within a system.

When you install EPiServer Commerce, you are provided with an **administration account**. This account is given full privileges, meaning it is full access to all systems and all elements within each system. Additional accounts used by your internal team to access Commerce Manager must have one or more **Roles** assigned to them. A role can be for instance "Catalog Viewers", "Marketing Admins" or "Asset Managers".



Commerce Manager users are **internal** to your organization and should not be confused with customers. By default, customers who register from your public site are given the "Everyone" and "Registered" Roles, but these roles do **not** allow access to Commerce Manager.

A standard installation of the EPiServer Commerce sample site has a number of predefined roles. These roles are based on common e-commerce working procedures and provides a suggestion to how you can work with the system.

The screenshot displays the 'Role List' page in the EPiServer Commerce interface. The top navigation bar shows 'Start', 'CMS', and 'Commerce' tabs. The user is logged in as 'admin'. The main content area lists various roles with checkboxes for selection. The left sidebar provides navigation for different system components. The bottom of the page shows pagination information: '(11 items) | Page 1'.

Each role is associated with a range of permissions on different levels, related to the various parts of Commerce Manager.

The following roles are available by default, with a set of permissions for each role:

- **Admins** - default role allowing to fully administer most areas of the Commerce Manager.
- **Order Managers** - this role can create returns and exchanges, view and edit orders, send notifications, process payments and split shipments. You can also allow order managers to manage discounts and/or change the line item price.
- **Order Supervisors** - this role has full permissions for the entire order management procedure, including the entire Order Managers permissions.

- **Shipping Manager** - this role allows for viewing, packing and completing shipments.
- **Receiving Manager** - this role can view shipments and receive returns.
- **Everyone** - assigned when a customer registers an account from the front-end public site.
- **Registered** - assigned when you register from an Account from the front-end public site.
- **Management Users** - this role allows users access to Commerce Manager.
- **Administrators** - this role has extensive administration rights in areas such as assets, catalogs, core functions, marketing and customer and order management.
- **WebAdmins** - this role is EPiServer CMS specific and provides access to the EPiServer CMS **administration** interface, needed when administering the content management parts of EPiServer Commerce.
- **WebEditors** - this role is EPiServer CMS specific and provides access to the EPiServer CMS **editing** interface, needed when working with content on the EPiServer Commerce website.

You can change the detailed permissions for each of these roles, as well as define your own roles and set permissions, all in order to match the specific working procedures in your organization.

User Access for CMS

Access rights for content editors are managed from the Admin interface in EPiServer CMS system. Here you can view all users and user groups under **Search User/Groups**. Setting access rights for editorial content and the page tree structure is done from the **Set access rights** section, just as you normally do in EPiServer CMS.

In EPiServer CMS, there are the following **default** roles:

- **Everyone** - an anonymous visitor browsing to your website. Can only access the View mode of the website.
- **WebAdmins** - membership in this group provides access to the EPiServer CMS **administration** interface.
- **WebEditors** - membership in this group provides access to the EPiServer CMS **editing** interface.

Please refer to the EPiServer CMS user documentation on world.episerver.com, for more information on how to work with access rights for editorial content.

The screenshot displays the EPiServer Commerce Admin interface. The top navigation bar includes 'Start', 'CMS', and 'Commerce' tabs, with 'Admin Mode' selected. The left sidebar contains the following sections:

- System Administration**
 - Delete Unused Files
 - Edit Categories
- Access Rights**
 - Set Access Rights
 - Administer Groups
 - Search User/Group
 - Create User
- Scheduled Jobs**
 - Publish Delayed Page Versions
 - Subscription
 - Automatic Emptying of Recycle Bin
 - Clear Commerce Cache
 - Archive Function
 - Link Validation
 - Mirroring Service
 - Remove Permanent Editing
 - Change Log Auto Truncate
 - Remove Autosaved Page Drafts
- Tools**
 - Export Data
 - Import Data
 - File Management
 - Content Channels
 - Workflows

The main content area is titled 'Search Users/Groups'. It includes search filters:

- Type: Groups (selected)
- Name: (empty text box)
- Number of hits per page: 20
- Search button

Below the filters is a table listing user groups:

	Name	Provider
	Administrators	CMSRoleProvider
	Admins	CMSRoleProvider
	Everyone	CMSRoleProvider
	Management Users	CMSRoleProvider
	Order Manager	CMSRoleProvider
	Order Supervisor	CMSRoleProvider
	Receiving Manager	CMSRoleProvider
	Registered	CMSRoleProvider
	Shipping Manager	CMSRoleProvider
	WebAdmins	CMSRoleProvider
	WebEditors	CMSRoleProvider

At the bottom of the sidebar, it states: 'Product licensed to EPiServer AB Dung Le'.

As with any EPiServer CMS website, you can work with role and membership providers from Windows or SQL, or both using the multiplexing setting. You can also build your own user and membership provider. The EPiServer Commerce sample site uses a customized role and membership provider in order to store groups and users in the same place. Find out more about membership and role provide management in the technical documentation for EPiServer CMS on world.episerver.com.

Globalization

With "globalization" we mean the possibility to **display content** in different languages to website visitor groups with different language preferences. When a visitor to the website selects a language option, the content for that language will be displayed. If content doesn't exist in a selected language, a fallback procedure may be applied if this has been configured. Another dimension of globalization is the possibility for users to select different language options for the **user interface** inside EPiServer Commerce.

Find out more about globalization and language management in general on a website in the documentation for EPiServer CMS on world.episerver.com. In this section we will describe in more detail how you work with the different language settings in EPiServer Commerce.

Language Settings

Specific Language Settings

In EPiServer CMS there are three different language concepts, two which are defined by ASP.NET (Culture and UI Culture), and one which is the EPiServer content language. The ASP.NET Culture is referred to as "System Language", and UI Culture as "User Interface Language". A typical culture is "en-US" which defines the language as English (en) with the culturally defined specifics for United States (US).

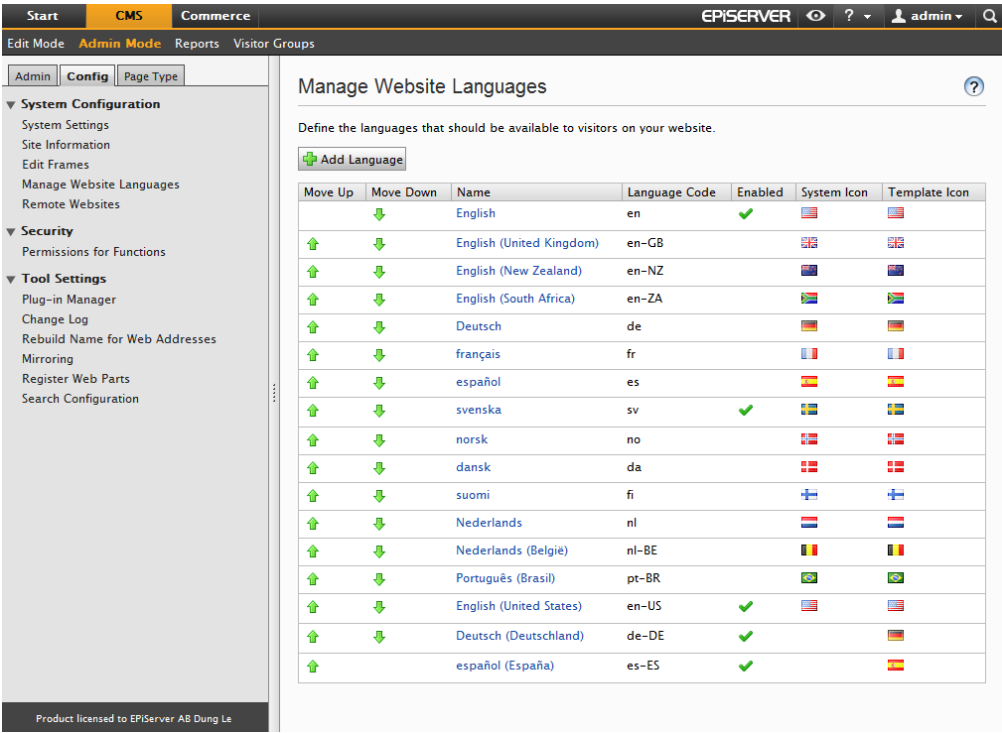


In EPiServer Commerce, "UI Culture" is used and "English (United States)" is the default language used by the system. This is due to the Commerce Manager database which uses "UI culture" in the matching. In order for EPiServer Commerce to work properly, it is therefore essential that you are using the "UI Culture" setting on your website to make the different languages display correctly.

Make sure this is set up right from the start to avoid problems later on. It is recommended that only "UI Culture" languages, i.e. "en-US", "en-GB", "nl-BE" etc., are enabled on the website.

Content Language

To display content in the desired language on your EPiServer Commerce website, you may apply the language management options available in EPiServer CMS Edit mode, to create pages in different languages. Available languages for CMS pages are enabled from the EPiServer CMS Admin mode under **Config** and **Manage Website Languages**. For more detailed information on how the language settings work, please refer to the user documentation for EPiServer CMS.

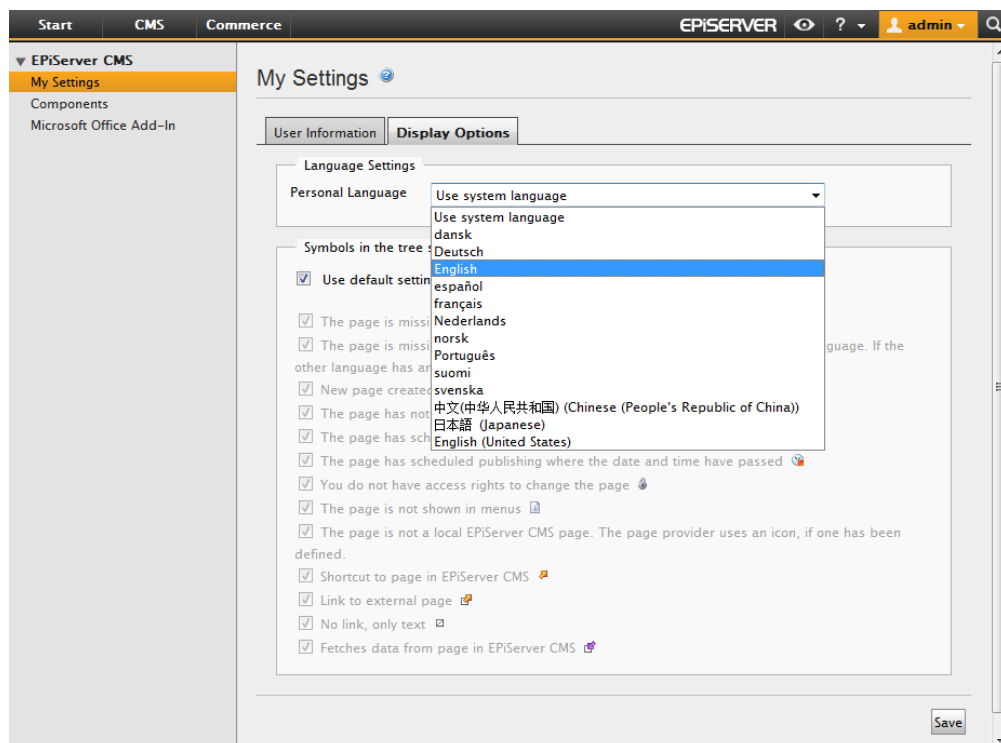


Languages for Product Catalogs

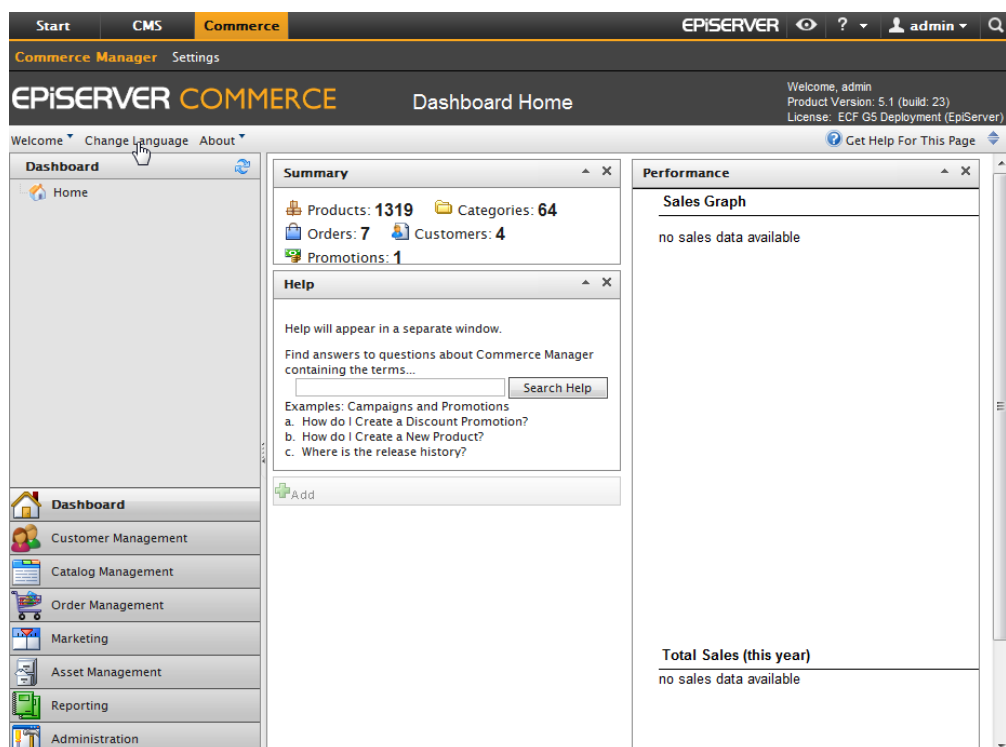
For products in the product catalog, the language information is set in the product database. EPiServer Commerce will display the product information in the language selected by the website visitor. Languages for the content of a product catalog is set when you create the product catalog. Find out more about this under Create a Catalog in the *Catalog Management* section.

User Interface Language

To set the user interface language for **EPiServer CMS**, click your **user profile name** in the upper right corner. Select **My Settings** and then the **Display Options** tab. Select the language of your choice in the list, and click **Save**. Note that you may need to refresh the browser window for the changes to apply.



To set the user interface language for **Commerce Manager**, select **Change Language** in the upper menu of Commerce Manager. Choose the language of your choice in the list and click **OK** to save your changes.



File Management

In EPiServer Commerce, there are two places to store content files (assets):

- In the **File Manager** of EPiServer CMS.
- In the **Asset Management** sub-system of Commerce Manager in EPiServer Commerce.

However, files can be managed entirely from the File Manager in EPiServer CMS. Using the Virtual Path Provider (VPP) technique, the two storage areas are "synchronized" meaning that when you create folders and add files in one place, the same content will be available in the other location. Assets can be created, updated, moved and deleted from the File Manager, and changes will be reflected in the Asset Manager as well.

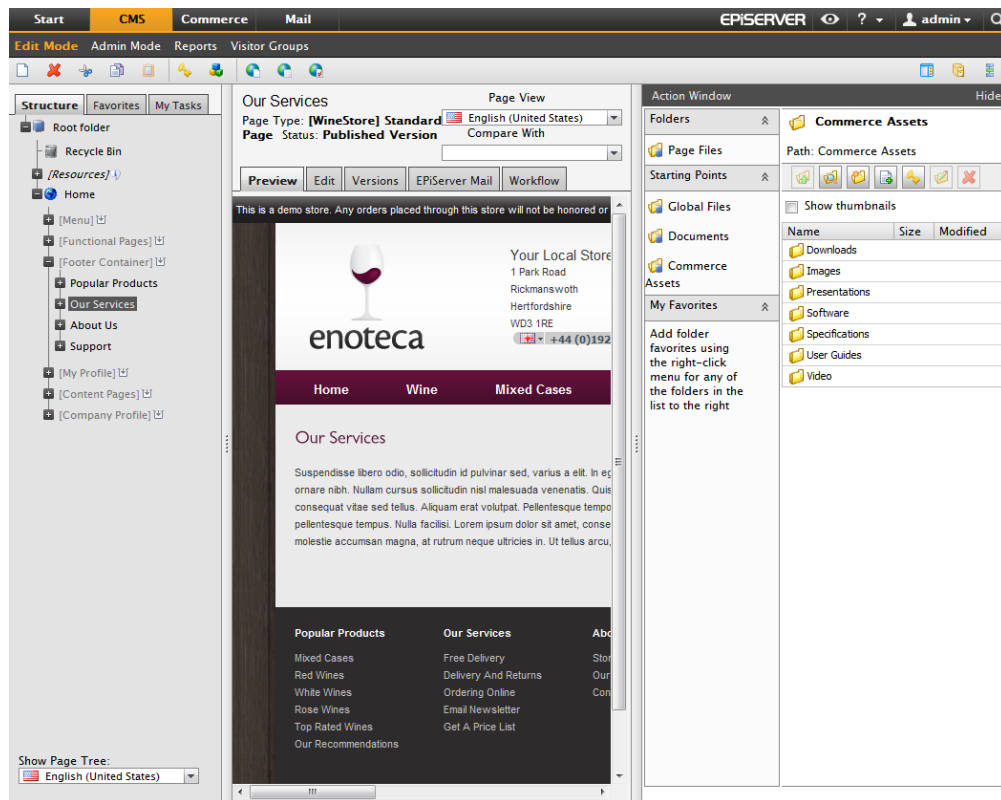
When installing the EPiServer Commerce sample site, the Asset Management sub-system will be automatically configured and available in the File Manager as the **Commerce Assets** starting point. In the following we will briefly describe how files are managed in EPiServer Commerce.

Working With Files

The File Manager

Files such as images and documents, that are used in the editorial parts of the sample website, are stored in the File Manager of EPiServer CMS, just as for any other EPiServer CMS site. With editorial content, we hereby mean web pages with content that is created from the EPiServer CMS Edit mode. For instance, this could be a news section with news items, or articles related to products on the e-commerce website.

The Asset Manager sub-system is made available in the File Manager of the sample site as the **Commerce Assets** starting point, making it possible to work with all files on the website from one place.

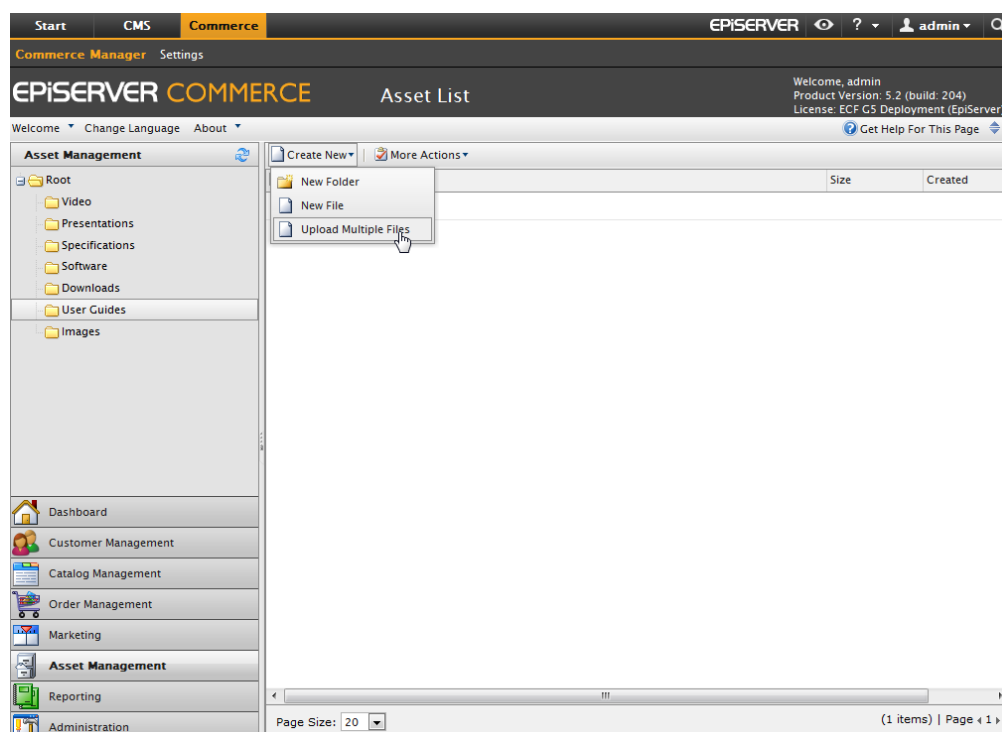


You work with folders and files in the Commerce Assets folder structure just as you do with other parts of the File Manager. You can copy and move folders from Commerce Assets to other starting points such as **Global Files**. However you cannot move or copy folders and files from other starting points to Commerce Assets, since versioning is not supported. Also, metadata is not supported for the files under Commerce Assets structure, so these fields need not to be filled in when adding new files to the structure.

To find out more about general file management in EPiServer CMS, please refer to the EPiServer CMS user documentation.

The Asset Manager

Files can also be managed from the Asset Management sub-system in Commerce Manager. The Asset Manager folder structure can be used for storing documents related to products in the product catalog. This can be for instance user guides, software downloads or product sheets. Each asset file can then be related to a product in the product catalog.



For more information about asset management, please refer to the *Asset Management* section.

File Formats

Files stored in EPiServer Commerce are often image files in different formats such as .jpg or .png, or documents in .pdf formats. However, files stored in EPiServer Commerce can be of almost any type since a wide selection of file formats are supported. Depending on how your website is configured, files will also be indexed and appear in the global search for the website.

Searching

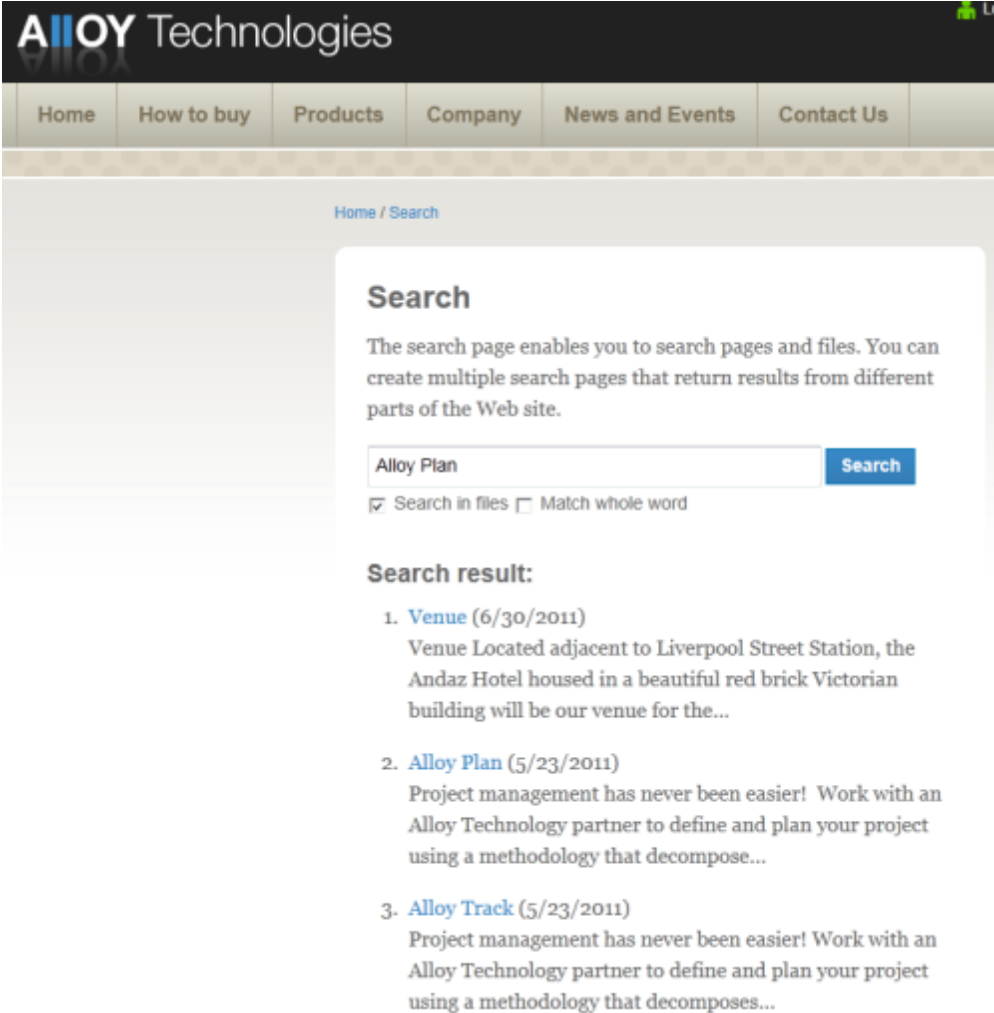
Introduction

The EPiServer platform has a sophisticated search functionality which allows you to search through different types content on your entire website. You can search for web pages, blocks, document files and community objects. The same search function is used in the global search available in the top global menu of the EPiServer platform, as well as for sample search page templates and the file manager in EPiServer CMS. The search can be extended to include results from external systems integrated with your website.

The search results will automatically be filtered based on access rights so that users will only see content they have access to. The search service in EPiServer is based on the open source search engine **Lucene**. The service is plug-able which means that Lucene can be replaced by another search indexing provider.

Accessing Search

The underlying search functionality is used by the different EPiServer products, and the description here applies to standard installations of EPiServer products with their respective sample templates. Visitors to the site will usually access the search through a website **search page** with a search field. The search field is also available in the top menu of the website. Below is an example of the EPiServer CMS search page. Checking the **Search in files** option in this page will also include files in the search, otherwise only web page content is searched.



Alloy Technologies

Home | How to buy | Products | Company | News and Events | Contact Us

Home / Search

Search

The search page enables you to search pages and files. You can create multiple search pages that return results from different parts of the Web site.

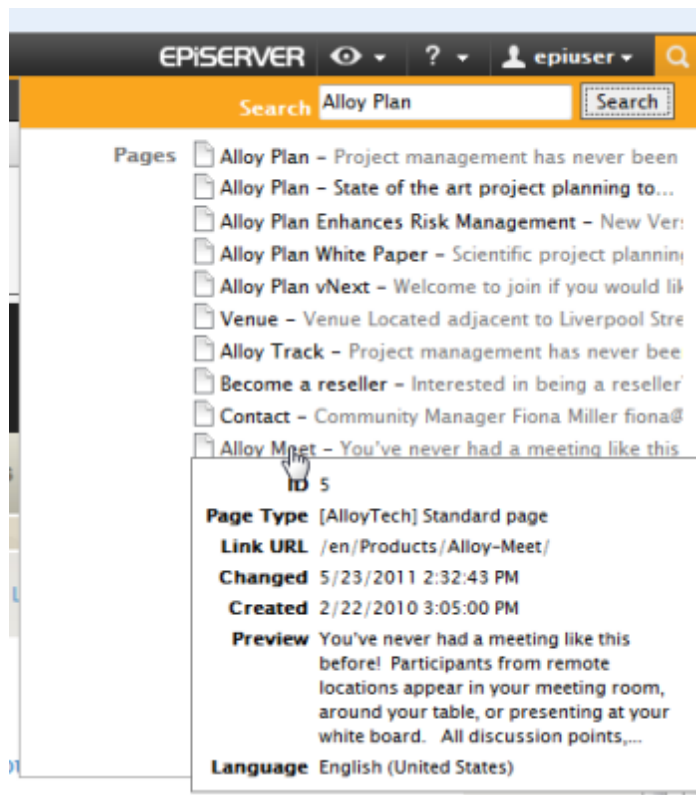
Alloy Plan

☒ Search in files ☐ Match whole word

Search result:

1. [Venue](#) (6/30/2011)
Venue Located adjacent to Liverpool Street Station, the Andaz Hotel housed in a beautiful red brick Victorian building will be our venue for the...
2. [Alloy Plan](#) (5/23/2011)
Project management has never been easier! Work with an Alloy Technology partner to define and plan your project using a methodology that decompose...
3. [Alloy Track](#) (5/23/2011)
Project management has never been easier! Work with an Alloy Technology partner to define and plan your project using a methodology that decomposes...

From the top global menu, editors and administrators can access the **global search option** in the upper right corner of the page when logged on to the website.



When hovering over a link in the search hit list, information about the page will be displayed, helping you identifying the correct item. Clicking on a link will take you to the item, for instance an web page or a document file.

How to Search

You can search for web pages with a certain name, and you can also search for pages that contain a certain text string. This means that if you cannot remember what the page is called but remember the first lines of the text, then the page can easily be retrieved. It is also possible to search for a page using its ID number, if you know this.

Search Tips

- Enter a sufficient number of search keywords, usually around 6-8 carefully selected words, separated with a space. Start with fewer keywords and if needed narrow your search by extending the number of words. Example: **episerver product project**.
- When searching for specific phrases, you can combine keywords using quotation marks. Example: "episerver search tips".
- The search function is case insensitive, meaning that you can use both upper and lowercase letters. Example: **New York** and **new york** will both return the same result.
- You can restrict the search by placing a plus sign (+) in front of the words that **must** be found to consider the page a match. Example: **+episerver +search +tips**.
- Similarly you can restrict the search by placing a minus sign (-) in front of the words that **must not** occur to consider the page a match, for example **-episerver -search -tips**.
- To match part of a word, place an asterisk(*) at the end of the word. Example: **word1* word2** will return content with the words **word123** and **word2**, but not **word123** and **word234**.
- The boolean operators AND and OR can be used. AND means "I only want documents that contain both/all words", OR means "I want documents that contain either word, regardless of which

one". Example: **episerver AND search** returns documents with both words, **episerver OR search** returns documents with either **episerver** or **search**.

Displaying Search Results

The items in the search result listing will appear based on the ranking they received from the search algorithm. The display of the search results depends on how this is set up on your website, since this can be customized in many ways. Often some kind of filtering is applied which can be based for instance on categorization of content.

Administering and Configuring Search

The search feature has some administration and configuration options which are managed from the **administration interface** in EPiServer CMS. Refer to the administration part of the *EPiServer CMS user documentation* for more information.

Refer to the *EPiServer Framework SDK* for a technical description of the search functionality, configuration possibilities and the integration interface.

Search in EPiServer Commerce

EPiServer Commerce features a provider model for the search index for both indexing and search queries. This provision allows the development of additional custom search provider to other search systems.

When installing the sample site, **Lucene** will be the default search provider installed. To find out more about Lucene, please visit the official Lucene website. The sample site also features **faceted navigation**, a features allowing for advanced filtering of products in the product catalog.

It is possible to replace the Lucene search engine with other search providers such as Solr. Refer to the **EPiServer Commerce Developer Guide** for more information on how to set up and configure Solr as search provider.

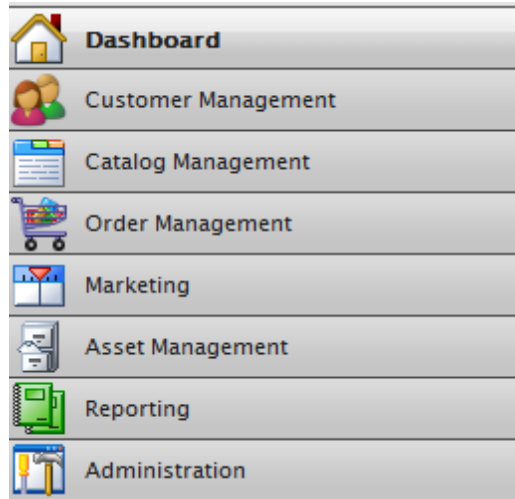
Related Information

Refer to the sections listed below for more information on related topics.

- *Searching for product catalog entries*
- *Indexing product catalogs*
- *Faceted navigation*

Commerce Manager

This section explains how end users can administer e-commerce tasks through the EPiServer Commerce back-end **Commerce Manager** e-commerce system. Commerce Manager includes a number of sub-systems for managing the different parts of an online store. The sub-systems are configurable, the setup described here is that of the EPiServer Commerce sample site.



Dashboard

Introduction

The dashboard is the area within Commerce Manager where you will find general status information about your EPiServer Commerce application. The purpose of this area is to give administrators an "at a glance" view of updates and status of the site or sites that are running on that particular instance of EPiServer Commerce.

Dashboard View

The dashboard is an aggregated view of a site's status. Typically, the dashboard is the first screen seen that a user sees when he/she logs into Commerce Manager. This is the area where a user can get a quick overall snapshot of e-commerce site, including notifications and alerts, an overall summary of products, categories, orders, customers, and promotions, sales performance graphs, customizable news and announcements, and a search field for help.

Customizing the Dashboard

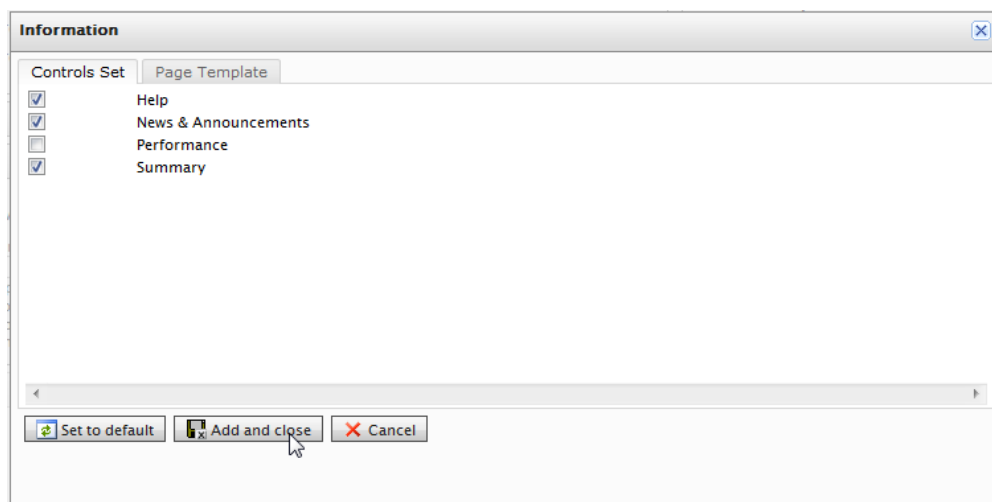
The user can customize the dashboard by re-arranging the layout of the controls (or widgets) on the page. The user has the ability not only to place the controls but also to adjust the page template that is used the dashboard. The five available controls are: **Help**, **Summary**, **News & Announcements**, **Alerts**, and **Performance**.

Control	Description
Help	Allows users to search for help topics that links directly to the Mediachase documentation site. Enter key terms into the Search field and then click on Search Help . Other frequently asked questions (FAQs) are listed underneath the Search field.
Summary	Displays the total number of Products , Categories , Orders , Customers , and Promotions .

Control	Description
News & Announcements	Displays a feed of the latest blogs from EPiServer World.
Alerts	Displays warnings about each site that may hinder performance and sales, such as the lack of site analytics installed on the site .
Performance	Displays a Sales Graph and a graph for the Total Sales of the year.

Adding Controls and Adjusting the Page Template

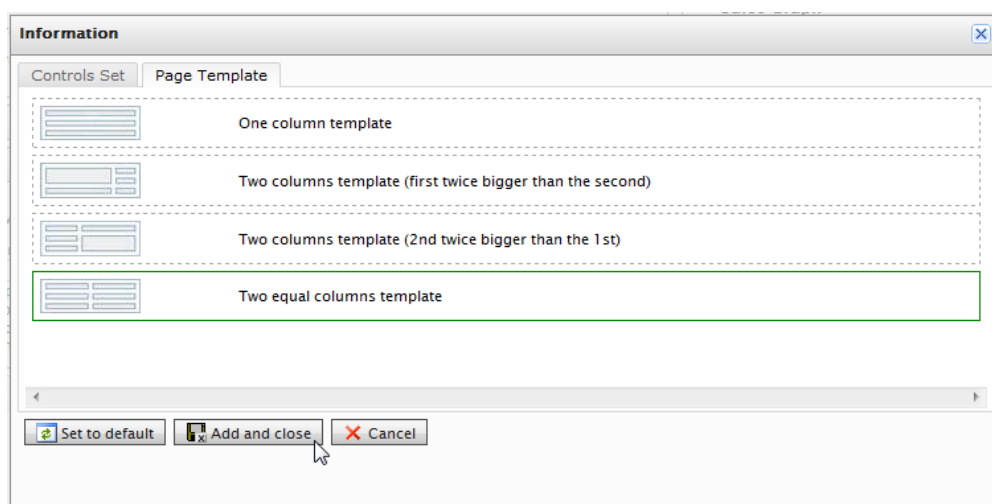
Click on **Add** on the Dashboard page. The **Information** form pops up above the Dashboard page.



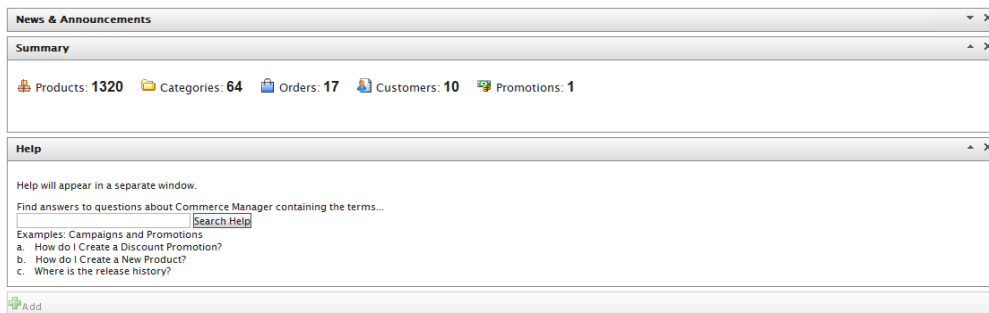
The **Controls Set** tab allows you to select which Controls you want to add to the Dashboard. Check the boxes and then click on **Add and Close**. The Controls you selected will appear on the Dashboard.

To reset the Dashboard back to the default state before any customizations were made, click on **Set to Default**.

On the **Page Template** tab, you can adjust the Dashboard page layout to a **One column template**, **Two columns template (first twice bigger than the second)**, **Two columns template (2nd twice bigger than the 1st)**, and **Two equal columns template**. Click on the layout you want and then click on **Add and close**.

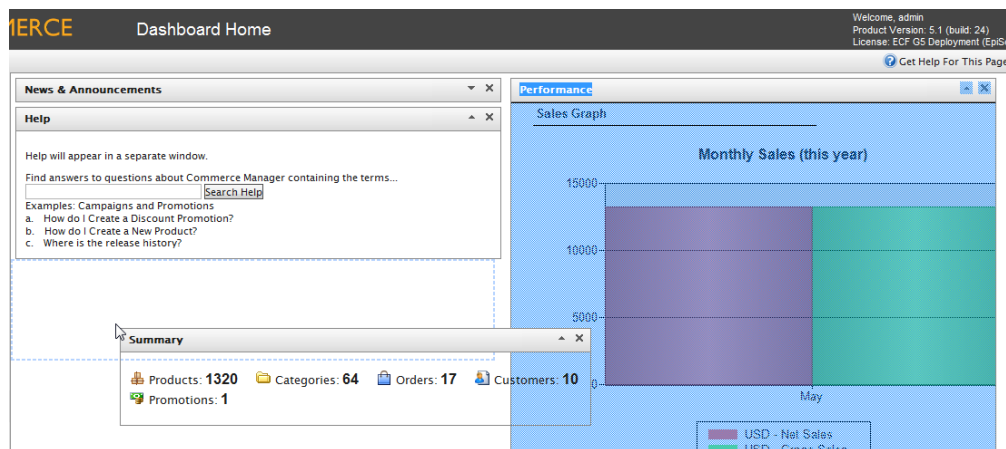


The screen below is an example of how a **One column template** looks.

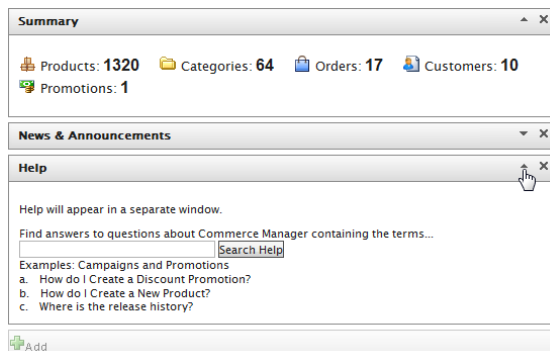


Rearranging, Collapsing, and Removing Controls

To rearrange Controls, hover the mouse cursor over the title bar and drag the Control to another space in the Dashboard.



To collapse Controls, click on the **Up-arrow** icon. To expand a collapsed Control, click on the **Down-arrow**.



To remove a Control, click on the **X** icon.

Customer Management

The **Customer Management** system is where you can add individual organizations, contacts, and Commerce Manager users. You can also create purchase orders for each individual customer account.

- **Organizations** - groups or sub-groups of Contacts
- **Contacts** - individuals with a certain set of personalized information (name, address, email, etc.). Contacts can be customers or users with Commerce Manager permissions to manage one or more systems.

- **Commerce Manager User** - this is a user with an assigned role which provides access to the Commerce Manager site.

This is also from where **Gift Cards** are administered on the EPiServer Commerce sample site. *Gift Cards are described in more detail under Payment Methods.*

Organizations

In the Organizations section, Commerce Manager users can create new organizations or organization units, which are basically groups or sub-groups of assigned contacts.

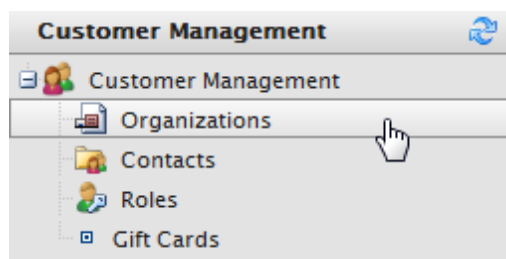
Organizations can be categorized into different types such as organization or organization units (i.e., regional branches, departments) and also business categories such as "Computer and Electronics" or "Clothing and Accessories." Organizations can be structured into a tree structure with sub-units with different levels of permissions assigned to each. For example, you can set up your company as a parent level organization while your departments such as Sales & Marketing, IT/Development, and operations as organization units. With this scenario, you can allow users in each departments to have access to only relevant systems, screens and functionality within Commerce Manager.

The Organizations section also comes with a new customizable filtering feature to display organizations and sub-units based on any of their attributes such as name, organization types, business categories, etc.

Browsing Organizations

Organizations are one of the major function areas of the Customer Management system. You can browse and view existing Organizations.

To browse Organizations, go to **Customer Management > Organization** on the left menu.

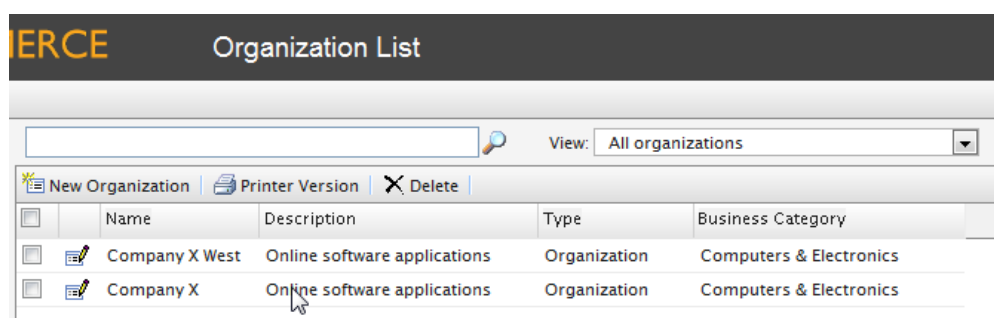


This will open the **Organization List** page.

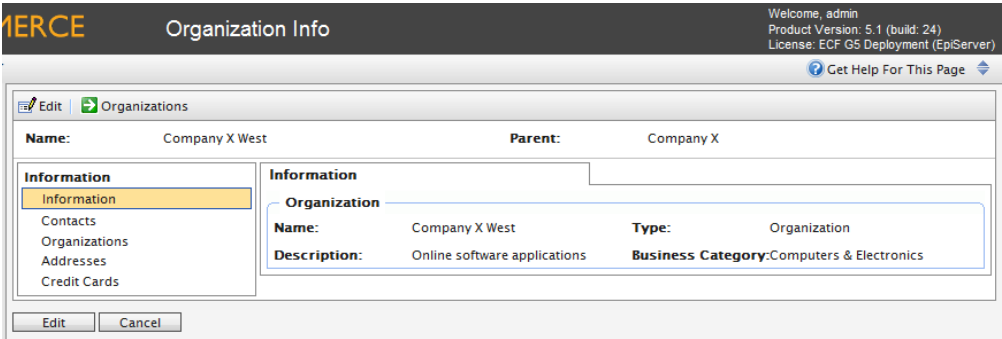
Viewing Organization Details

Organization details are separated by four columns:

Field	Description
Name	Name of the organization
Description	Additional details of the organization
Type	The kind of organization it is
Business Category	Under which category the organization falls



You can click through the name of the Organization to view more details about it.



Searching for Organizations

You can also use the search field on the **Organization List** to find specific Organizations by name. To conduct a search, enter in your search terms and click on the **Search** button.

To conduct a new search, click on the **Reset** button to reset the form and enter your new search terms.

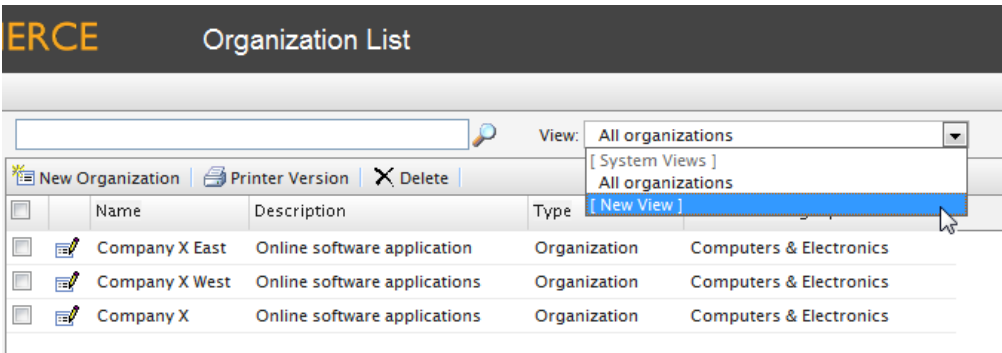
Printing a List of Organizations

If you want to generate a printer-friendly list of Organizations, click on **Printer Version**. A new window will pop-up and render a simple table suitable for printing. Click on the **Print** button on the upper right corner of the page.

Creating or Customizing Views for Browsing Organizations

As an **Organization List** gets longer, users can create and customize views to filter the list.

To create a new view, click on the **View** drop-down menu and select "New View."



A pop-up form appears above the **Organization List**. This form gives users the ability to customize which columns appear and apply a variety of filters.

New View

General Fields Filters

Enter Title

☐ Show this view for all users

Everything is ready to create a new view for entities list. Please, type view name.

Save Close

The default tab is **General**. Enter in a **Title** for the custom View. Click the check-box **Show this view for all users**, if you want other users to see this custom View.

New View

General Fields Filters

Enter Title

Professional Services Companies

☒ Show this view for all users

Everything is ready to create a new view for entities list. Please, type view name.

Save Close

Click on the **Fields** tab to select which columns you want to appear in the custom View. Select the columns you want to have appear by clicking and highlighting the column name and moving it over to the **Visible columns** list by clicking on the **Right Arrow** icon.

New View

General **Fields** Filters

Available columns:

- Description
- Id
- Modified
- Modifier
- Name
- Parent**
- Parent (ref)
- Primary Contact
- Primary Contact (ref)
- Type

Visible columns:

- Creator
- Business Category

Save Close

To deselect a column, click and highlight a column name from the **Visible columns** list and then click on the **Left Arrow** icon.

To change the ordering of the **Visible columns** list, click and highlight a column name and click on the **Up and Down Arrow** icons on the right of the list to reposition the column.

Click on the **Filters** tab to set the View filters. Users are given precise controls over filters for setting up rules for their custom View. Clicking on the + icon allows you add an additional filter.

New View

General Fields **Filters**

And

- Business Category Equals Arts & Entertainment

Or

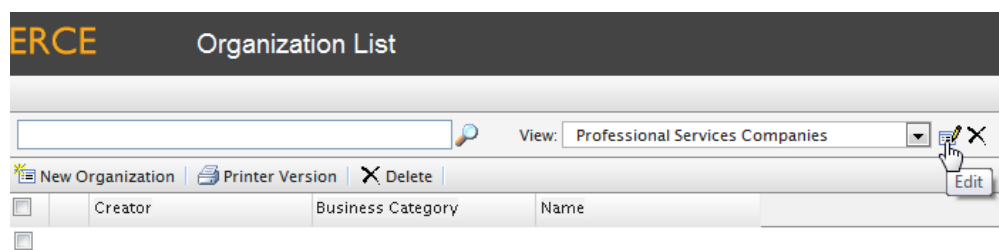
Please choose

- Please choose
- And
- Or
- Business Category
- Created
- Description
- Id
- Modified
- Name**
- Parent
- Parent (Reference)
- Primary Contact
- Primary Contact (Reference)
- Type

Save Close

Click on **Save** to save the settings and return to the **Organization List** screen.

To edit an existing View or a View you just created, select the View from the drop-down menu and click on the **Edit** icon next to it. The **View Editing** form pops up and you are able to edit all properties.



To delete a custom View, click on the **X** icon next to the **Edit** icon.

There are a multitude of options available for customization, but here are some examples to get you started.

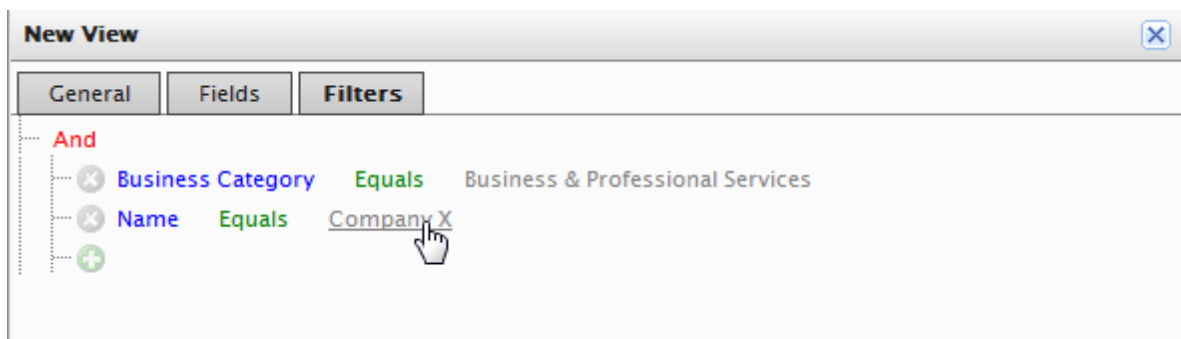
Example View Filter Setups

The examples here will start off with the following list of sample Organizations, Organization Units, and Divisional Units:

	Name	Description	Type	Business Category
	Company X East	Online software application	Organization Unit	Computers & Electronics
	Company X West	Online software applications	Organization Unit	Computers & Electronics
	Company X IT W...	Online software application IT s...	Divisional Unit	Computers & Electronics
	Company X	Online software applications	Organization	Computers & Electronics

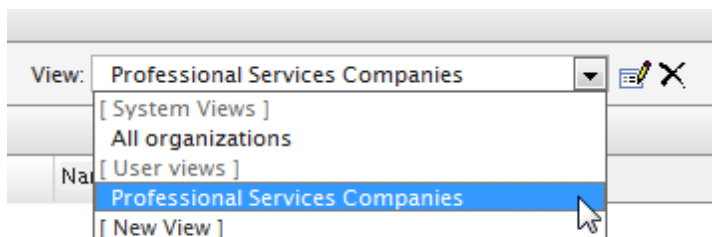
Example 1: Creating a View to Only Show Organizations that Match a Business Category and Organization Name

1. In this example, we will create a filter condition that display Organizations with a Business Category that equals "Business & Professional Services" and an Organization Name that equals "Company X."
2. Click on the **+** icon and from the drop-down select "Business Category." Two fields, which default to "Equals" and "Arts & Entertainment," automatically appear. Click on "Equals" and a drop-down appears. Keep the field as "Equals." Click the field to the right of it and select a "Business Category" name (such as "Business and Professional Services").
3. Since we want to add another filter so that the Organization not only matches this "Business Category," but also a specified name, click on the following **+** icon and then on the drop-down select "Name."
4. In the next field, select "Equals" and then on the field that says "Text" enter in the name of the Organization (such as "Mediachase").
5. Once done, click **Save** to save the View.

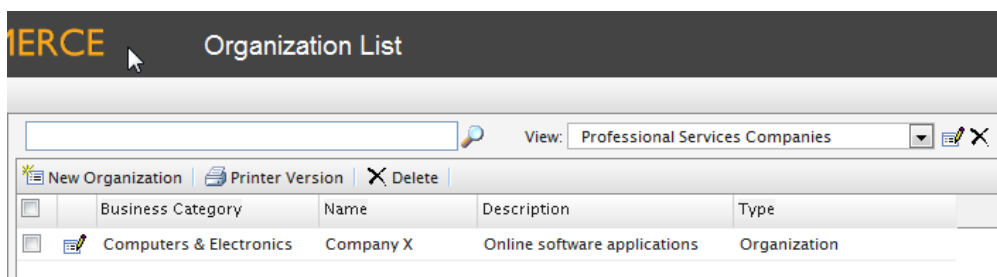


Applying and Editing a View

Once a View is created and saved, it appears in the View drop-down box.

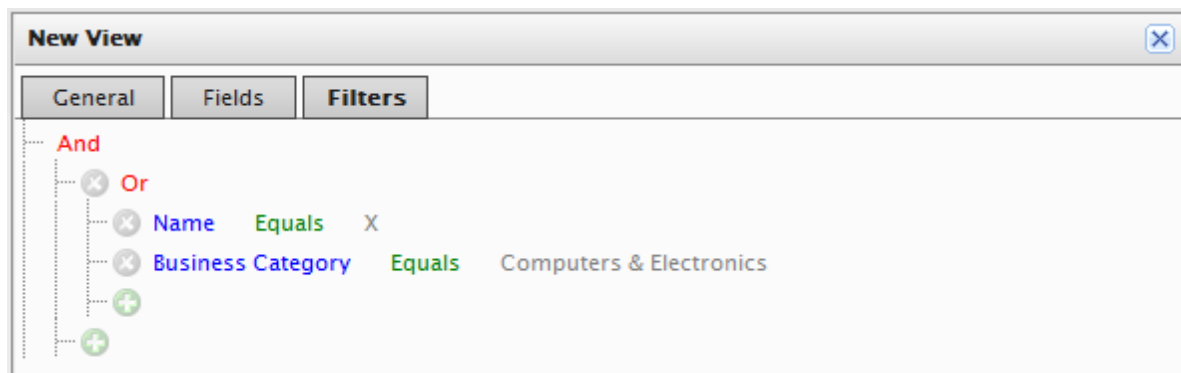


To apply the **View**, select it from the drop-down. Based on the columns and filters you applied for the custom View, your Organization List will reflect those options.



Example 2: Creating a View to Display Companies with Specific Business Category or Organization Name

In this example, we will create a filter condition that display Organizations with a Business Category that equals "Computer & Electronics" or an Organization Name that contains "X."



ERCE		Organization List			
				View: Professional Services Companies	
		New Organization Printer Version Delete			
	Business Category	Name	Description	Type	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Computers & Electronics	Company X East	Online software application	Organization Unit	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Computers & Electronics	Company X West	Online software applications	Organization Unit	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Computers & Electronics	Company X IT West	Online software application IT...	Divisional Unit	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Computers & Electronics	Company X	Online software applications	Organization	

Example 3: Creating a View to Display Companies with Specific Business Category and/or Name

In this example, we will create a filter condition that displays Organizations with a "Business Category" that equals "Computer & Electronics" and/or an Organization Name that contains "X."

New View

General

Fields

Filters

+

Or

×

Name

Equals

X

×

Business Category

Equals

Computers & Electronics

+

×

Name

Contains

X

+

ERCE		Organization List			
				View: Professional Services Companies	
		New Organization Printer Version Delete			
	Business Category	Name	Description	Type	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Computers & Electronics	Company X East	Online software application	Organization Unit	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Computers & Electronics	Company X West	Online software applications	Organization Unit	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Computers & Electronics	Company X IT West	Online software application IT...	Divisional Unit	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Computers & Electronics	Company X	Online software applications	Organization	

Creating an Organization

To create an Organization, click on **New Organization**.

IERCE		Organization List			
				View: All organizations	
		New Organization Printer Version Delete			
	Name	Description	Type	Business Category	
<input type="checkbox"/>					

The **Organization Edit** page appears.

Field	Description
Name	Enter in the organization name (this is the only required field).
Description	For additional details about the organization.
Type	Select from the drop-down menu to assign a type to the organization. More types can be added to the drop-down by clicking on the icon.
Business Category	Select from the drop-down menu to assign a category to the organization. You can add more categories by clicking on the icon.
Parent	You can assign a parent organization to an organization. If the organization you are creating is a sub-unit of a larger organization, then select the parent in the drop-down menu. If you do not see the Organization listed on the drop-down menu, click on "More..."

Once you have entered all relevant information, click on **OK**. The Organization Info window of the organization appears.

From here, you can view **Information** about the Organization you just created. Out of the box, you can also see associated **Contracts**, **Organizations**, **Addresses**, and **Credit Cards**. You can further edit the Organization by clicking the **Edit** button. To go back to the **Organization List**, click on **Organizations** on the menu bar next to **Edit**.

Creating an Organization Unit

An Organizational Unit is a "child" or subsidiary of a Parent organization. Within Commerce Manager, you can assign an Organization as a Parent of another Organization. For example, the Parent company "Company X," and the Organizational Units are "Company X West" and "Company X East."

To create an Organization Unit, either create a **New Organization** or **Edit** an existing one.

1. Enter in a **Name** and **Description**.
2. From the drop-down, select the **Type** as "Organization Unit."
3. Select a **Business Category**.
4. Select a **Parent Organization** from the drop-down menu. Selecting a Parent Organization will designate this Organization as a unit (or in other words, a division, sub-organization, subsidiary, etc.)
5. Click **OK** to save the changes.

Overview

Name: Company X North

Description: Online software applications

Type: Organization Unit

Business Category: Business & Professional Services

Parent: Company X
Parent Organization

OK Cancel

You will see in the **Organization Info View** form that the Organization is now a child or Organization Unit of the Parent Organization you selected.

IERCE Organization Info

Welcome, admin
Product Version: S.1 (build: 24)
License: ECF GS Deployment (EpiServer)

Get Help For This Page

Edit Organizations

Name: Company X North **Parent:** Company X

Information

Organization

Name: Company X North **Type:** Organization Unit

Description: Online software applications **Business Category:** Business & Professional Services

Edit Cancel

Creating an Organizational Hierarchy

You can create Organization Hierarchies by assigning a Parent Organization to a "child" Organization and then another Organization to the child. Permissions can be set to determine which users can view certain Organizations in the hierarchy.

Create an *Organization Unit* by assigning a **Parent** with a child Organization. For example, "Company X" is the Parent Organization and "Company X West" is the Organization Unit.

Assign another Organization with the child Organization ("Company X West"). Click **OK**.

IERCE Organization Edit

Overview

Name: Company X West

Description: Online software applications

Type: Organization Unit

Business Category: Computers & Electronics

Parent: Company X

Not Set
Company X
More...

OK Cancel

In the **Organization Info** page, the Organization becomes the child to the Organization Unit you selected.

EPiSERVER Organization Info

Edit Organizations

Name: Company X West **Parent:** Company X

Information

- Information
- Contacts
- Organizations
- Addresses
- Credit Cards

Organization

Name: Company X West **Type:**

Description: Online software applications **Business Category:**

Edit Cancel

Repeat the steps above to create further subunits of the **Parent** Organization.

Creating and Editing Dictionary Entries

By default, when creating or editing an Organization, there is a default list of Types and Business Categories available to the user. More options can be created by editing the Dictionary within the Organization Edit page.

Adding New Dictionaries for Organization Type

1. To edit the **Dictionary**, open the **Organization Edit** page by creating a new organization or editing an existing one. Click on the icon next to the Type drop-down menu.
2. The new window appears allowing you to edit the existing organization Type dictionary . To add a new item to the dictionary, click on New Item.
3. Select the order of the item from the drop-down on the left.
4. Enter in a name of the item on the field next to the drop-down.
5. Click **Save** to save the dictionary item.
6. The dictionary item is now available in the **Type** drop-down.

Adding New Business Categories

Out of the box, there is a list of categories you can assign to an organization. You can add more categories the same way you add organization types.

1. Click on the dictionary icon next to the **Business Category** drop-down menu.
2. Click on **New Item** to add a new category.
3. Enter in a category name and then click . You can change the order the category is on the list by clicking on number drop-down menu.
4. The category now appears in the drop-down menu.

Contacts

Contacts are individuals with a certain set of personalized information (name, address, email, etc.).

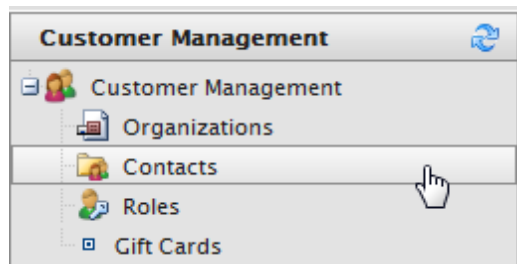
- **Contacts with Accounts** - a customer who registers on the public site. If this customer chooses, he/she can login to his/her *Account* from the public site and access his/her order history and other personalized information. He/she cannot access the Commerce Manager.
- **Contacts with User Permissions** - someone internal to your team who has varying levels of access to the systems within Commerce Manager.

Contacts consisting of users who will be accessing the Commerce Manager can be assigned *Roles* based on varying permissions. For example, a user with the "Cms Admins" role will have full access to only the Content Management system. In addition, notes regarding the Contact's registration source can be recorded.

The Contact section also comes with a new customizable filtering feature to display contacts based on any of their attributes such as Name, Last Order Date and Customer Group.

Browsing Contacts

To browse Contacts, go to **Customer Management > Contacts**.



Viewing Detailed Contact Information

The **Contact List** page shows a list of existing Contacts.

	FullName2	FirstName2	Last Name	Middle Name
<input type="checkbox"/>	Receiving Manager	Receiving	Manager	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Order Manager	Order	Manager	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Jennifer Browne	Jennifer	Browne	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Mary Smith	Mary	Smith	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Shipping Manager	Shipping	Manager	
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	admin		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Order Supervisor	Order	Supervisor	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Carlos Nevada	Carlos	Nevada	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Lisa Prescott	Lisa	Prescott	

You can click through the name an existing Contact to view more information.

From within the **Contact Info** form, you can view other recorded information about the Contact. For example, you can view **Addresses** and **Order History** related to this Contact.



More objects or metadata can be added to the default View Form via *Business Foundation*.

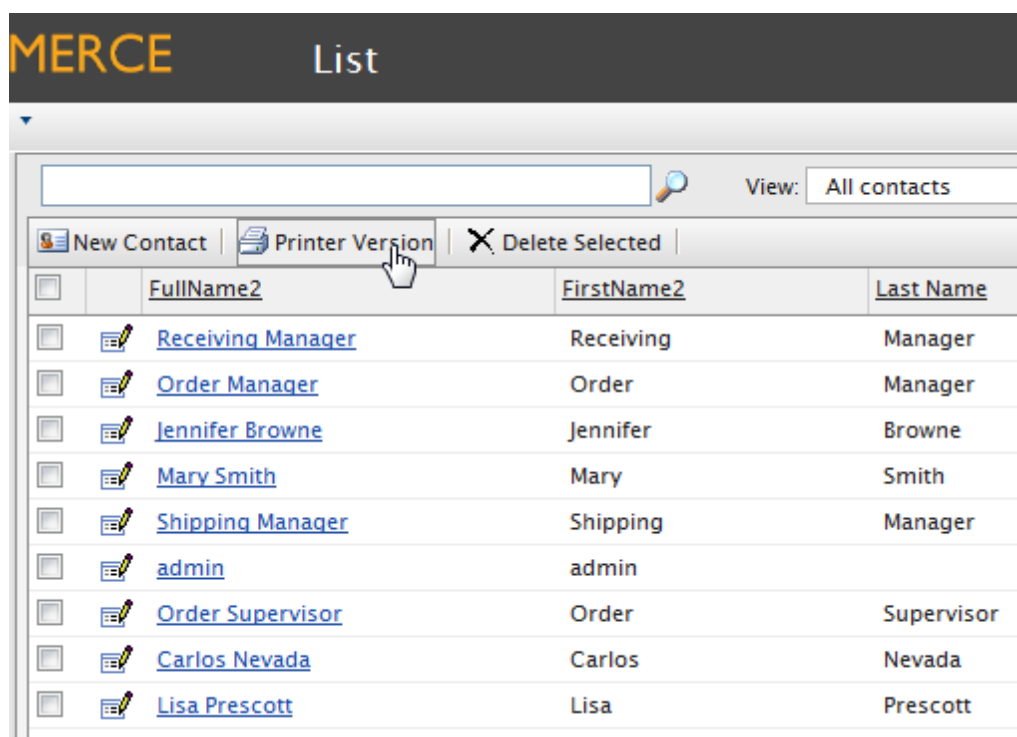
Searching for Contacts

On the **Contact Info** page, you can use the search form above to search for a particular Contact using key terms. Conduct the search by clicking on the **Search** icon (magnifying glass). Contacts that match the search terms will appear on the list.

To clear the search and revert back to show all Contacts, click on the **Reset** icon (eraser) next to the Search icon.

Generating a Printer Friendly List of Contacts

To generate a printer friendly layout of the **Contact List**, click on **Printer** Version from the menu bar on the **Contact List** page.



A new browser window opens showing a printer-friendly version of the Contact List. Click on **Print** on the far right corner of the browser window.

Contact

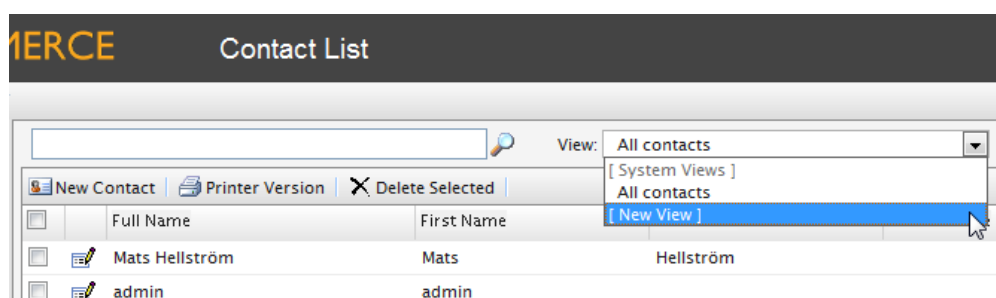
Full Name	First Name	Last Name	Middle Name	Last Order Date	Customer Group
Receiving Manager	Receiving	Manager			
Order Manager	Order	Manager			
Jennifer Browne	Jennifer	Browne			
Mary Smith	Mary	Smith			
Shipping Manager	Shipping	Manager			
admin	admin				
Order Supervisor	Order	Supervisor			
Carlos Nevada	Carlos	Nevada			
Lisa Prescott	Lisa	Prescott			

Creating or Customizing Views for Browsing Contacts

Like Organizations, users can create or customize **Views** when browsing objects.

Creating a New View

On the **Contact List** page, click on the **View** drop-down menu and select **New View**.



A pop-up appears, very similar to the one found in *Organizations*. This form gives users the ability to customize which columns appear and apply a variety of filters.

New View

General Fields Filters

Enter Title

☐ Show this view for all users

Everything is ready to create a new view for entities list. Please, type view name.

The default tab is **General**. Enter in a **Title** for the custom **View**. Check the box **Show this view for all users** if you want other users to see this custom View.

New View

General Fields Filters

Enter Title

Only in Company X

☒ Show this view for all users

Everything is ready to create a new view for entities list. Please, type view name.

Click on the **Fields** tab to select which columns you want to appear in the custom View. Select the columns you want to have appear by clicking and highlighting the column name and moving it over to the **Visible columns** list by clicking on the **Right Arrow** icon.

New View

General **Fields** Filters

Available columns:

- Code
- Created
- Creator
- Customer Group
- Date Of Birth
- Id**
- Last Name
- Last Order Date
- Middle Name
- Modified

Visible columns:

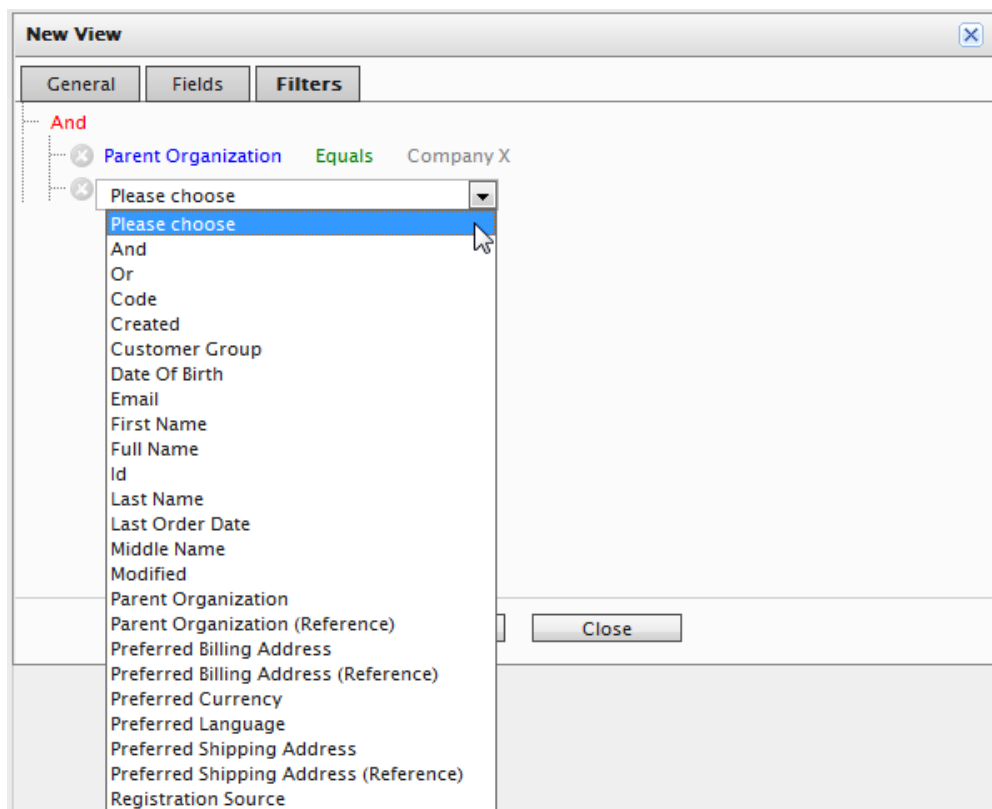
- First Name
- Full Name
- Email

Save Close

To deselect a column, click and highlight a column name from the **Visible columns** list and then click on the **Left Arrow** icon.

To change the ordering of the **Visible column** list, click and highlight a column name and click on the **Up and Down Arrows** on the right of the list to reposition the column.

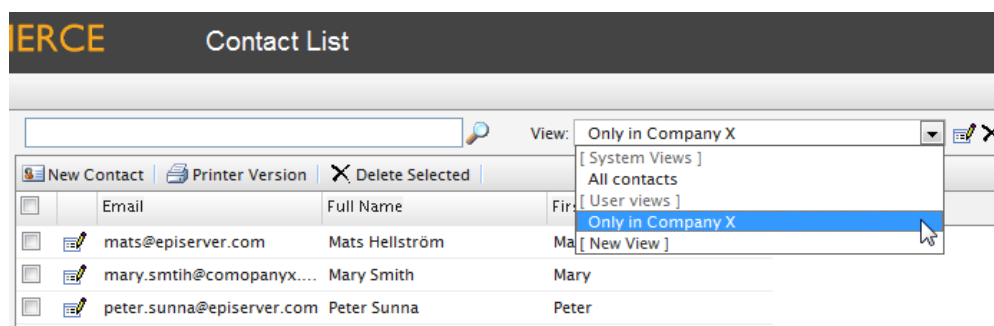
Click on the **Filters** tab to set the view filters. Users are given precise controls over filters for setting up rules for their custom View. Clicking on the **+** icon allows you add an additional filter.



There are a multitude of options available for customization.

Applying and Editing a View

Once a **View** is created and saved, it appears in the **View** drop-down box.



To apply the **View**, select it from the drop-down. Based on the columns and filters you applied for the custom View, your **Contact List** will reflect those options.

To edit an existing View or a View you just created, select the **View** from the drop-down menu and click on the **Edit** icon next to it. The **View Editing** form pops up and you are able to edit all properties.

Creating a Contact

To create a new Contact, from the **Contact List** page, click on **New Contact**.

The **Contact Edit** page appears where you can enter all relevant information about the contact. The only required fields to complete are **Full Name**, **First Name**, **Last Name**, and **Email**. The rest of the fields are optional but are recommended.

1. Select a **Parent Organization** from the drop-down menu to associate the Contact with a single Parent Organization.
2. Assign the Contact to a **Customer Group**. More Customer Groups can be added by editing the *Customer Group Dictionaries*. Customer Groups become useful when setting specific permissions and targeted *Marketing Campaigns*. (For more information, see "How to Assign a Customer Group Sales Price for a Particular Item" section below.)
3. Select a **Preferred Currency** for the contact. If the Contact is in France, you may want to associate the Euro currency. Available currency options are based on settings in **Administration > System Settings > Dictionaries > Currencies**.
4. Select a **Preferred Language** to associate with the Contact. Languages are populated based on the languages set under **Administration > System Settings > Dictionaries > Languages**.
5. The **Registration Source** field is a text field for entering in notes about the Contact. For instance, you may want to reference which website the Contact is currently registered under.



The **Registration Source** field is automatically filled when a user creates a new Account from the public website.

Full Name: Mary Smith

First Name: Mary

Middle Name:

Last Name: Smith

Email: mary.smtih@comopanyx.com
Contact Email Description

Parent Organization: Company X
Contact Organization

Customer Group: Customer

Preferred Currency: US dollar

Preferred Language: English (United States)

Registration Source: companyx

OK Cancel

Click **OK** to save the Contact. The **Contact Info View Form**, where you can enter in additional information about the Contact as well as go back and edit the Contact again.



The screenshot below shows the default layout of the **Contact Info** form. This can be customized using *Business Foundation*.

Full Name: Mary Smith **Parent Organization:** Company X

Information

Information

Contact

Full Name: Mary Smith **Customer Group:** Customer

First Name: Mary **Preferred Currency:** USD

Middle Name: **Preferred Language:** en-US

Last Name: Smith **Registration Source:** companyx

Parent Organization: Company X **Last Order Date:**

Account [Create account](#)

Account not found:

Edit Cancel

To go back to the Contact List, click **Cancel** or the **Contacts** button next to the **Right Arrow** icon.

Creating an Account

An Account can be created with a Contact. Once an Account has been created, the Contact can be assigned permissions using Roles and access the Commerce Manager.



A customer Account is automatically created for a customer who registers from the front-end public website, allowing them to login and view personalized information.

To create an Account for an existing Contact, click on a Contact name from the **Contact List**. On the **Contact Info** page, click on **Create Account**.

A pop-up appears to enter in their user account credentials. A **User Name** and **Password** are required to create the Account.

1. Enter in a **User Name**, which can include spaces and special characters.
2. Enter in a **Password**, which must be four or more characters.
3. Enter in a **Description** and **Email Address**, which are both optional.
4. To enable the account, select "Yes" under **Approved**. Otherwise, select "No" to keep the account inactive and inaccessible by the user.
5. Click **OK** to save the account.

User account information appears under the **Account** section of the **Contact Information** form.

Fields Explained:

- **Last Activity** - last time the user logged in or made any changes to the site
- **Last Lockout** - last time a user was locked out due to too many failed login attempts
- **Last Login** - last time the user logged into his or her account
- **Last Password Changed** - last time the user account password changed

ERCE Contact Info Welcome, admin
Product Version: 5.1 (build: 24)
License: ECF GS Deployment (EpiServer)

[Get Help For This Page](#)

[Edit](#) [Delete](#) [Contacts](#)

Full Name: Mary Smith **Parent Organization:** Company X

Information	Contact
Information Addresses Credit Cards Security Roles Orders Order History Shopping Lists Wish Lists Shopping Carts	Contact Full Name: Mary Smith First Name: Mary Middle Name: Last Name: Smith Parent Organization: Company X Customer Group: Customer Preferred Currency: USD Preferred Language: en-US Registration Source: companyx Last Order Date: Account Edit Account Change Password Remove Account User Name: Mary Description: mary.smith@companyx.com Email: mary.smith@companyx.com Last Activity: 6/1/2010 9:17:44 AM Last Lockout: none Last Login: 6/1/2010 9:17:44 AM Last Password Changed: 6/1/2010 9:17:44 AM

[Edit](#) [Cancel](#)

Editing an Account, Changing an Account Password, and Removing Accounts

To edit an Account, click on **Edit Account**. The same pop-up will appear. You cannot change the **User Name** unless you remove the Account and recreate the same Account.

To change the password, click on **Change Password**. A password pop-up appears with an editable field that allows you to enter in the new password.

To delete or remove the account, click on **Remove Account**.

Create an Order Within a Contact

For customer accounts, you can create purchase orders.

1. Click on a contact name. You will see the contact details.
2. Click on **New Order** on the menu bar.
3. The **New Order** form appears to generate an order for the customer.

EPISEVER COMMERCE View Welcome, admin
Product Version: 5.2 (build: 377)
License: ECF GS Deployment (EpiServer)

[Welcome](#) [Change Language](#) [About](#) [Get Help For This Page](#)

Customer Management [Edit](#) [Delete Contact](#) [Contacts](#) [New Order](#)

Full Name: Carlos Santana **Parent Organization:**

Information	Contact
Information Addresses Credit Cards Security Roles Orders Order History Shopping Lists Wish Lists Shopping Carts	Contact Full Name: Carlos Santana First Name: Carlos Middle Name: Last Name: Santana Parent Organization: Preferred Shipping Address: Home Preferred Billing Address: Home Customer Group: Preferred Currency: Preferred Language: Registration Source: enoteca.episerver.com, / -en-US - 00000000- 0000-0000-0000- 000000000000 Last Order Date: Account Edit Account Change Password Remove Account User Name: Carlos Description: carlos@somemail.com Email: carlos@somemail.com Is Locked Out: none Last Activity: Today, 2:29 PM Last Login: Today, 2:02 PM Last Password Changed: 2/15/2012 12:49:10 PM

[Edit](#) [Cancel](#)

Roles and Permissions

In the Roles section, Commerce Manager users can be either granted or restricted access to an entire system or a particular menu item within a system. Each Role is defined by a set of *Permissions* that can be added or changed based on user selection. Existing Roles can be customized; new Roles can also be created to suit your unique business needs.

Roles control the level of access permissions of each user account in Commerce Manager. Different Roles may be added to user accounts (i.e., store operator or webmaster) so that they can access, edit, or process relevant information.

There are three main categories that determine the different levels of permissions: Admin, Manager, and Schema Manager.

- **Admin Role** - allows users to fully access and administer a particular Commerce Manager system.
- **Manager Role** - allows users to manage (View/Create/Edit/Delete) existing aspects of a particular Commerce Manager system .
- **Schema Manager** - allows users to access only the administrative side of an Commerce Manager system (e.g. setting up Meta Data).

Definitions of Roles

Selecting Roles in the left menu opens a Roles List page with the default Roles shown below. The Roles List page allows Commerce Manager administrative users to add new, edit or delete these existing roles. Here is a listing of the roles available out-of-the-box followed by a brief high-level description of what a user with this role can access:

- **Admins** - allows users to fully administer most areas of the Commerce Manager.
- **Everyone** - one of the default roles which is assigned when a customer registers an account from the front-end public site.
- **Management Users** - allows users access to the Commerce Manager.
- **Order Supervisor** - allows users to fully administer the Order Management system.
- **Order Managers** - allows users to manage (View/Create/Edit/Delete/Others) elements within the Order Management system.
- **Registered** - one of the default roles which is assigned when you register from an account from the front-end public site.
- **Shipping Manager** - has the ability to view, pack, and complete shipments.
- **Receiving Manager** - has the ability to view shipments and receive returns.



You can easily modify these existing roles or consolidate roles. In addition, custom roles can be created depending on your business needs.

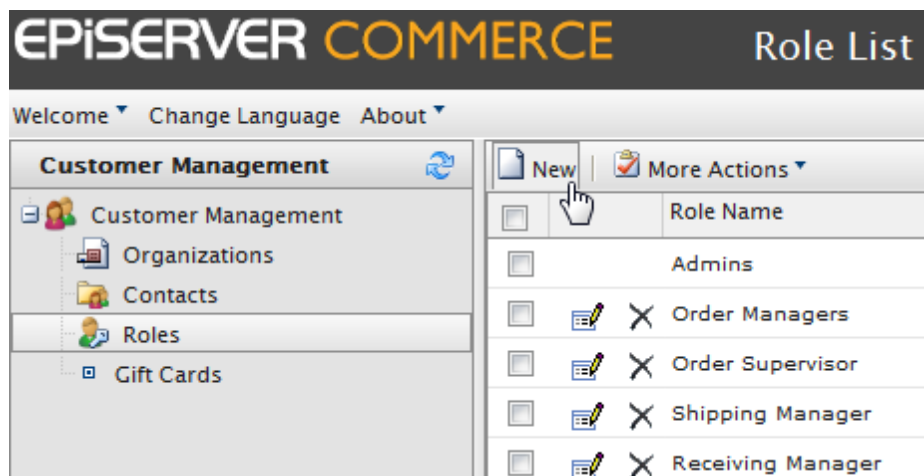
See also the *User Access and Roles section*, to find out more about access rights and role management in EPiServer CMS.

Creating, Editing, and Deleting Roles

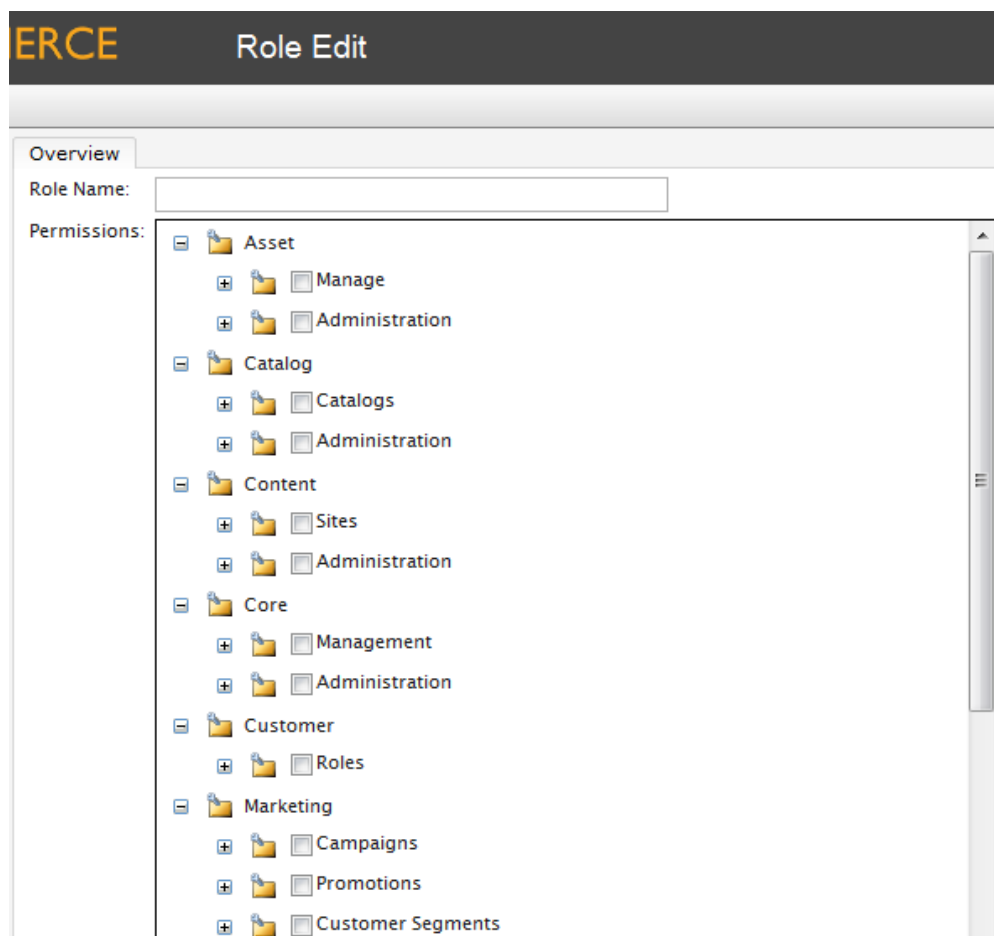
Out of the box, Commerce Manager includes a list of pre-existing Roles that can be assigned to Accounts. Users can also create their own Roles based on a set of Permissions. Roles allow Administrators to restrict users from accessing different systems or folders depending on their needs.

Creating a Role

To create a new Role, go to **Customer Management > Roles** to see the **Role List**.



Click on **New** to open up the **Role Edit** page.



There is a wealth of Permissions options Administrators can set for a Role.

Enter a **Role Name**.

Checkmark the boxes to give Permissions to the Account for this particular function or action. For example, if you want an Account to only **View** and **Edit Assets**, you will need to expand **Assets > Manage** and checkmark **View** and **Edit**.

Once done defining the Role, click on **OK**. The new Role will appear on the **Role List**.

Editing Existing Roles

All existing Roles, including the ones included out of the box with Commerce Manager, can be edited and customized. It is also a recommended reference to how each pre-existing Role works.

To edit a Role, click on the **Edit** icon.

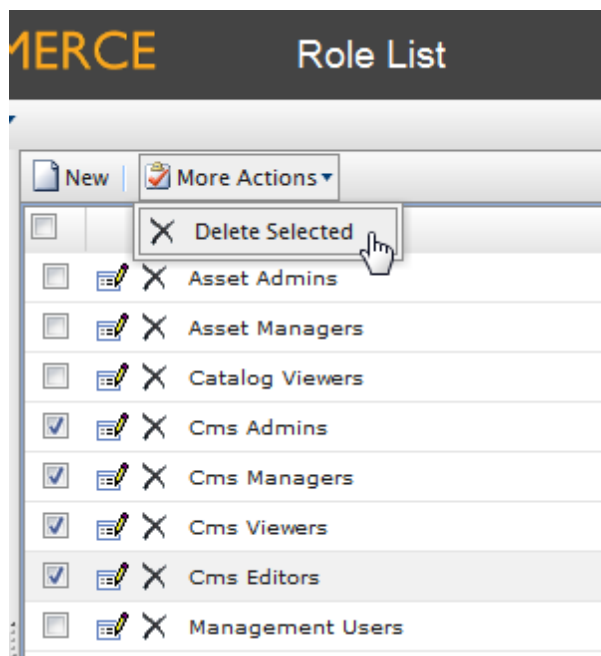
The **Role Edit** page appears. You can customize the Permissions settings for the Role. Once done, click **OK**.

Deleting Roles

To delete any Role on the list, there are two ways:

Click on the **X** button next to the name of the Role to delete one at a time.

To delete multiple Roles, checkmark each box and on the menu bar, click on **More Actions > Delete Selected**. Click **OK** when the pop-up appears.



Assigning Roles to Individual Accounts

Roles are designed to allow and disallow certain functionality and folders to individual accounts. When a Contact logs into his or her account, that Account is bound by the Roles it was assigned.

To assign one or more Roles to an account, go to **Customer Management > Contacts** and click on an existing Contact with an Account.

Under **Security**, click on **Roles**. The **Security** section only appears after an Account was created for the Contact.

The **Roles** form appear, allowing you to assign Roles to the Account. By default, an Account is already assigned to the "Registered" and "Everyone" roles.

Full Name: Mary Smith Parent Organization: Company X

Roles

Assign Role Remove Roles

<input type="checkbox"/>	Role Name	Organization	Inheritance
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Registered	none	[Undefined]
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Everyone	none	[Undefined]

Page Size: 20 (2 items) | Page < 1 >

Edit Cancel

Click on **Assign Role** to assign a new Role to the Account. A pop-up appears allowing you to assign a specific Role from the drop-down menu.

Assign Role

Security Role: Cms Admins

Organization: Company X

Inheritance: Inherit From Parent

Save Cancel

Select a **Security Role** from the drop-down to assign to the Account.

Optionally, you can assign an Organization to the Account, which enables the Inheritance drop-down menu below. If specific permissions are set for an Organization, you can set to "Inherit from Parent" (inherit permissions from the Parent organization) or "Overwrite parent."

Click **Save** to assign the role. Repeat these steps to assign more roles to the Account.

Full Name: Mary Smith Parent Organization: Company X

Roles

Assign Role Remove Roles

<input type="checkbox"/>	Role Name	Organization	Inheritance
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Registered	none	[Undefined]
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Everyone	none	[Undefined]
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Cms Admins	Company X	Overwrite parent

Page Size: 20 (3 items) | Page < 1 >

Edit Cancel

Catalog Management

The **Catalog Management** system provides full complement of tools and capabilities to create and manage a diverse range of products, variations, pricing strategies, languages, and related website functions.

To manage products, you can go to the back-end Commerce Manager and you will notice that products are arranged into one or more catalog(s). Catalogs are independent from one another and you may create as many catalogs as you need. Catalogs can be structured in a number of ways. For example, you may have various brands or product lines. Each brand or product line can have its own catalog. Or, a retailer may have multiple suppliers, in which case, you can segment each supplier into its own catalog.

A default B2C Sample Site along with a default electronics catalog (consisting of a Brands catalog + an Everything catalog) is included giving you a running demo site after you run the installer.

EPiServer Commerce allows you to easily and flexibly organize and categorize your products. All products referenced on a front-end site reside in a catalog created in Commerce Manager. Multiple catalogs can be created and assigned to one or more sites. The dates that each catalog will be available to the customer can also be defined. In this way, future revisions to items and pricing can be prepared easily and reviewed in advance of the release date to the site.

Catalogs can be organized into Categories, Products, SKUs, Bundles, Packages and Dynamic Packages.

Catalog and Catalog Entries

- **Catalogs** - a catalog is a top-level container for all catalog entries such as Categories, Products and SKUs.
- **Categories** - a Category is a grouping of purchasable products.
- **Products** - a Product represents various forms of merchandise that you can display and purchase from the front-end site, including Products, Variations/SKUs, Bundles, Packages and Dynamic Packages.
 - **Product Entries** - a Product Entry typically contains a product name, part number, description and images.
 - **Variations/SKUs** - a Variation or SKU corresponds to a specific type of product with specific characteristics. For example, a shirt product will have an individual Variation/SKU which includes size, color and sleeve length.
 - **Bundles** - a Bundle is a collection of Variations and SKUs allowing customers to purchase two or more items at once.
 - **Packages** - a Package is comparable to an individual SKU because the Package item must be purchased as a whole (i.e. computer system).
 - **Dynamic Packages** - a Dynamic Package is similar to the Package definition above with the added ability to configure the Package during checkout.

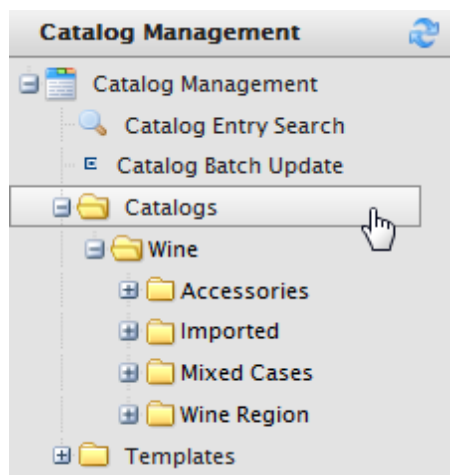
Working with Catalogs

A catalog is a top-level container for all catalog entries such as Categories, Products and SKUs. In this section, you will learn how to browse, create, and delete catalogs. We recommend that you start with the catalog that came with the EPiServer Commerce sample site, which contains the **Wine** sample catalog. You can also use the export/import functionality to get catalogs into a different environment. Also, you are given the flexibility to use a .csv file to rapidly create a new catalog from scratch.

Browsing Catalogs

All Catalogs are managed under the **Catalog Management** system.

To browse the Catalog, click on **Catalog Management** on the left menu. Click on **Catalogs** to browse the list of Catalogs.

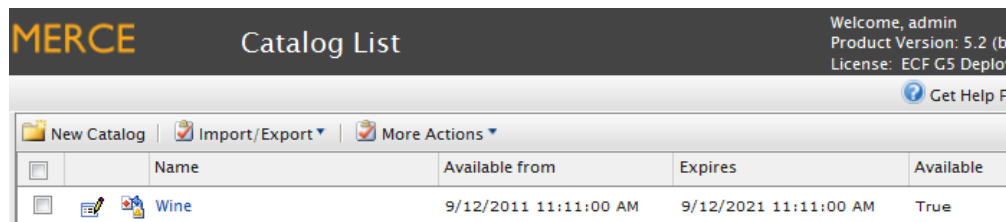


The **Catalog List** page shows the **Wine** sample node by default, together with associated sub-categories:

- **Accessories**
- **Imported**
- **Mixed Cases**
- **Wine Region**

Clicking on the **Edit** icon, located between the check box and the folder icon, will display more information and settings of the particular Catalog in the Catalog Edit page.

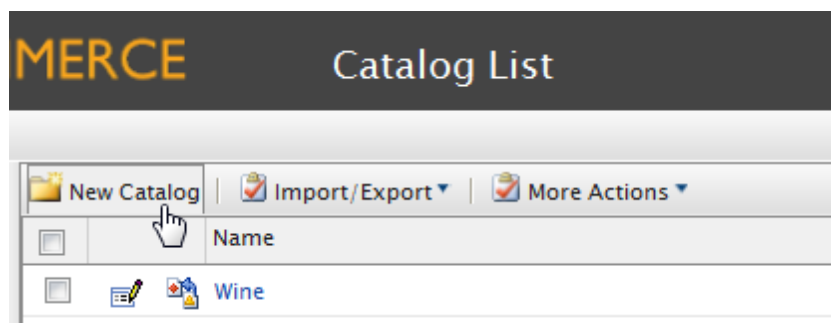
Clicking on the Catalog name ("Wine") will take you to the **Node List** page, which is the list of Sub-Categories under the selected Catalog.



Creating a Catalog

The **Catalog List** page, used to organize and manage catalogs, contains information regarding brands and sales items. These sets of information will either be displayed on the front-end site, or used for other purposes such as for pricing and *Promotions*.

To create a new Catalog, click on **New Catalog**.



- **Catalog Name** - this name will appear in the Catalog List Page ("Wine").
- **Catalog Owner** - designate an existing user as the Catalog owner.
- **Available from** - select the date to which the Catalog is activated.
- **Expires on** - select the expiration date; once the expiration date passes, the Product will no longer appear on the front-end site.
- **Default Currency** - this setting will set the Default Currency for the relevant Catalog contents.
- **Default Language** - this will set the Default Language for the contents.
- **Base Weight** - this assigns the weight units for the contents of the Catalog (e.g. pounds or kilograms). More units may be added.
- **Other Languages** - you can also select other available Languages other than your default Language.
- **Sites** - this determines the site/sites that the relevant Products will be displayed in, if you have multiple sites.
- **Sort Order** - the Sort Order determines the order to which the Catalog appears in the Catalog List page.
- **Available** - select "Yes" to make the Catalog contents appear on the front end site; select "No" to hide the Catalog from the front-end site.

Once done setting up your catalog attributes, select **OK** to save the catalog. You will be brought back to the **Catalog List** with the new catalog. Select **Cancel** to cancel out of the **Catalog Edit** page and back to the Catalog List.

Commerce Manager Catalog Edit

Overview

Catalog Name:

catalog name description

Catalog owner:

Available from:

Expires on:

Default Currency:

Default Language:

Base Weight:

Other Languages:

Sites:

Sort Order:

Available: ☒ Yes ☐ No

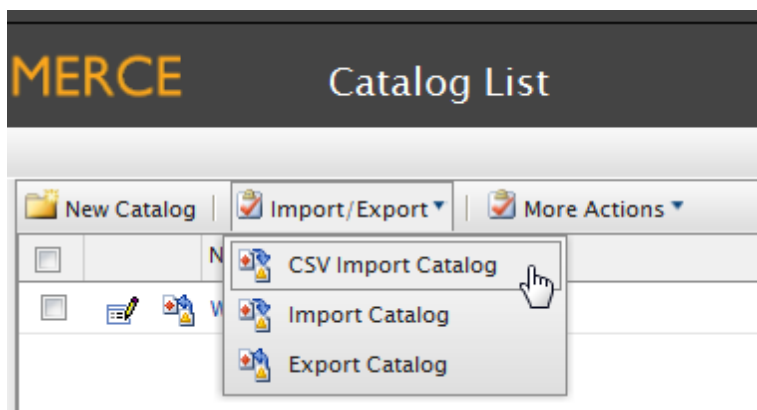
OK Cancel

Importing and Exporting Catalogs

Preexisting catalog data can be imported or exported quickly to and from Commerce Manager.

Accessing the Import & Export Functions

1. Access the **Catalog List** page in the Catalog Management subsystem. The Import/Export menu is located in the upper left corner of the main window.
2. For exporting catalogs, click on the check box for the appropriate catalog nodes.
3. Click on the **Import/Export** pull-down menu to choose either import or export. The corresponding page will appear in the main window.



Importing Catalogs

1. Browse and select the file to upload.
2. Click on the **Upload** file button. The files upload will appear in the list below.
3. Click on the **Start Import** button. The progress window will show that the import is taking place.
4. When the import is 100% complete, close the progress window.

Import

It is strongly recommended that you back up your ECF database before performing import.

To import catalog, please pick up an existing file from the grid below or upload a new one. Then click the button 'Start Import' to start importing.

Add New File

Files Available For Import:

Actions	File Name	Size	Created	Last Updated
Download Delete	CatalogExport_Catalog_Wine_Sample.zip	742.90 KB	Today, 2:35 PM	Today, 2:34 PM

1 Page 1 of 1 (1 items)

Start Import

Exporting Catalogs

There are two ways to export catalogs in the Export Catalogs page.

1. Export everything included in the catalog node that you've selected.
 - To do this, click on the **Start Export** button. The progress window appears and shows the status of the export.
 - When the export is 100% complete, click on **Close** to close the progress window
2. Export only the desired files.
 - To do this, click on the **Download** links highlighted in blue.

Export Catalog

Welcome, admin
Product Version: 5.2 (build: 377)
License: ECF G5 Deployment (EpiSer)

[Get Help For This Page](#)

Export

You're about to export a catalog. Click the button to start.

Start Export

Exported Files List:

Actions	File Name	Size	Created	Last Updated
Download Delete	CatalogExport_Catalog_Wine_Sample.zip	742.90 KB	Today, 10:31 AM	Today, 10:31 AM

Page 1 of 1 (1 items)

Using CSV Files to Quickly Create Custom Catalogs

Why Should I Use a CSV File?

The CSV catalog import is a feature in the Catalog Management system that enables you to import and manage catalog entries (such as Products, Variations/SKUs, Packages) in bulk using an excel spreadsheet (.csv format). It is an alternative to manually creating catalog entries directly in Commerce Manager, which can be tedious when dealing with a large amount of catalog data.

This feature enables you to accomplish these key tasks:

- Import your .csv spreadsheets and create new catalog entries in Commerce Manager.
- Set your catalog items into a desired category structure of your choosing
- Create entry relations to associate one entry with others (e.g., variation/SKUs will appear within a product or a package)
- Edit or delete existing catalog items..

The CSV catalog import feature can be used for your entire catalog data, or just portions of them.

Import Overview

Here are the basic steps you can take to import and set up a new catalog using the CSV import feature. Before you start, choose an existing catalog folder or create a new one (in the Catalog Management system) to import the CSV files to.

1. Create CSV data files (using Excel Spreadsheet, Notepad, etc.) with information about your categories, entries, and entry relations.
2. Create necessary meta fields for the new catalog entries (in the Administration system).
3. Upload the CSV data files to the **CSV Import** page.
4. Create a mapping file for each CSV file. A mapping file is needed to link each column of data in a CSV file to the correct attributes in Commerce Manager.
5. Import the CSV files and their corresponding mapping files into a specific catalog.
6. Create entry relations to associate one entry with another (e.g., a Package and a Product, a Product and a Variation/SKU, etc.).

Format for CSV Files

CSV files you create and import into Commerce Manager need to have a particular format.

- The first row should have headers that correspond to different attributes of the data you want to import (e.g., product name, price, description, image file location, etc.).
- There are a few attributes that are in your CSV file to correctly structure your catalog:
- **Code:** A unique code to identify each category or entry

- **Name:** A unique name for each row of data
- **Entry Type** (for entries only): Each row must contain one of the following five words in order for the Commerce Manager to correctly recognize its entry type --"Variation", "Product", "Package", "Bundle" or "Dynamic Package"
- **Parent & Child Entry Code** (for entry relations only): A CSV file containing these codes can specify relationships between entries (e.g., display different Variations within a Product). Although, the following attribute is useful in creating a hierarchy in your catalog:
- **Action:** A command to specify the action that will be taken during the import. Choose one of the three options: **Insert/Update/Delete or I/U/D**.

Note: Please make sure to specify an appropriate command for each line of the CSV files. Entering "Insert" when that data already exist, or "Update" when no data exist will give an error during import and those line of data will not get successfully imported.

- **Category Code** (by comma): By assigning a category code to an entry, you can specify the category that you want to place your entry in. Also please note this rule:
- **SEO URL:** By design, this attribute that is present in both categories and entries must be unique for each item in your catalog. Importing files that contain more than one identical url will result in an error.

Mapping Types

Different mapping types are used to create the mapping files mentioned in step 4 above.

- **Category w/ Meta Data** – select this type to create a mapping file for your category files.
- **Entry w/ Meta Data** – select this type to create a mapping file for all the entry files (i.e., Packages, Products, Variation/SKUs, Bundles, and Dynamic Packages).
- **Entry Relation** – select this type to create a mapping file for your entry relation file that specifies the relationships between entries such as many SKUs to one Product, or SKUs and Products to a Package.
- **Entry Association** – select this type when creating a mapping file for entry associations (Advertising other items under titles such as "You may also be interested in...")
- **Variation w/ Inventory** – select this type to create a mapping file to import your Pricing/Inventory data located in your Variation/SKU Edit screen.
- **Sale Price** – Select this type to create a mapping file for Sale Price file, which specifies different currencies for each item.

By selecting these options, the Commerce Manager will display different sets of Fields and Attributes for you to manually assign to each data column of your CSV file. Figure 8 and 9 below shows the display of the mapping files with the Category w/ Meta and Entry Relations Data type respectively. The items under **Fields and Attributes** with superscripts 1 and/or 2 are headers that are required attributes that must exist in the CSV files you are importing (1- required field for Insert, 2 – required field for Update).

Example: Importing and Setting up a New Catalog

The example below demonstrates how to use CSV import using the guidelines provided above.

Let's say you want to set up a "Baby Stuff" catalog with categories and entries as shown here in Figure 1.

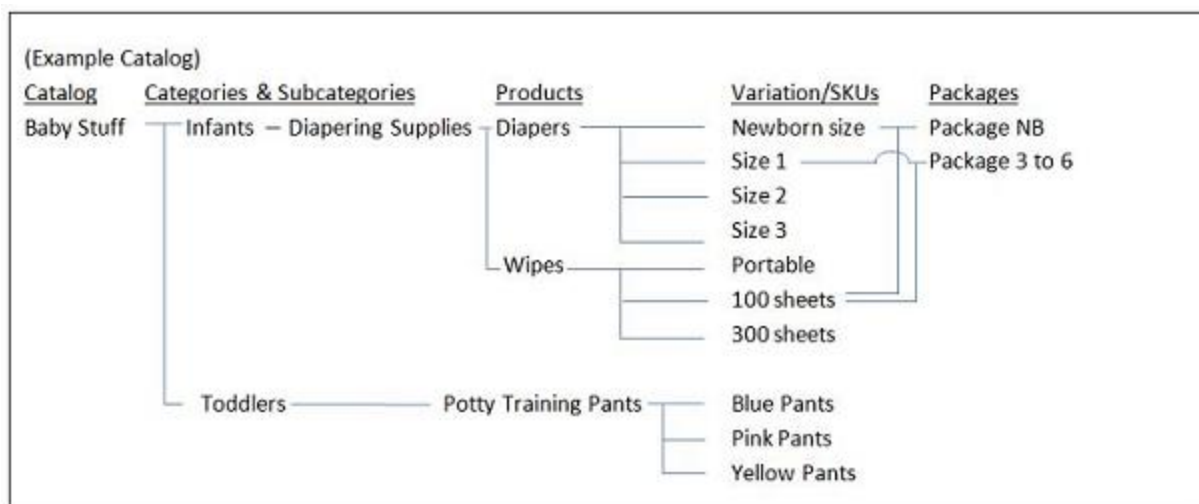


Figure 1

Prerequisite: Create a new catalog

First, create a new catalog called "Baby Stuff" in the Catalog Management system.

Step 1: Create CSV files containing data for your new entries

The example below is based on an a set of sample .csv files.

These files provide the base for the discussion in the following section.

The sample files contain the following:

- BabyStuffCategories.csv
- BabyProducts.csv
- BabyPackages.csv
- BabyVariations.csv
- BabyVariationInventoryPricing.csv
- BabyEntryRelations.csv
- BabyAssociations.csv
- BabySalePrice.csv

CSV File Type 1 - Category File

This file specifies data for categories and/or subcategories within a Catalog.

The top line has column headers that will be matched with the Meta fields in the later steps. The headers can also have different names. As you will see in later steps, Category Code in column 1 is important since it specifies where the entry data will be stored. The code entered in under Parent Code in column 2 can be used to create subcategories. If the Parent Code is set to "null" or "root," then that category will be created in the root level of a catalog. In this example, the "Infants" and "Toddlers" category will be created at the root level, while the "Diapering Supplies" category will be located under "Infants" as a subcategory.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	Action	Category Code	Parent Code	Category Name	Available from	Expires on	Available (True/False)
2	Insert	Cat1	null	Infants	1/1/2009	6/1/2009	TRUE
3	Insert	Cat2	null	Toddlers	1/1/2009	6/1/2009	TRUE
4	Insert	Cat10	Cat1	Diapering Supplies	1/1/2009	5/1/2009	TRUE
5							

Figure 2

CSV File Type 2 – Entry Files

These files specifies data for Catalog Entries. The Products, Variation/SKUS, and Packages CSV files for this example are shown in Figure 3, 4, and 5 respectively.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	
1	Action	Product Code	Product Name	Entry Type	Category Code	Available from	Expires on	Availa
2	Insert	Prod1	Diapers	Product	Cat10	1/1/2009	6/1/2009	
3	Insert	Prod2	Wipes	Product	Cat10	1/1/2009	5/1/2009	
4	Insert	Prod3	Potty Training Pants	Product	Cat2	1/1/2009	6/1/2009	
5								

Figure 3

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	
1	Action	Variation Code	Variation Name	Entry Type	Category Code	Available from	Expires on	(
2	Insert	Var1	Diapers - Newborn size	Variation	Cat10	1/1/2009 6:00	10/1/2012 18:00	
3	Insert	Var2	Diapers - size 1	Variation	Cat10	1/1/2009 6:00	10/1/2012 18:00	
4	Insert	Var3	Diapers - size 2	Variation	Cat10	1/1/2009 6:00	10/1/2012 18:00	
5	Insert	Var4	Diapers - size 3	Variation	Cat10	1/1/2009 6:00	10/1/2012 18:00	
6	Insert	Var5	Diapers - size 4	Variation	Cat10	1/1/2009 6:00	10/1/2012 18:00	
7	Insert	Var6	Training Pants - Blue	Variation	Cat2	1/2/2009 11:00	10/1/2012 18:00	
8	Insert	Var7	Training Pants - Pink	Variation	Cat2	1/2/2009 11:00	10/1/2012 18:00	
9	Insert	Var8	Training Pants - Yellow	Variation	Cat2	1/2/2009 11:00	10/1/2012 18:00	
10	Insert	Var9	Baby Wipes - Portable 80 ct	Variation	Cat10	1/2/2009 11:00	10/1/2012 18:00	
11	Insert	Var10	Baby Wipes - 300 ct	Variation	Cat10	1/2/2009 11:00	10/1/2012 18:00	
12	Insert	Var11	Baby Wipes - 700 ct	Variation	Cat10	1/2/2009 11:00	10/1/2012 18:00	
13								
14								

Figure 4

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	
1	Action	Package Code	Package Name	Entry Type	Category Code	Available from	Expires on	Availa
2	Insert	Package NB	Newborn Package	Package	Cat10	1/1/2009	12/31/2010	
3	Insert	Package3to6	3 to 6 mo Package	Package	Cat10	1/1/2009	12/31/2010	
4								

Figure 5

CSV File Type 3 – Entry Relations File

This file is used to link one entry to others. In this example, Var1 ~ Var5 (different diaper sizes) are associated to Prod1 "Diapers," Var9 ~ Var11 (different quantity for wipes) are associated with Prod2 "Wipes" and so forth. Also some variations are assigned to packages. Please note that the Prod, Var and Package codes MUST BE the codes from the entry CSV files (Figure 3, 4, and 5). If you include codes that are not defined in the entry CSV files, you will get an error while importing them into Commerce Manager in Step 4.

	A	B	C	D
1	Action	Parent Entry Code	Child Entry Code	
2	Insert	Prod1	Var1	
3	Insert	Prod1	Var2	
4	Insert	Prod1	Var3	
5	Insert	Prod1	Var4	
6	Insert	Prod1	Var5	
7	Insert	Prod2	Var9	
8	Insert	Prod2	Var10	
9	Insert	Prod2	Var11	
10	Insert	Prod3	Var6	
11	Insert	Prod3	Var7	
12	Insert	Prod3	Var8	
13	Insert	Package NB	Var1	
14	Insert	Package NB	Var10	
15	Insert	Package3to6	Var2	
16	Insert	Package3to6	Var10	
17				

Figure 6

CSV file type 4 - Associations file

This file is used to create associations between different entries. In this example, Var 10 is associated to Var 1 as an Accessory, and Var 2 to Var 1 as a cross-sell item.

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	Action	Baby Catalog Association Name	Parent Entry Code	Child Entry Code	Sort Order	Association Type
2	Insert	Accessories	Var1	Var10	1	Cross-Sell
3	Insert	Customers Who Bought This Item Also Bought	Var1	Var2	2	Accessory
4						

Figure 7

CSV file type 5 - Pricing/Inventory file

This file is used to specify the information for the Pricing/Inventory tab of each individual entry.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J
1	Action	Entry Code	Price	Tax Category	Track Inventory (True/False)	Warehouse	Weight	Package	Min Quantity	Max Quantity
2	Update	Var1	16.99	General Sales	TRUE	Default Warehouse	1	box	1	
3	Update	Var2	17.99	General Sales	TRUE	Default Warehouse	1	box	1	
4	Update	Var3	17.99	General Sales	TRUE	Default Warehouse	1	box	1	
5	Update	Var4	18.99	General Sales	TRUE	Default Warehouse	1	box	1	
6	Update	Var5	18.99	General Sales	TRUE	Default Warehouse	1	box	1	
7	Update	Var6	25.99	General Sales	TRUE	Default Warehouse	1	box	1	
8	Update	Var7	25.99	General Sales	TRUE	Default Warehouse	1	box	1	
9	Update	Var8	25.99	General Sales	TRUE	Default Warehouse	1	box	1	
10	Update	Var9	4.49	General Sales	TRUE	Default Warehouse	1	box	1	
11	Update	Var10	15.99	General Sales	TRUE	Default Warehouse	1	box	1	
12	Update	Var11	25.99	General Sales	TRUE	Default Warehouse	1	box	1	
13										

Figure 8

CSV file type 6 - Sale Price file

This file is used to specify the information for the Pricing section of the Pricing/Inventory page.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I
1	Action	Entry Code	Sale Type	Sale Code	Unit Price	Currency	Start Date	End Date	
2	Insert	Var1		BBV1	16.99	USD	1/1/2009 6:00	10/1/2009 18:00	
3	Insert	Var2		BBV2	17.99	USD	1/1/2009 6:00	10/1/2009 18:00	
4	Insert	Var3		BBV3	17.99	USD	1/1/2009 6:00	10/1/2009 18:00	
5	Insert	Var4		BBV4	18.99	USD	1/1/2009 6:00	10/1/2009 18:00	
6	Insert	Var5		BBV5	18.99	USD	1/1/2009 6:00	10/1/2009 18:00	
7	Insert	Var6		BBV6	25.99	USD	1/2/2009 11:00	6/3/2009 23:00	
8	Insert	Var7		BBV7	25.99	USD	1/2/2009 11:00	6/2/2009 22:00	
9	Insert	Var8		BBV8	25.99	USD	1/2/2009 11:00	6/1/2009 19:00	
10	Insert	Var9		BBV9	4.49	USD	1/2/2009 11:00	6/2/2009 22:00	
11	Insert	Var10		BBV10	15.99	USD	1/2/2009 11:00	6/2/2009 22:00	
12	Insert	Var11		BBV11	25.99	USD	1/2/2009 11:00	6/2/2009 22:00	
13									

Figure 9

Step 2: Create necessary meta fields for the new catalog entries

For this example, no additional meta fields need to be created because the sample spreadsheet uses only the default attributes.

To create new meta fields follow these steps here.

- Go to the Administration system in Commerce Manager.
- Select the "Catalog System" folder and then "Meta Classes" node located in the left navigation frame.
- Select Create New, then New Meta Class from its pull-down menu.
 - Enter in a Name, Friendly Name (e.g., Baby Catalog), and some description (optional) for the meta class, and choose "Catalog Entry" for Entry Type.
 - Click OK to save the new class.
- Next Select Create New, then New Meta Field from its pull-down menu.
 - Enter in a Name, Friendly Name (e.g., Baby Diaper Size), and some optional description.
 - Also Choose the data type for this meta field and other properties by clicking on the checkboxes.
 - Click OK to save the new field.
 - Repeat the steps to create all the necessary fields.
- Associate the new meta fields to the meta class you created.
 - Select to "Meta Classes" node on the left navigation frame again.
 - For "Element" choose "Catalog Entry" in the pull-down menu.
 - Under "Type" choose your meta class (e.g., Baby Catalog) you created earlier.
 - Select the desired meta fields from the list displayed at the bottom of the screen.
 - Select OK to save the new meta class to fields association.

- You are done with setting up your meta fields.

Step 3: Upload the CSV data files to the CSV Import page

Follow these steps to prepare the CSV files for import:

- Select the Catalog Management system.
- In the upper-left detail area, click on Catalogs folder and you will see the Catalog List view in the main area.
- In the action area above the main view, click the Import/Export drop-down button and select CSV Import Catalog.
- You will now see the CSV Import Catalog page in the main screen. The screen contains two tabs 1) CSV Import and 2) Mapping File, which we will be talking about next.

CSV Import Tab

- In the "CSV Import" tab in the main view, click "Add New File."
- Browse for the CSV file you wish to import, then click "Upload File."
- When you get the "Uploaded File:" confirmation, click "Save the file."
- The CSV file you uploaded will be added to the "Files available for import:" list.
- Repeat the previous four steps for each CSV file you wish to upload.

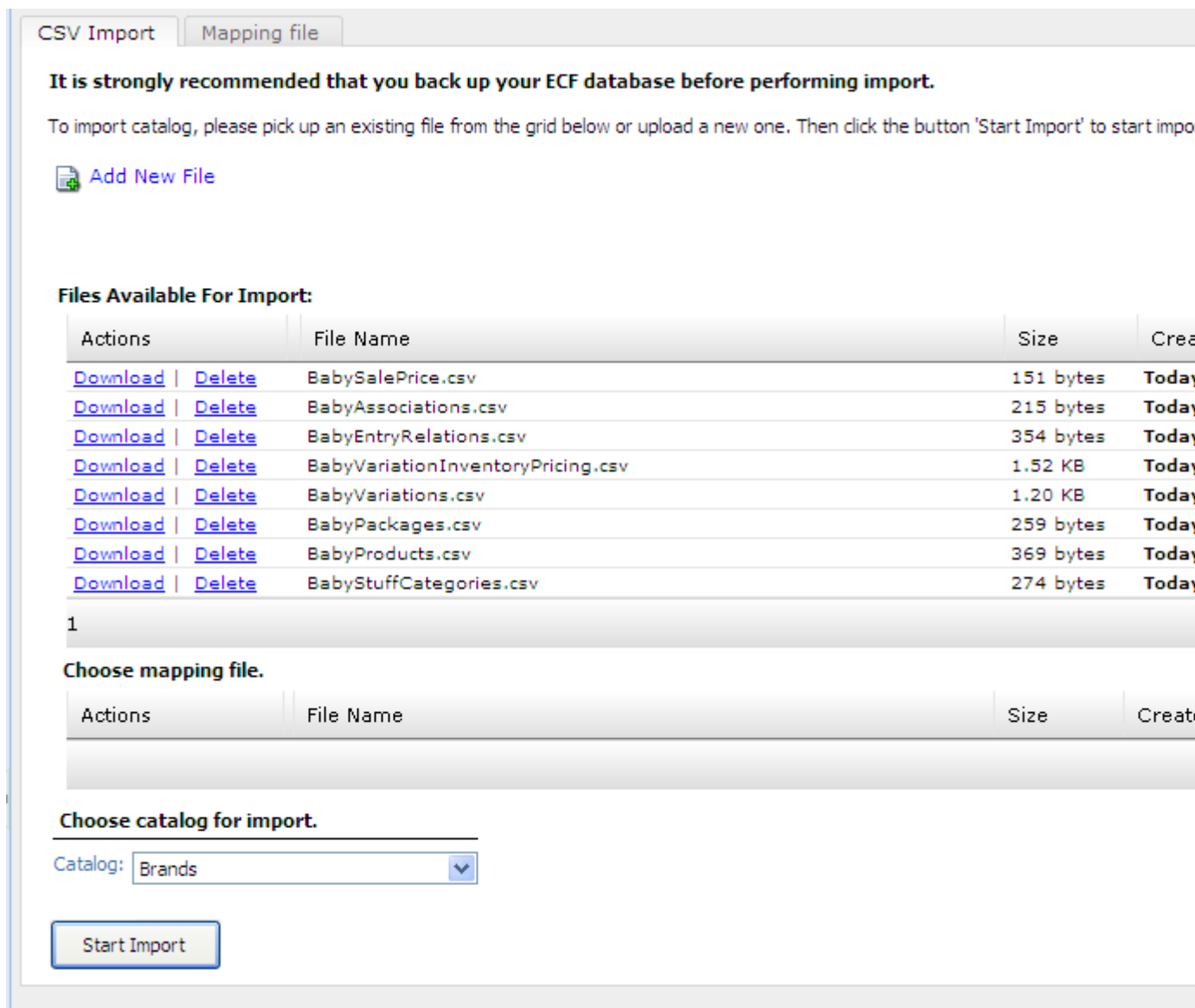


Figure 10

Step 4: Create a mapping file for each CSV file

Now create a mapping file that will specify the data in the CSV file to its corresponding attributes in the Commerce Manager.

Mapping file tab

- Click the "Mapping file" tab in the main view. You will now see the "Mapping file" tab view of the CSV Import Catalog view as shown in Figure 11.

CSV Import | **Mapping file**

Edit existing mapping file.

Load mapping file:

MetaClass, Language

Mapping Type:

Meta Class:

Language:

Data File And CSV Adjustment

Data File:

Delimiter:

Text Qualifier:

Encoding:

Fields and Attributes | **Column headers in the data file** | **Custom values**

Action (Insert/Update/Delete or I/U/D) |

Code^{1,2} |

Parent Code |

Name¹ |

Available from |

Expires on |

Display Template |

Available (True/False) |

Sort Order |

SeoTitle (en-us) |

SeoUrl (en-us) |

SeoDescription (en-us) |

SeoKeywords (en-us) |

Display Name (en-us) |

Primary Image |

Description (en-us) |

Save mapping file.

Enter file name:

Figure 11

Edit existing mapping file section

- **Load mapping file:** This section is used to retrieve previously created and saved mapping files. Since there is no existing mapping file in this example, leave this section blank.

Meta Class, Language section

- Mapping Type*: Select "Category w/ Meta Data"
- Meta Class*: Select "Default Catalog Node"
- Language*: English

Data file and CSV adjustment section

- Data File*: The drop down values presented here are dependent on the different CSV data files you uploaded on the "CSV Import" tab in step 2.
- For this example, first choose "BabyStuffCategory.csv." Leave the rest of the field as default and move on to the next section.

Fields and Attributes, Column headers in the data file, and Selected values section

The values presented under the "Fields and Attributes" column are representative of the "Meta Class" selected in the "MetaClass, Language" section above (which were either previously imported or created within Commerce Manager).

The values presented in the drop-down menus under the "Column headers in the data file" column are representative of the "Data file" selected in the "Data file and CSV adjustment" section above (which were previously imported above).

- Select the appropriate "Column header" drop-down value to "map" with the MetaClass "Fields and Attributes" to the left; the value selected will be reflected in the "Selected values" column to the right.

Save mapping file section

- Enter a file name for the "Enter file name" textbox. For this example, save the mapping files using the same CSV file names.
- Click the "Save" button. The browser returns to the CSV Import tab, and the mapping file in .XML format will be added to the list in the "Choose mapping file" section.
- Repeat Step 3 to create and save a mapping file for each CSV files you wish to import.
- For CSV Entry files, select the "Entry w/ Meta Data" option under "Mapping Type."
- For CSV Entry Relations file, select "Entry Relation".
- For CSV Associations file, select "Entry Association."
- For CSV Pricing/Inventory file, select "Variation w/ Inventory."
- For CSV Sale Pricing file, select "Sale Price."
- When all the mapping files are saved, your CSV Import tab screen should look something like this.

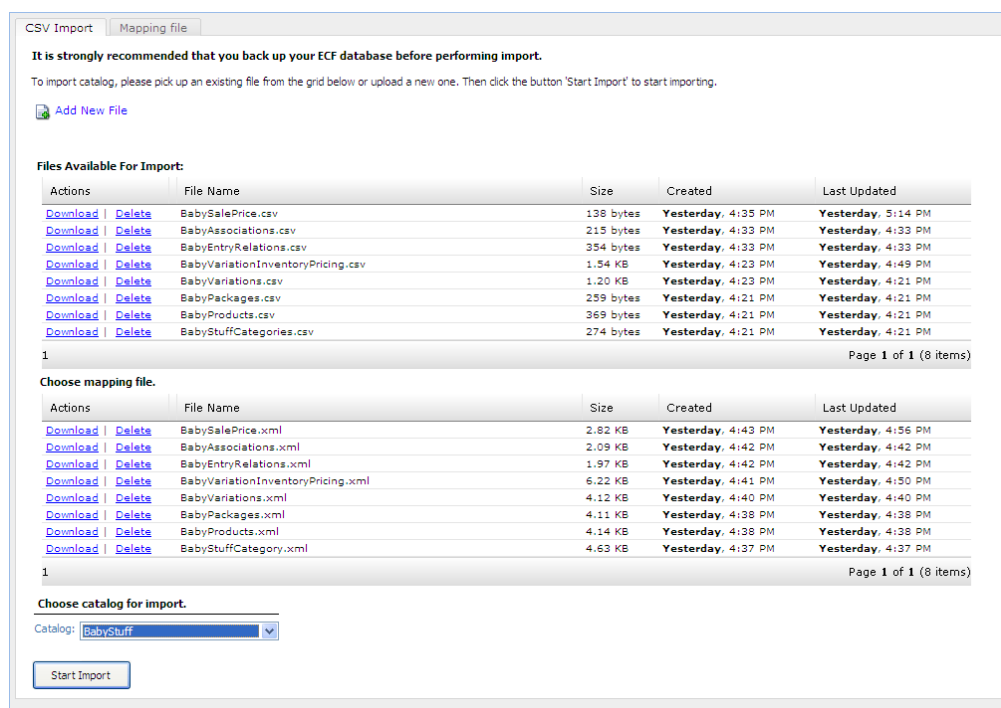


Figure 12

Step 5. Import the CSV files and their corresponding mapping files into a specific catalog

At the "CSV Import" tab view (Figure 12), do the following:

- Select and highlight the CSV file you wish to import in the "Files available for import" section. For this example, select BabyStuffCategories.csv.
- Select and highlight the mapping file that corresponds to the selected CSV file in the "Choose mapping file for import" section. For this example, select BabyStuffCategories.xml.
- Select the catalog in the "Catalog" drop-down into which you would like to import your CSV data. In this example choose "Baby Stuff".

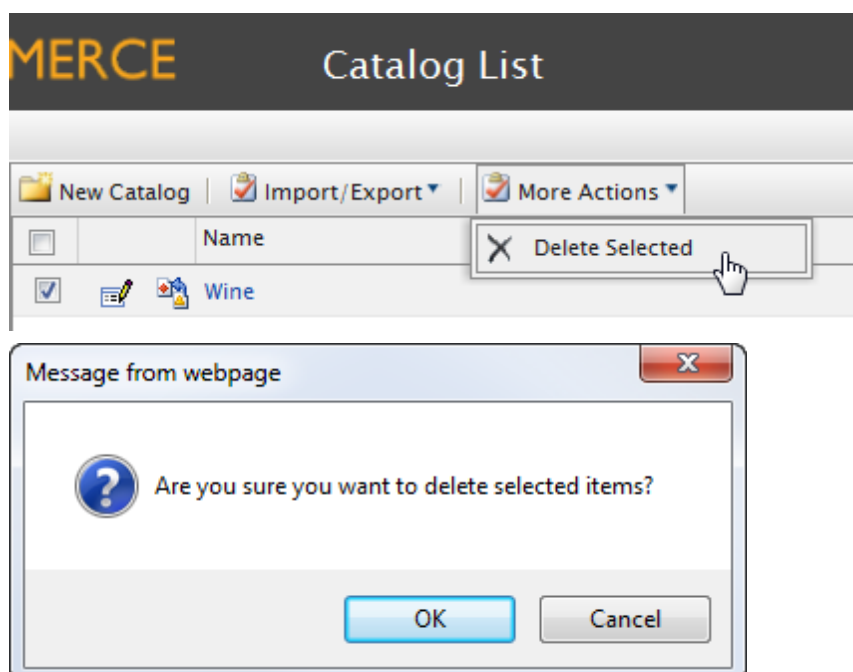
- Click the "Start import" button. You will see the "Importing catalog" modal dialog box which will notify you of the percentage of completion as well as logging messages.
- Click "Close Window" at the bottom of the modal dialog to complete the operation.
- Repeat Step 4 to import all the remaining CSV & Mapping pairs.

Step 6. Verify Your Import

In the Catalog Management system, expand the "Baby Stuff" folder under Catalog and verify that the contents of your CSV file were imported into the appropriate catalog.

Deleting a Catalog

1. At the **Catalog** List page, check off the box to the respective Catalog you wish delete.
2. Select **More Actions** and then **Delete Selected** from its pull-down menu, located in the menu bar.
3. A pop up will appear to confirm your action. Select **OK** to delete it. The chosen catalog will be deleted from the list.



Categories and Nodes

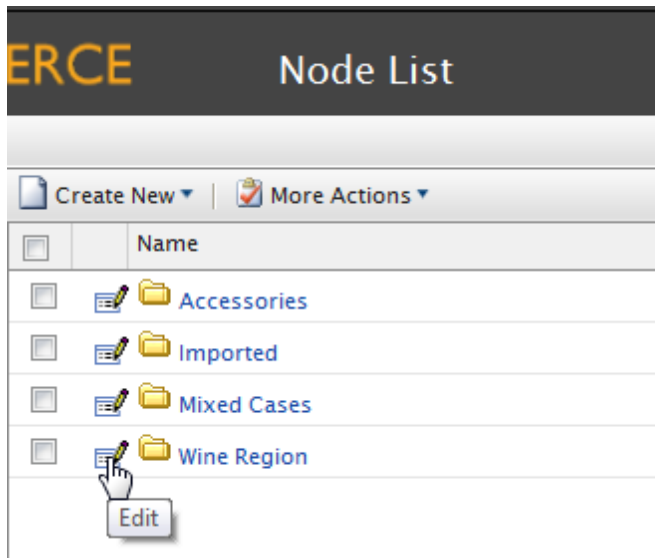
A **Category** or **Node** is a grouping of products available for purchasing. In this section, you will learn how to browse, create, clone, move, link, and delete categories and sub-categories.

Browsing Categories

The Node List (aka the Category List) is used to organize and manage nodes/categories, subcategories created within a Catalog.

The "Wine" catalog for example, which is available in the EPiServer Commerce sample site, includes nodes "Accessories", "Imported", "Mixed Cases" and "Wine Regions". Additional nodes or subcategories may be created in the **Node List** page.

1. Clicking on the Edit icon, located between the check box and the folder icon, will display the **Catalog Node Edit** page, which contains more information and settings of that particular node. Here you can setup the information and status that are common for all its subcategories.
2. Clicking on any node names (highlighted in blue) will take you to the next sublevel, which shows the list of categories under the selected node.



Menu Bar Functions

- **Create New**

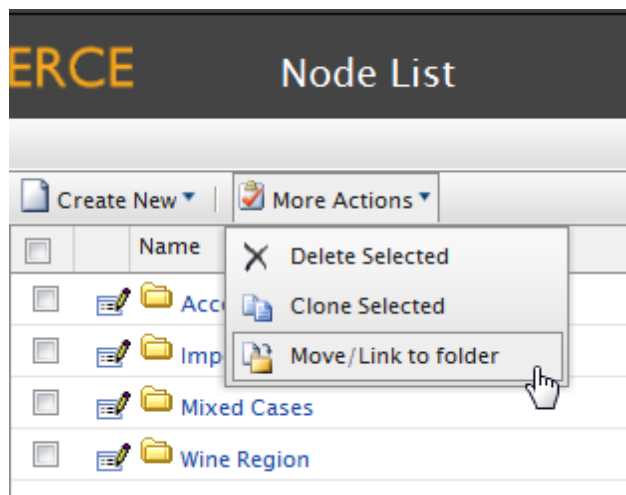
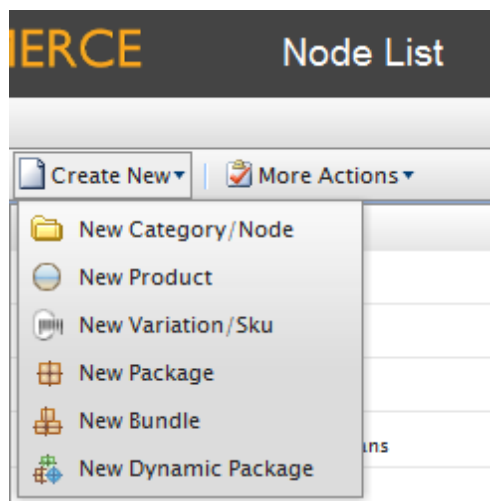
This dropdown allows users to create different types of Categories/Nodes or Product entries as shown below.

- Category/Node
- Product
- Variation/SKU
- Package
- Bundle
- Dynamic Package

- **More Actions**

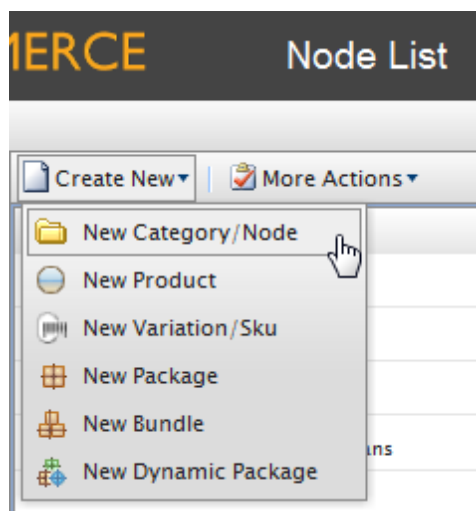
- Delete Selected
- Clone Selected
- Move/Link to Folder

Under **More Actions**, cloning creates a duplicates with a unique ID that you can place in any location/hierarchy that you choose. **Move/Link to Folder** allows you either to move a category/product to a new location/hierarchy or to link one category/product to another category/product. You can for example create a category called "Featured Products" and link it to items across various other categories. This way, if you make changes to content on the original product page and that same product is part of the "Featured Products" category as a linked product, the changes will be displayed in both locations. In other words, changes are bi-directional. Links can be broken if either of the two are deleted.



Creating a Category

1. To create a new category, click on **Create New** and then click on **New Category/Node**.



This page will appear when creating a new category or editing an existing one. The **Catalog Node Edit** page will contain information of a **Node** selected from the **Node List** page.

ERCE

Catalog Node Edit

Welcome, admin
Product Version: 5.2
License: ECF G5 Deployment

[Get Help](#)

Overview | SEO | Assets

Name: Accessories
catalog node name description

Available from: 9/27/2011 12:53 PM

Expires on: 9/27/2014 12:53 PM

Display Template:


Code: Accessories

Sort Order: 0

Available: ☒ Yes ☐ No

Meta Class: Region Catalog

Display Name (en-us): Accessories

Primary Image (en-us): 

Primary Image

Description (en-us):

Css Class Paragraph Default Font Size

B I U [List Icons] [Link Icon] [Image Icon] [Table Icon]

Our best selling accessories to go with your wine...

Normal HTML Preview

Words: 9 Characters: 51

Enter description here

OK Cancel

Overview Fields

- **Name** - enter a name for the product.
- **Available from** - the date to which the product is activated.
- **Expires on** - the date on which the product expires; once the expiration date passes, the product will no longer appear on the public site.
- **Display Template** - if applicable, chose a display template used to show the products in the public site from this dropdown box.
- **Code** - enter a product code here (e.g. Accessories)
- **Sort Order** - determines the order to which the product is sorted in the Node List page
- **Available** - select Yes to make the product appear on the public site; select No to hide the product from the public site
- **Meta Class** - the choice here dictates which of the meta-fields or product attributes will appear on the site.
- **Display Name** - enter a name the way you like to use on the public site.
- **Primary Image** - use the browse button to select and upload an image here.
- **Description** - enter a description of a product.

Once done, click **OK** on the bottom of the page.

SEO

Search Engine Optimization (SEO) can be achieved by entering the following information for the product.

- **Title** - this is the friendly name that appears in your browser's title area.
- **URL** - this is what gets displayed in the browser URL window.
- **Description** - this is the meta description that is used for SEO purposes by search engines.
- **Keywords** - keywords used for SEO purposes by search engines.

ERCE Catalog Node Edit

Overview **SEO** Assets

Title (en-us): Wine Accessories

Url (en-us): Accessories.aspx

Description (en-us): Accessories for the finest selections

Keywords (en-us): glass cases

OK Cancel

Assets



Under **Assets**, you can associate additional files such as images, pdf, and video files all stored in the Asset Management system.

ERCE Catalog Node Edit

Overview SEO **Assets**

Find Assets: Root/Video/ Add Asset

Group Name: default

Edit Command	ID	Type	Name	Group	Sort Order
 	2	folder	Root/Video/	default	0

1 Page 1 of 1 (1 items)

OK Cancel

Follow these three simple steps to add an asset file to the current entry.

1. Click on the **Find Assets** pull-down menu to display all files available in the Asset system.
 2. Choose one file at a time and type in an appropriate **Group Name** (see table below), depending now how you would like it to be displayed.
 3. Click on **Add Asset**. The asset associated to this entry will appear in the lower section of the screen.
- You can edit the Group Name or sort order by clicking on the Edit icon to the left of an existing asset. After making any changes, make sure to click **Update** (Clicking **OK** at the bottom of the

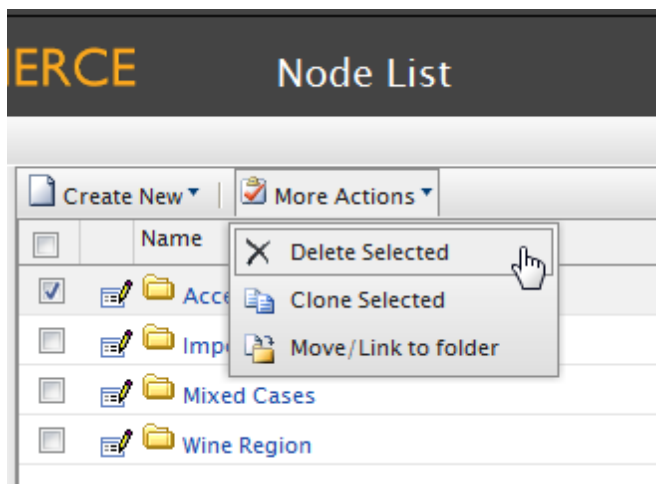
screen during the editing mode will not save the changes made).

- You can delete any existing asset by clicking on the "X" icon.

File type	Group Names	How it gets displayed in the public site
Image Files (jpg, png, etc.)	image	Thumbnail icon will appear on the product details page
Downloadable Files (docs, pdf, mp3s)	Downloads	A "Downloads" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page
Specification Files (docs, pdf)	Specifications	A "Specifications" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page

Deleting a Category

1. To delete a category/node, go to the **Node List**.
2. Checkmark the box next to the node.
3. Click on **More Actions** and then click on **Delete Selected** to delete the Category/Node.



Organizing Categories

To organize a category, enter a number in the **Sort Order** field within the **Catalog Node Edit** page. Categories and node will sort based on numerical order.

ERCE Catalog Node Edit

Overview | SEO | Assets

Name:
catalog node name description

Available from: 12:53 PM

Expires on: 12:53 PM

Display Template:

Code:

Sort Order:

Available: ☒ Yes ☐ No

Meta Class:

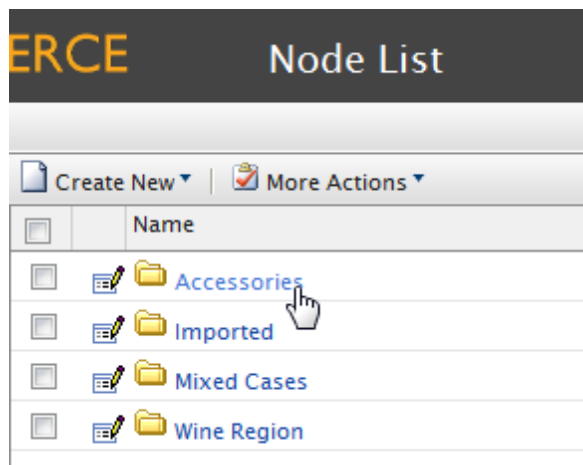
Display Name (en-us):

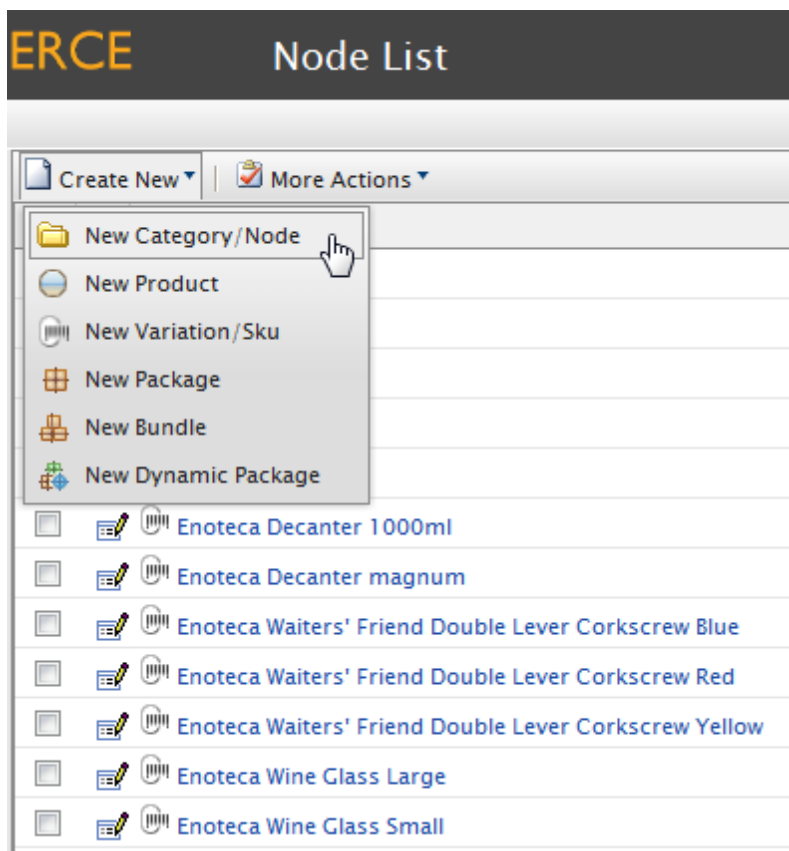
Primary Image (en-us):
 Primary Image

Creating a Sub-Category

Creating a sub-category is similar to creating a high-level category.

1. Go to **Node List** and click through an existing Catalog
2. Click on **Create New** and click on **Category Node**. Specify the information under **Catalog Edit** (refer to Creating a Category) and click **OK** to save changes.





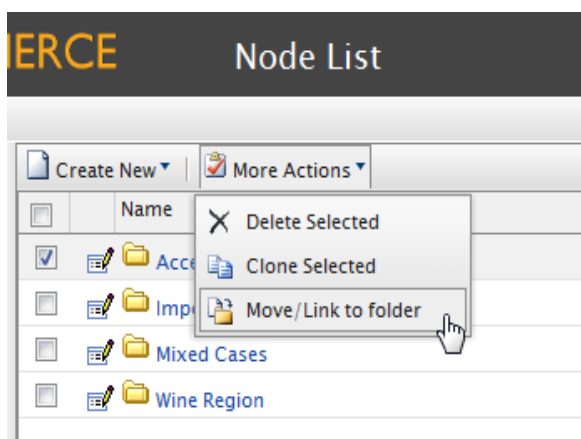
Cloning, Moving or Linking a Category

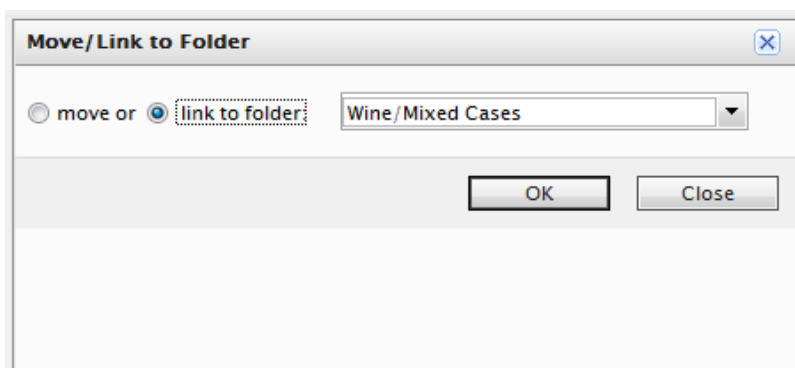
Cloning creates a duplicate with a unique ID that you can place in any location/hierarchy of your choice.

Move/Link to Folder allows you either to move a category/product to a new location/hierarchy or to link one category/product to another category/product. You can for example create a category called "Featured Products" and link it to items across various other categories.

This way, if you make changes to content on the original product page and that same product is part of the "Featured Products" category as a linked product, the changes will be displayed in both locations. In other words, changes are bi-directional. Links can be broken if either of the two are deleted.

1. To link to a category, go to the **Node List** and select the category you want to link back to.
2. Click **More Actions** and then click on the **Move/Link to folder** option.
3. Select link to folder and select the link destination from the drop-down menu. Click **OK** to create the link to that category under that directory.





Products, Variations and SKUs, Bundles, Packages, Dynamic Packages and Associations

A **Product** represents various forms of merchandise that you can display and purchase from the public site, including Variations/SKUs, Bundles, Packages and Dynamic Packages.

- **Product Entries**

A product entry typically contains a product name, part number, description and images.

- **Variations/SKUs**

A variation or SKU corresponds to a specific type of product with specific characteristics. For example, a product of Shirts will have an individual variation/SKU which includes size, color and sleeve length.

- **Bundles**

a bundle is a collection of Variations and SKUs allowing customers to purchase two or more items at once (all pricing is SKU specific and separate, unlike a package which is multiple SKUs put together in a single unified price).

Refer to "Mixed Cases" on the EPiServer Commerce sample site, for an example of a product bundle.

- **Packages**

A package is comparable to an individual SKU because the package item must be purchased as a whole (i.e. computer system). Items can be put within a package and package can have its own unique pricing.

- **Dynamic Packages**

A dynamic package is similar to the package definition above with the added ability to configure the package during checkout.

- **Associations**

One or more products can be associated to a product so that they can be displayed advertised on the public site as product accessories, or upselling/cross-selling item. Associations can be made from any of the individual products (Product Entries, SKUs, Bundles, Packages, and Dynamic Packages).

Browsing Products

Products are created within a catalog. Products can be placed one level beneath the root of a catalog and further down into sub-folders.

To browse products, click on a **Catalog** and drill down in the categories until you see the products.

ERCE
Product Edit

Overview
Variations/SKUs
SEO
Associations
Assets
Relations

Name: Wine Glass

Available from: 1/1/2011 01:00 AM

Expires on: 1/1/2020 01:00 AM

Display Template: Wine Template

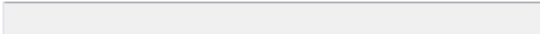
Code: WineGlass

Sort Order: 0
The sort order for the category entry.

Available: ☒ Yes ☐ No

Meta Class: Wine SKU

Display Name (en-us):

Primary Image (en-us):  Browse...

Field	Description
Name	Enter a friendly name, which can include spaces and special characters.
Available from	Enter the date and time the product will be available and active.
Expires On	Enter the date and time the product will be unavailable and deactivated.
Display Template	Chose a display template used to display the product in the public site from this drop-down menu.
Code	Enter a value without special characters or spaces, such as "BlueShirtXL."
Sort Order	Enter a numerical value to determine the product sort order on the node list page.
Available	Set "Yes" to activate the product. Set "No" to keep the proudct inactive and unsearchable on the front-end site.
Meta Class	Select a <i>Meta Class</i> from the drop-down menu. Depending on the meta class you select, additional fields will appear in the Overview tab. The values entered within the fields of the meta class you selected will be shown on the front-end public site.

Depending on the *meta class* selected, more fields may become available. For instance, selecting the **Wine SKU** meta class will yield wine related meta fields and attributes.

Description (en-us):

Css Class

Normal

Times New Roman

Size

Style (en-us):
The style of the wine

Closure (en-us):
The closure mechanism of the wine

Grape mix (en-us):
The grape varieties in the wine

Alcohol (en-us):
0
Alcohol by volume measurement

Taste (en-us):
The taste rating of the wine.

Vegetarians (en-us):
☐ True ☒ False
Suitable for vegetarians

Vegans (en-us):
☐ True ☒ False
Suitable for vegans

Vintage (en-us):
Vintage

Size (en-us):
0
Size

Maturity (en-us):
Maturity

OK Cancel

Variations/SKU Tab

Variations/SKUs are subcategories of a Product, which represents different "variations" of the particular product (colors, sizes, different editions for example). Such Variations/SKUs can be grouped a chosen product from this tabbed page. Follow these steps to group variations/SKUs.

1. Select the **Variations/SKUs** tab
2. Within the drop-down menu next to **Find Item**, select from the list variations or SKUs to associate with the product.
3. Click on **Add Item**.

You can add multiple associations to the product and they will appear in a list under the column headers below.

IERCE Product Edit

Overview Variations/SKUs SEO Associations Assets Relations

Find Item: Add Item

Edit Command

1

OK

- Chateau d'Yquem
- Chateau d'Yquem
- Chateau d'Yquem
- Chateau d'Yquem
- Chateau Suduiraut
- Chateau Climens
- Bonneau Du Martray**
- Sylvain Loichet
- Chandon de Briailles

Qty	Group	Sort Order
1	default	0
1	default	0

Page 1 of 1 (2 items)

IERCE Product Edit

Overview Variations/SKUs SEO Associations Assets Relations

Find Item: Add Item

Edit Command	ID	Name	Qty	Group	Sort Order
	2762	Enoteca Wine Glass Small	1	default	0
	2763	Enoteca Wine Glass Large	1	default	0

1

Page 1 of 1 (2 items)

OK Cancel

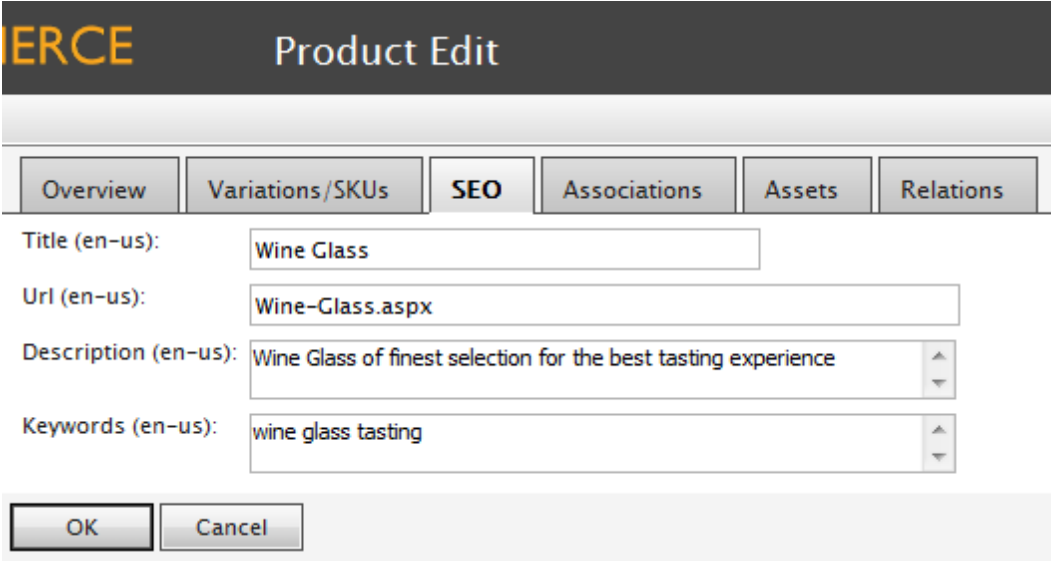
SEO Tab

Search Engine Optimization can be achieved by entering the following information for the product.

- **Title** - this is the friendly name that appears in your browser's title area
- **URL** - this is what gets displayed in the browser URL window
- **Description** - this is the meta description that is used for SEO purposes by search engines
- **Keywords** - keywords used for SEO purposes by search engines



If the URL field is left empty, it will be automatically filled in with a generated url (which depends on the entry name). If the URL field is not empty (you entered some url), it will be saved as it is, and will not be changed automatically even if you change an entry name. If you need the url to change, leave it blank.



Product Edit

Overview Variations/SKUs **SEO** Associations Assets Relations

Title (en-us):

Url (en-us):

Description (en-us):

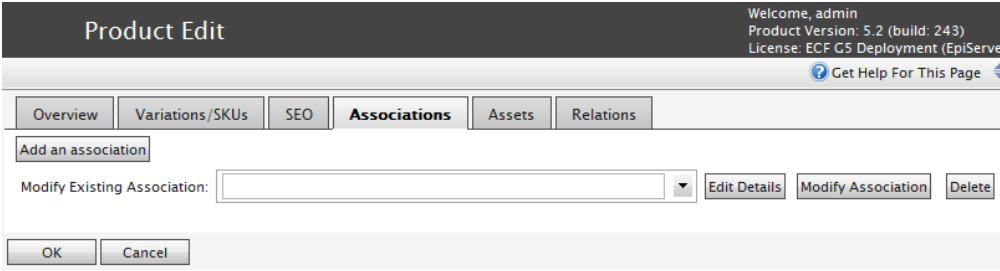
Keywords (en-us):

OK Cancel

Associations Tab

Different products or variations/SKUs can be linked to this product. Follow these steps to create product associations:

1. Click on **Add an Association**. A pop-up window will appear that says **Edit Association Information**.



Product Edit

Welcome, admin
Product Version: 5.2 (build: 243)
License: ECF CS Deployment (EpiServer)

Get Help For This Page

Overview Variations/SKUs SEO **Associations** Assets Relations

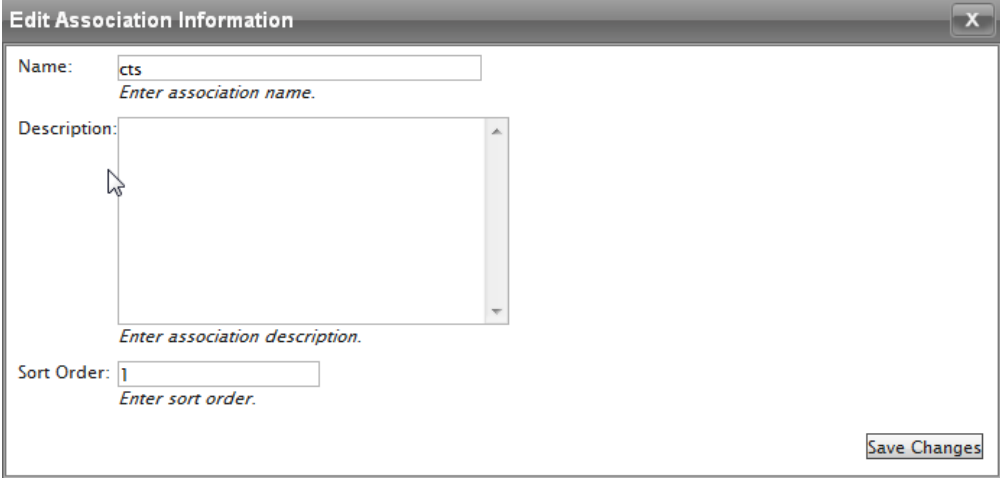
Add an association

Modify Existing Association:

Edit Details Modify Association Delete

OK Cancel

2. When the pop-up appears, enter an **Association Name**, **Description**, and define the **Sort Order**. Once you're done, click on **Save Changes**.



Edit Association Information

Name:
Enter association name.

Description:
Enter association description.

Sort Order:
Enter sort order.

Save Changes

3. The new association will appear in the drop-down list.

Overview Pricing/Inventory SEO **Associations** Assets Relations

Add an association

Modify Existing Association: CTS Edit Details Modify Association Delete

OK Cancel

4. You can also choose to **Edit Details**, which will allow you to edit associated items. The **Pick Item** drop-down appears below **Modify Existing Association**.

IERCE Product Edit Welcome, admin
Product Version: 5.2 (build: 377)
License: ECF G5 Deployment (B)

Overview Variations/SKUs SEO **Associations** Assets Relations

Add an association

Modify Existing Association: CTS Edit Details Modify Association Delete

CTS
CTS

Pick Item: Sylvain Loichet Add Item

Edit Command	Name	Sort Order	Type
Page 1 of 0 (0 items)			

OK Cancel

5. Click on **Modify Association** and you can edit the name, description, and sort order of an existing association.

Edit Association Information

Name: cts
Enter association name.

Description:
Enter association description.

Sort Order: 1
Enter sort order.

Save Changes

You can also **Delete** an association if needed.

Overview Pricing/Inventory SEO **Associations** Assets Relations

Add an association

Modify Existing Association: CrossSell Edit Details Modify Association Delete

OK Cancel

6. Pick an item or items to add to the association. Click **Add Item** to do so.

Product Edit

Overview Variations/SKUs SEO **Associations** Assets Relations

Add an association

Modify Existing Association: CTS

CTS
CTS

Pick Item: Chateau Climens

Add Item

Edit Command

1

OK

Chateau d'Yquem

Chateau d'Yquem

Chateau d'Yquem

Chateau d'Yquem

Chateau d'Yquem

Chateau d'Yquem

Chateau Suduiraut

Chateau Climens

Bonneau Du Martray

Sylvain Loichet

Chandon de Briailles

Sort Order

0

7. Once you click on **Add Item**, the item will appear in a list just below. You can have more than one item tied to an association.

CTS
CTS

Pick Item: Chateau Climens

Add Item

Edit Command	Name	Sort Order	Type
	Sylvain Loichet	0	OPTIONAL
	Chateau Climens	0	OPTIONAL

1

Page 1 of 1 (2 items)

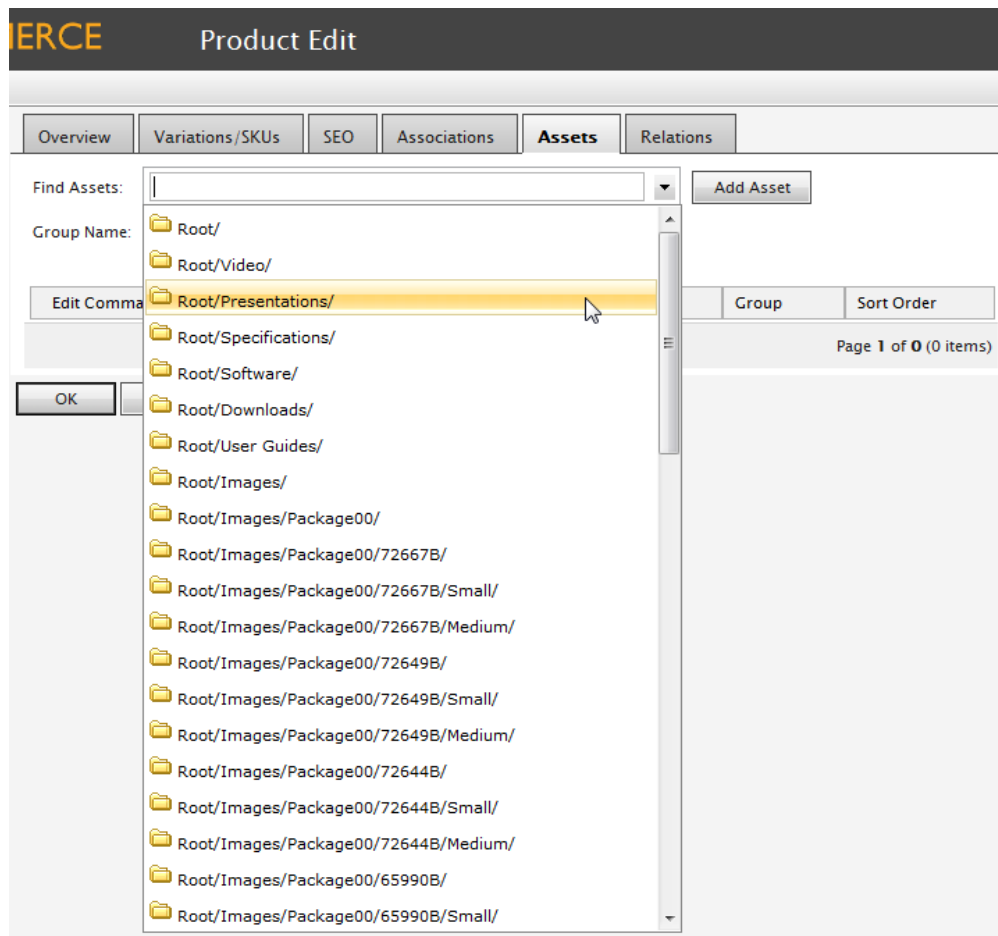
OK Cancel

You can **Edit** an item on the list. You can change the **Sort Order** and the **Type**. Once you're done modifying the values, click on **Update** to save your changes. Otherwise select **Cancel** to navigate away without saving.

Assets Tab

Assets are downloadable contents such as documents, links, videos, and images that can be linked to specific products. Assets are uploaded and managed in the Asset Management system.

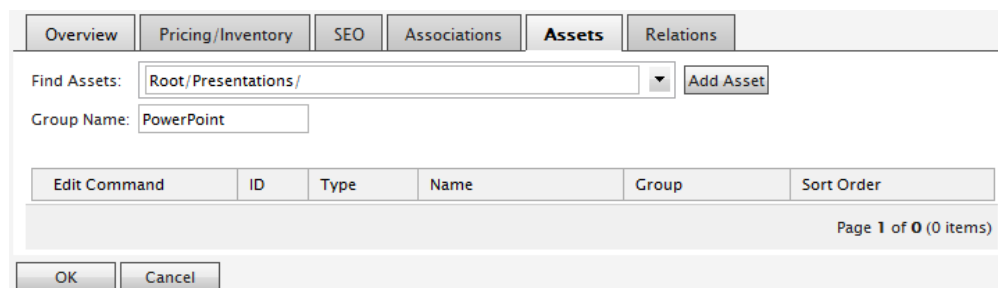
1. Under **Find Assets**, select from the drop-down list and click **Add Asset**.



2. Enter a **Group Name**.

By default EPiServer Commerce offers three options with names that will allow the associated assets to be correctly displayed on the product details page of the public site.

- **Image** - (type as "image," all lowercase) thumbnail icon(s) will appear on the product details page
- **Downloads** - a "Downloads" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page
- **Specifications** - a "Specifications" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page



3. Once an asset is added to the list below, you can choose to edit specific assets, such as their **Group** name and **Sort Order**.

Overview Pricing/Inventory SEO Associations **Assets** Relations

Find Assets:

Group Name:

Edit Command	ID	Type	Name	Group	Sort Order
	1	file	Root/Presentati...	default	0

1 Page 1 of 1 (1 items)

4. Once done, click **OK** and the new category/node will be created. You will be redirected to the Node List. Otherwise, select **Cancel** to go back to the Node List without saving any changes.

Relations Tab

Here the relations for a product will be displayed, and you can manage the categories a product is linked to. This is useful in order to get an overview of all the different categories (nodes) where a product will occur. This shows the full catalog path of the variation/SKU. Here the relations for a product will be displayed, and you can manage the categories a product is linked to. This is useful in order to get an overview of all the different categories (nodes) where a product will occur. A product can for instance appear in the "French Market" category, as well as under "Daily Specials" and "Mixed Cases".

Browse to a product and open it for editing. The relations for the product will be displayed under the **Relations** tab.

ERCE Product Edit

Welcome, admin
Product Version: 1.0
License: ECF G

Overview Variations/SKUs SEO Associations Assets **Relations**

ID	Name	Catalog Full Path
1	Accessories Accessories	Wine\Accessories

1 Page 1 of 1 (1 items)

Creating a Variation or a SKU

To create a product **variation/SKU**, click through an existing catalog and click on **Create New** and then select **New Variation/SKU**.

ERCE Node List

Create New More Actions

- New Category/Node
- New Product
- New Variation/Sku
- New Package
- New Bundle
- New Dynamic Package

1000ml

Enoteca Decanter magnum

Overview Tab

This is where you enter basic information about the Variation/SKU.

ERCE

Variation/SKU Edit

Overview

Pricing/Inventory

SEO

Associations

Assets

Relations

Name:

Enoteca Wine Glass Large

Available from:

1/1/2011

01:00 AM

Expires on:

1/1/2020

01:00 AM

Display Template:

Wine Template

Code:

35368

Sort Order:

0

The sort order for the category entry.

Available:

☒ Yes

☐ No

Meta Class:

Default Catalog Entry

Display Name (en-us):

Enoteca Wine Glass Large

Primary Image (en-us):

Browse...

Primary Image

Field	Description
Name	Enter a friendly name, which can include spaces and special characters.
Available from	Enter the date and time the SKU will be available and active.
Expires On	Enter the date and time the SKU will be unavailable and deactivated.
Display Template	Chose a display template used to display the Variation/SKU in the public site from this drop-down menu.
Code	Enter a value without special characters or spaces, such as "BlueShirtXL."
Sort Order	Enter a numerical value to determine the SKU's sort order on the node list page.
Available	Set "Yes" to activate the SKU. Set "No" to keep the SKU inactive and unsearchable on the front-end site.
Meta Class	Select a <i>Meta Class</i> from the drop-down menu. Depending on the meta class you select, additional fields will appear in the Overview tab. The values entered within the fields of the meta class you selected will be shown on the front-end public site.

Depending on the *meta class* selected, more fields may become available. For instance, selecting the **Wine SKU** meta class will yield wine related meta fields and attributes.

Pricing/Inventory Tab

Under this tab, you can set specific pricing and inventory settings for the variation/SKU.

Overview **Pricing/Inventory** SEO Associations Assets Relations

Display Price: (gbp)

Min. Quantity:

Max. Quantity:

Merchant:

Weight:

Package:

Tax Category:

Warehouse:

Track Inventory: ☒ Yes ☐ No

Inventory Status:

In Stock:

Reserved:

Reorder Min. Qty:

Allow Preorder: ☐ Yes ☒ No

Preorder Qty:

Preorder Avail.:

Allow Backorder: ☐ Yes ☒ No

Backorder Qty:

Backorder Avail.:

Pricing

[Add Item](#)

Edit Command	Sale Type	Sale Code	Currency	Price	Min. Quantity	Start Date	End Date
	All Customers	123555	GBP	0.00	0	Today, 2:55 PM	2/22/2012

1

OK Cancel

Clicking on **Add item** will open the **Edit Sale Price Information** dialog for adding pricing information.

Edit Sale Price Information [X]

Sale Type:

Sale Code:

Unit Price:

Currency:

Min. Quantity:

Start Date: 02:55 PM

End Date: 02:55 PM

Save Changes

Field	Description
Display Price	Enter the price that will be displayed on the public site.
Min Quantity	This sets the minimum quantity the customer is able to purchase the variation/SKUs product page.
Max Quantity	This is the maximum allowable number of items that can be purchased at one time (this number gets displayed as the upper range in the drop-down during the check-out process).
Merchant	Optional: if you use many merchants on your site, this provides another way to add more information for a product; this can only be added/edited directly in the database so please contact your site administrator/developer to make any changes.

Field	Description
Weight	Based on your shipping configuration, the weight you enter here will affect the total shipping cost .
Package	This value is based on width/length/height dimensions; the options for this drop-down are configured in the Administration area.
Tax Category	This separation of taxes by category allows you to charge a different rate of taxes depending on what is being purchased; for example, you can have one rate for "General Sales" items and another rate for "Luxury Sales" items.
Warehouse	The details on the available selections are maintained in the Administration system.
Track Inventory	Yes/No. If this is set to "Yes," then the quantity value of In Stock, Preorder, and Backorder fields will be deducted each time a purchase is made. If this is set to "No," then those values will not change.
Inventory Status	Enable/Disable. If this is Enabled , then the number of units of a product being purchased cannot exceed the inventory value. In other words, the check out procedure cannot be completed if you exceed the number in the inventory -- instead the quantity you can purchase will default to the actual number of remaining units. For instance, if you have Tracking Inventory = Yes, and Inventory Status = Disabled/Ignored, then the available quantity will be monitored, but it will not limit the number of units that can be checked out. If you only have a quantity of 5 and you order 6 items, the checkout will still complete and the inventory number will become -1.
In Stock	You can enter the quantity of a particular product available for sale.
Reserved	The quantity you set here allows you to reserve a specified number of inventory "In Stock" and prevent them from being used. So for instance, if you set the In Stock = 10 and Reserved = 5, then the In Stock count will not go below 5.
Reorder Min Qty	If the inventory falls below the value specified here, then this item will appear in the "Low Stock Report" in the Dashboard or Reporting system.
Allow Pre-order/Backorder	Yes or No; you need to set Allow Preorder/Backorder status to Yes to turn either of these features On .
Preorder/Backorder Avail	When you turn on either of the two and specify a quantity, the count will begin to decrease after the In Stock count reaches its limit. For example, if you set In Stock = 10, Reserved =3, and Backorder =10, then the Backorder qty will start to decrease after In Stock count reaches 3. So if you place an order for 10 units, then the final count will be In Stock = 3, Reserved =3, and Backorder = 7.
Backorder Qty	The quantity you set here will determine the backorders that can be made by customers even when the item is out of stock.
Pricing	<p>Sale Type - you can select All Customers, a single Customer or a Customer Price Group (the Customer Price Group gives you the ability to create tiered pricing).</p> <p>Sale Code - This is an optional setting. The Sale Code field is used for assigning a price to a specific group of customers. For instance, when you add a new price and select "Customer Price Group" as the Sale Type, you need to put the name of the customer group in the Sale Code field. The name of the group that you put in the Sale Code field needs to match one of the group names found under Customer Management > Contacts > (Name of Contact). If your entry into the Sale Code field matches one of the Customer Groups, any member of that group will receive the specified price.</p> <p>Unit Price - discounted price per unit *Currency * enter currency using the correct currency code (i.e. GBP); you can create different prices depending on the currency that is selected.</p>

Field	Description
	Min. Quantity - minimum number of units you must purchase to get the discounted bulk rate.

SEO Tab

Search Engine Optimization can be achieved by entering the following information for the product.

Overview	Pricing/Inventory	SEO	Associations	Assets	Relations
----------	-------------------	------------	--------------	--------	-----------

Title (en-us):

Url (en-us):

Description (en-us):

Keywords (en-us):

OK Cancel

Field	Description
Title	This is the friendly name that appears in your browser's title area.
URL	This is what gets displayed in the browser URL window.
Description	This is the meta description that is used for SEO purposes by search engines.
Keywords	Keywords used for SEO purposes by search engines.



If the **URL** field is left empty, it will be automatically filled in with a generated url (which depends on the entry name). If the Url field is not empty (you entered some url), it will be saved as it is, and will not be changed automatically even if you change an entry name. If you need the url to change, leave it blank.

Associations Tab

Different products or variations/SKUs can be linked to this Variation/SKU.

Overview	Pricing/Inventory	SEO	Associations	Assets	Relations
----------	-------------------	-----	---------------------	--------	-----------

Add an association

Modify Existing Association: ▼ Edit Details Modify Association Delete

OK Cancel

Steps to Create an Association

1. Click on **Add an Association**. A pop-up window will appear that says **Edit Association Information**.
2. When the pop-up appears, enter an **Association Name**, **Description**, and define the **Sort Order**. Once you're done, click on **Save Changes**.
3. The new association will appear in the drop-down list.
4. You can also choose to **Edit Details**, which will allow you to edit associated items. The **Pick Item** drop-down appears below **Modify Existing Association**.

- Click on **Modify Association** and you can edit the name, description, and sort order of an existing association.

You can also **Delete** an association if needed.

- Pick an item or items to add to the association. Click **Add Item** to do so.
- Once you click on **Add Item**, the item will appear in a list just below. You can have more than one item tied to an association.

You can **Edit** an item on the list. You can change the **Sort Order** and the **Type**. Once you're done modifying the values, click on **Update** to save your changes. Otherwise select **Cancel** to navigate away without saving.

Assets Tab

Assets are downloadable contents such as documents, links, videos, and images that can be linked to specific products. Assets are uploaded and managed in the **Asset Management** system.

Steps to Add Assets to a Variation/SKU

- Under **Find Assets**, select from the drop-down list and click Add Asset.
- Enter a **Group Name**.

By default Commerce Manager offers three options with names that will allow the associated assets to be correctly displayed on the product details page of the public site.

Field	Description
Image	(Type as "image," all lowercase), thumbnail icon(s) will appear on the product details page.
Downloads	A "Downloads" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page.
Specifications	A "Specifications" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page.

- Once an asset is added to the list below, you can choose to edit specific assets, such as their **Group** name and **Sort Order**.
- Once done, click **OK** and the new category/node will be created. You will be redirected to the Node List. Otherwise, select **Cancel** to go back to the Node List without saving any changes.

Relations Tab

This shows the full catalog path of the variation/SKU. Here the relations for a product will be displayed, and you can manage the categories a product is linked to. This is useful in order to get an overview of all the different categories (nodes) where a product will occur. A product can for instance appear in the "French Market" category, as well as under "Daily Specials" and "Mixed Cases".

Browse to a product and open it for editing. The relations for the product will be displayed under the **Relations** tab.

Overview	Pricing/Inventory	SEO	Associations	Assets	Relations
----------	-------------------	-----	--------------	--------	-----------

ID	Name	Catalog Full Path
X	Accessories Accessories	Wine\Accessories

1 Page 1 of 1 (1 items)

OK Cancel

Creating a Package

1. Click on **Catalogs**. The **Catalog List** appears in the main window.
2. Click on an existing catalog name highlighted in blue. The **Node List** window appears.
3. Click on **Create New** pull-down menu located in the upper left part of the main window.
4. On the drop-down menu, select **New Product Package**. The Product Package Edit page appears.

Overview Tab

This is where you enter basic information about the Product Package.

- **Name** - a name for the Product Package
- **Available from** - the date to which the Product Package is activated
- **Expires on** - the date on which the Product Package expires; once the expiration date passes, the Product Package will no longer appear on the public site
- **Display Template** - choose a display template used to show the Product Package in the public site from this dropdown box.
- **Code** - enter a Product Package code here.
- **Sort Order** - determines the order to which the Product Package is sorted in the Node List page.
- **Available** - select Yes to make the Product Package appear on the public site; select No to hide the product from the public site
- **Meta Class** - the choice made here dictates which the meta-fields or Product Package attributes will appear on the public site or Commerce Manager site

Pricing/Inventory Tab

- **Display Price** - the price that will be displayed in public site
- **Min Quantity** - this forces your customer to purchase a minimum number of items as set here (this number gets displayed as the lower range in the dropdown during the checkout process)
- **Max Quantity** - this is the maximum allowable number of items that can be purchased at one time (this number gets displayed as the upper range in the dropdown during the checkout process)
- **Merchant** - (optional) if you use many merchants on your site, this provides another way to add more information for a product; this can only be added/edited directly in the database so please contact your site administrator/developer to make any changes
- **Weight** - based on your shipping configuration, the weight you enter here will affect the total shipping cost
- **Package** - this value is based on width/length/height dimensions; the options for this dropdown are configured in the Administration area
- **Tax Category** - this separation of taxes by category allows you to charge a different rate of taxes depending on what is being purchased; for example, you can have one rate for "General Sales" items and another rate for "Luxury Sales" items

- **Warehouse** - the details on the available selections are maintained in the Administration Sub-system
- **Track Inventory** - Yes/No. If this is set to "Yes," then the quantity value of In Stock, Preorder, and Backorder fields will be deducted each time a purchase is made. If this is set to "No," then those values will not change.
- **Inventory Status** - Enable/Disable. If this is Enabled, then the number of units of a product being purchased cannot exceed the inventory value. In other words, the check out procedure cannot be completed if you exceed the number in the inventory -- instead the quantity you can purchase will default to the actual number of remaining units. For instance, if you have Tracking Inventory = Yes, and Inventory Status = Disabled/Ignored, then the available quantity will be monitored, but it will not limit the number of units that can be checked out. If you only have a quantity of 5 and you order 6 items, the checkout will still complete and the inventory number will become -1.
- **In Stock** - you can enter the quantity of a particular product available for sale
- **Reserved** - The quantity you set here allows you to reserve a specified number of inventory "In Stock" and prevent them from being used. So for instance, if you set the In Stock = 10 and Reserved = 5, then the In Stock count will not go below 5.
- **Reorder Min Qty** - If the inventory falls below the value specified here, then this item will appear in the "Low Stock Report" in the Dashboard or Reporting subsystem.
- **Allow Preorder/Backorder** - Yes or No; you need to set Allow Preorder/Backorder status to Yes to turn either of these features On.
- **Preorder/Backorder Avail** - When you turn on either of the two and specify a quantity, the count will begin to decrease after the In Stock count reaches its limit. For example, if you set In Stock = 10, Reserved = 3, and Backorder = 10, then the Backorder qty will start to decrease after In Stock count reaches 3. So if you place an order for 10 units, then the final count will be In Stock = 3, Reserved = 3, and Backorder = 7.
- **Backorder Qty** - The quantity you set here will determine the backorders that can be made by customers even when the item is out of stock.

Pricing .

- **Sale Type** - you can select All Customers, a single Customer or a Customer Price Group (the Customer Price Group gives you the ability to create tiered pricing).
- **Sale Code** - (optional) enter code to give special pricing for a group of Customers (i.e. Dealers).
- **Unit Price** - discounted price per unit.
- **Currency** - enter currency using the correct currency code (i.e. USD); you can create different prices depending on the currency that is selected.
- **Min. Quantity** - minimum number of units you must purchase to get the discounted bulk rate.

For more information regarding Sales Type, Sales Code and tiered pricing, please read *Creating a Contact*.

Package Items Tab

In the dropdown, you can search through your entire inventory and select items to add to your Package by clicking **Add Item**. Clicking the **Edit** icon beside the item you just added will allow you to specify the **Quantity**, the **Group Name** and the **Sort Order**.

SEO Tab

Search Engine Optimization can be achieved by entering the following information for the product.

- **Title** - this is the friendly name that appears in your browser's title area
- **URL** - this is what gets displayed in the browser URL window
- **Description** - this is the meta description that is used for SEO purposes by search engines
- **Keywords** - keywords used for SEO purposes by search engines



If the **Url** field is left empty, it will be automatically filled in with a generated url (which depends on the entry name). If the Url field is not empty (you entered some url), it will be saved as it is, and will not be changed automatically even if you change an entry name. If you need the url to change, leave it blank.

Associations Tab

Different products or variations/SKUs can be linked to this Product Package. Follow these steps to create associations:

1. Click on **Add an Association**. A pop-up window will appear that says **Edit Association Information**.
2. When the pop-up appears, enter an **Association Name**, **Description**, and define the **Sort Order**. Once you're done, click on **Save Changes**.
3. The new association will appear in the drop-down list.
4. You can also choose to **Edit Details**, which will allow you to edit associated items. The **Pick Item** drop-down appears below **Modify Existing Association**.
5. Click on **Modify Association** and you can edit the name, description, and sort order of an existing association.

You can also **Delete** an association if needed.

6. Pick an item or items to add to the association. Click **Add Item** to do so.
7. Once you click on Add Item, the item will appear in a list just below. You can have more than one item tied to an association.

You can **Edit** an item on the list. You can change the **Sort Order** and the **Type**. Once you're done modifying the values, click on **Update** to save your changes. Otherwise select **Cancel** to navigate away without saving.

Assets Tab

Assets are downloadable contents such as documents, links, videos, and images that can be linked to specific products. Assets are uploaded and managed in the Asset Management subsystem.

1. Under **Find Assets**, select from the drop-down list and click **Add Asset**.
2. Enter a **Group Name**.

By default Commerce Manager offers three options with names that will allow the associated assets to be correctly displayed on the product details page of the public site.

- **Image** - (type as "image," all lowercase) thumbnail icon(s) will appear on the product details page
- **Downloads** - a "Downloads" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page
- **Specifications** - a "Specifications" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page

3. Once an asset is added to the list below, you can choose to edit specific assets, such as their **Group** name and **Sort Order**.
4. Once done, click **OK** and the new category/node will be created. You will be redirected to the Node List. Otherwise, select **Cancel** to go back to the Node List without saving any changes.

Relations Tab

This shows the full catalog path of the variation/SKU. Here the relations for a product will be displayed, and you can manage the categories a product is linked to. This is useful in order to get an overview of all the different categories (nodes) where a product will occur. This shows the full catalog path of the variation/SKU. Here the relations for a product will be displayed, and you can manage the categories a product is linked to. This is useful in order to get an overview of all the different categories (nodes) where a product will occur. A product can for instance appear in the "French Market" category, as well as under "Daily Specials" and "Mixed Cases".

Browse to a product and open it for editing. The relations for the product will be displayed under the **Relations** tab.

Creating a Bundle

1. Click on **Catalogs**. The Catalog List appears on the main window.
2. Click on an existing catalog name highlighted in blue. The Node List window appears.
3. Click on **Create New** pull-down menu located in the upper left part of the main window.
4. On the drop-down menu, select **New Bundle**. The Bundle Edit page appears.

Overview Tab

This is where you enter basic information about the Product Package.

- **Name** - a name for the Bundle
- **Available from** - the date to which the Bundle is activated
- **Expires on** - the date on which the Bundle expires; once the expiration date passes, the Bundle will no longer appear on the public site
- **Display Template** - choose a display template used to show the Bundle in the public site from this dropdown box.
- **Code** - enter a Bundle code here.
- **Sort Order** - determines the order to which the Bundle is sorted in the Node List page.
- **Available** - select Yes to make the Bundle appear on the public site; select No to hide the product from the public site
- **Meta Class** - the choice made here dictates which the meta-fields or Bundle attributes will appear on the public site or Commerce Manager site

Bundle Items Tab

In the dropdown, you can search through your entire inventory and select items to add to your Bundle by clicking **Add Item**. Clicking the **Edit** icon beside the item you just added will allow you to specify the Quantity, the Group Name and the Sort Order.

SEO Tab

Search Engine Optimization can be achieved by entering the following information for the product.

- **Title** - this is the friendly name that appears in your browser's title area
- **URL** - this is what gets displayed in the browser URL window
- **Description** - this is the meta description that is used for SEO purposes by search engines
- **Keywords** - keywords used for SEO purposes by search engines



If the **URL** field is left empty, it will be automatically filled in with a generated URL (which depends on the entry name). If the URL field is not empty (you entered some URL), it will be saved as it is, and will not be changed automatically even if you change an entry name. If you need the URL to change, leave it blank.

Associations Tab

Different products or variations/SKUs can be linked to this Bundle. Follow these steps to create associations:

1. Click on **Add an Association**. A pop-up window will appear that says **Edit Association Information**.
2. When the pop-up appears, enter an **Association Name**, **Description**, and define the **Sort Order**. Once you're done, click on **Save Changes**.
3. The new association will appear in the drop-down list.
4. You can also choose to **Edit Details**, which will allow you to edit associated items. The **Pick Item** drop-down appears below **Modify Existing Association**.
5. Click on **Modify Association** and you can edit the name, description, and sort order of an existing association.

You can also **Delete** an association if needed.

6. Pick an item or items to add to the association. Click **Add Item** to do so.
7. Once you click on Add Item, the item will appear in a list just below. You can have more than one item tied to an association.

You can **Edit** an item on the list. You can change the **Sort Order** and the **Type**. Once you're done modifying the values, click on **Update** to save your changes. Otherwise select **Cancel** to navigate away without saving.

Assets Tab

Assets are downloadable contents such as documents, links, videos, and images that can be linked to specific products. Assets are uploaded and managed in the Asset Management subsystem.

1. Under **Find Assets**, select from the drop-down list and click **Add Asset**.
2. Enter a **Group Name**.

By default Commerce Manager offers three options with names that will allow the associated assets to be correctly displayed on the product details page of the public site.

- **Image** - (type as "image," all lowercase) thumbnail icon(s) will appear on the product details page
- **Downloads** - a "Downloads" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page
- **Specifications** - a "Specifications" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page

3. Once an asset is added to the list below, you can choose to edit specific assets, such as their **Group** name and **Sort Order**.
4. Once done, click **OK** and the new category/node will be created. You will be redirected to the Node List. Otherwise, select **Cancel** to go back to the Node List without saving any changes.

Relations Tab

Here the relations for a product will be displayed, and you can manage the categories a product is linked to. This is useful in order to get an overview of all the different categories (nodes) where a product will occur. This shows the full catalog path of the variation/SKU. Here the relations for a product will be displayed, and you can manage the categories a product is linked to. This is useful in order to get an

overview of all the different categories (nodes) where a product will occur. A product can for instance appear in the "French Market" category, as well as under "Daily Specials" and "Mixed Cases".

Browse to a product and open it for editing. The relations for the product will be displayed under the **Relations** tab.

Creating a Dynamic Package

1. Click on **Catalogs**. The Catalog List appears on the main window.
2. Click on an existing catalog name highlighted in blue. The Node List window appears.
3. Click on **Create New** pull-down menu located in the upper left part of the main window.
4. On the drop-down menu, select **New Dynamic Package**. The Product Dynamic Package Edit page appears.

Overview Tab

This is where you enter basic information about the Product Package.

- **Name** - a name for the Dynamic Package
- **Available from** - the date to which the Dynamic Package is activated
- **Expires on** - the date on which the Dynamic Package expires; once the expiration date passes, the Product Package will no longer appear on the public site
- **Display Template** - choose a display template used to show the Dynamic Package in the public site from this dropdown box.
- **Code** - enter a Dynamic Package code here.
- **Sort Order** - determines the order to which the Dynamic Package is sorted in the Node List page.
- **Available** - select Yes to make the Dynamic Package appear on the public site; select No to hide the product from the public site
- **Meta Class** - the choice made here dictates which the meta-fields or Dynamic Package attributes will appear on the public site or Commerce Manager site

Package Items Tab

In the dropdown, you can search through your entire inventory and select items to add to your Dynamic Package by clicking **Add Item**. Clicking the Edit icon beside the item you just added will allow you to specify the Quantity, the Group Name and the Sort Order.

SEO Tab

Search Engine Optimization can be achieved by entering the following information for the product.

- **Title** - this is the friendly name that appears in your browser's title area
- **URL** - this is what gets displayed in the browser URL window
- **Description** - this is the meta description that is used for SEO purposes by search engines
- **Keywords** - keywords used for SEO purposes by search engines



If the **URL** field is left empty, it will be automatically filled in with a generated URL (which depends on the entry name). If the URL field is not empty (you entered some URL), it will be saved as it is, and will not be changed automatically even if you change an entry name. If you need the URL to change, leave it blank.

Associations Tab

Different products or variations/SKUs can be linked to this Dynamic Package. Follow these steps to create associations:

1. Click on **Add an Association**. A pop-up window will appear that says **Edit Association Information**.
2. When the pop-up appears, enter an **Association Name**, **Description**, and define the **Sort Order**. Once you're done, click on **Save Changes**.
3. The new association will appear in the drop-down list.
4. You can also choose to **Edit Details**, which will allow you to edit associated items. The **Pick Item** drop-down appears below **Modify Existing Association**.
5. Click on **Modify Association** and you can edit the name, description, and sort order of an existing association.

You can also **Delete** an association if needed.

6. Pick an item or items to add to the association. Click **Add Item** to do so.
7. Once you click on Add Item, the item will appear in a list just below. You can have more than one item tied to an association.

You can **Edit** an item on the list. You can change the **Sort Order** and the **Type**. Once you're done modifying the values, click on **Update** to save your changes. Otherwise select **Cancel** to navigate away without saving.

Assets Tab

Assets are downloadable contents such as documents, links, videos, and images that can be linked to specific products. Assets are uploaded and managed in the Asset Management subsystem.

1. Under **Find Assets**, select from the drop-down list and click **Add Asset**.
2. Enter a **Group Name**.

By default Commerce Manager offers three options with names that will allow the associated assets to be correctly displayed on the product details page of the public site.

- **Image** - (type as "image," all lowercase) thumbnail icon(s) will appear on the product details page
- **Downloads** - a "Downloads" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page
- **Specifications** - a "Specifications" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page

3. Once an asset is added to the list below, you can choose to edit specific assets, such as their **Group** name and **Sort Order**.
4. Once done, click **OK** and the new category/node will be created. You will be redirected to the Node List. Otherwise, select **Cancel** to go back to the Node List without saving any changes.

Relations Tab

Here the relations for a product will be displayed, and you can manage the categories a product is linked to. This is useful in order to get an overview of all the different categories (nodes) where a product will occur. This shows the full catalog path of the variation/SKU. Here the relations for a product will be displayed, and you can manage the categories a product is linked to. This is useful in order to get an overview of all the different categories (nodes) where a product will occur. A product can for instance appear in the "French Market" category, as well as under "Daily Specials" and "Mixed Cases".

Browse to a product and open it for editing. The relations for the product will be displayed under the **Relations** tab.

Creating Product Associations

Product Associations help you to highlight certain products in your public site. For example, one or more products can be related to or associated to another product so that these associated products can be displayed or advertised on the public site as a product accessory, or as an up-selling/cross-selling item.

Associations can be made from any of the individual products (Product Entries, SKUs, Bundles, Packages, and Dynamic Packages).

To create Product Associations, go to the edit screen of any type of product entry listed above and select the **Associations** tab. Out of the box, you can associate related products or accessories or cross-sell different kinds of products ("You May Also Like").

CrossSelling Other Products - "What You May Like"

1. Click on the **Add an association** button to enter the name "CrossSell" (without the quotes), an optional description and sort order number. Click **Save Changes** to save and exit the screen. CrossSell should appear in the dropdown menu.
2. Next select the new association that you just created from the drop-down menu and click on **Edit Details**.
3. Use the drop-down menu to add one or more products and select **Add Item** to save the association. The items you have added to this association will render on the product detail page under "You May Also Like" on the default template.

The screenshot shows the 'Product Edit' interface for EpiServer. The 'Associations' tab is active. Under the 'CrossSell' association, a table lists associated items. One item, 'Chandon de Briailles', is listed with a sort order of 0 and a type of 'OPTIONAL'.

Edit Command	Name	Sort Order	Type
	Chandon de Briailles	0	OPTIONAL

Page 1 of 1 (1 items)

Associating Related Products and Accessories

1. Click on the **Add an association** button to enter the name "Accessories" (without the quotes), an optional description and sort order number. Click **Save Changes** to save and exit the screen. Accessories should appear in the drop-down menu.
2. Next select the Accessories product association that you just created from the drop-down menu and click on **Edit Details**.
3. Use the drop-down menu to add one or more products and select **Add Item** to save the association. The items you have added to this association will render on the product detail page under "Related Products and Accessories" on the default template.

Managing Assets

Assets are downloadable contents such as documents, links, videos, and images that can be linked to specific products. Assets are uploaded and managed in the Asset Management system and then these Assets can be associated with Catalog entries.

In order for the Asset files to correctly display in catalogs, you'll need to configure your Internet Information Services (IIS). Find out more *Displaying Assets section of the Developer Guide for EpiServer Commerce*.

Associating Additional Digital Materials with Catalog Entries

Assets are downloadable contents such as documents, links, videos, and images that can be linked to specific products. Assets are uploaded and managed in the Asset Management system.

1. Under **Find Assets**, select from the drop-down list and click **Add Asset**.

EPISERVER COMMERCE Variation/SKU Edit

Welcome ▾ Change Language ▾ About ▾

Catalog Management

- Catalog Management
- Catalog Entry Search
- Catalog Batch Update
- Catalogs
 - Wine
 - Accessories
 - Mixed Cases
 - Wine Region
 - Templates

Overview Pricing/Inventory SEO Associations **Assets** Relations

Find Assets: Root/Images/LargeWineGlassCrystal.jpg Add Asset

Group Name: default

Edit Command	ID	Type	Name	Group	Sort Order
--------------	----	------	------	-------	------------

Page 1 of 0 (0 items)

OK Cancel

2. Enter a **Group Name**.

By default Commerce Manager offers three options with names that will allow the associated assets to be correctly displayed on the product details page of the public site.

- **Image** - (type as "image," all lowercase) thumbnail icon(s) will appear on the product details page.
 - **Downloads** - a "Downloads" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page.
 - **Specifications** - a "Specifications" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page.
3. Once an asset is added to the list below, you can chose to edit specific assets, such as their **Group** name and **Sort Order**.

Overview Pricing/Inventory SEO Associations **Assets** Relations

Find Assets: Root/Images/LargeWineGlassCrystal.jpg Add Asset

Group Name: image

Edit Command	ID	Type	Name	Group	Sort Order
	5397	file	Root/Images/LargeWineGlassCrystal.jpg	image	0

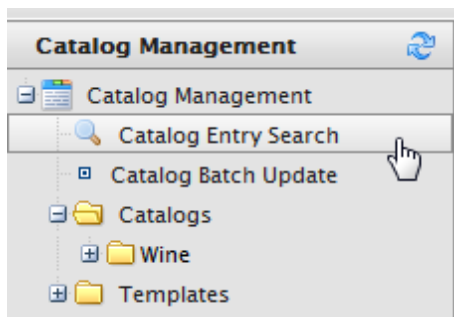
1 Page 1 of 1 (1 items)

OK Cancel

4. Once done, click **OK** and the new category/node will be created. You will be redirected to the Node List. Otherwise, select **Cancel** to go back to the Node List without saving any changes.

Searching for Catalog Entries

The Catalog Search function enables you look for specific sales items stored in EPiServer Commerce. Click on **Catalog Management** and then **Catalog Entry Search**.



To do a basic search for catalog entries, enter a one keyword or more into the **Search by Keywords(s)** field, such as "white bordeaux". The search will return entries that match either of those keywords.

If you enter keywords inside quotation marks ("white bordeaux"), then search will only fetch entries that have those exact three keywords.

 A screenshot of the 'Entry Search' form. The 'Search By Keyword(s)' field contains the text 'white bordeaux'. Below this is the 'Additional Filters' section, which includes three fields: 'Filter By Language' with a dropdown menu showing 'English (United States)', 'Filter By Catalog(s)' with a dropdown menu showing 'Wine', and 'Search By Code/Id' with an empty text box. A 'Search' button is located to the right of the keyword field.

Catalog Search Filters

To narrow entry search results, there are Additional Filters available. Click search once those filters are set.

- **Filter by language:** Pull-down menu will show the available language choices
- **Filter by catalog(s):** Pull-down menu will show the available catalog choices
- **Search by code/id:** Instead of text, you can search by code or ID

 A screenshot of the 'Entry Search' form with filters applied. The 'Search By Keyword(s)' field is empty. The 'Additional Filters' section shows 'Filter By Language' set to 'English (United States)', 'Filter By Catalog(s)' set to 'all catalogs', and 'Search By Code/Id' set to '3958'. A 'Search' button is located to the right of the keyword field.

Deleting and Cloning Entries

Users can Delete and Clone entries. To delete or clone an entry:

1. Select an entry or entries by selecting the box next to it.
2. Click on **More Actions**.
3. Click on **Delete Selected** or **Clone Selected**.

The entry will either be deleted or a clone (copy) of it appears.

Search By Keyword(s):

Additional Filters

Filter By Language:

Filter By Catalog(s):

Search By Code/Id:

More Actions ▾

☒ Delete Selected
 ☒ Clone Selected

		Code
<input type="checkbox"/>	Chateau d'Yquem	62012B
<input type="checkbox"/>	Chateau d'Yquem	61608B
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Chateau d'Yquem	33228B
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Chateau d'Yquem	33470B
<input type="checkbox"/>	Chateau d'Yquem	65987B
<input type="checkbox"/>	Chateau Suduiraut	57149H

Paging and Sorting Results

Users can sort results by clicking on **Name**, **Code**, **Available From**, **Expires**, and **Status** in either ascending or descending order.

More Actions ▾

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Code	Available from	Expires	Status
<input type="checkbox"/>	J.L Terrier & C. Collovray	00008	1/1/2011 1:00:00 AM	1/1/2020 1:00:00 AM	True
<input type="checkbox"/>	J.L Terrier & C. Collovray	00008H	1/1/2011 1:00:00 AM	1/1/2020 1:00:00 AM	True
<input type="checkbox"/>	J.L Terrier & C. Collovray	00009B	1/1/2011 1:00:00 AM	1/1/2020 1:00:00 AM	True
<input type="checkbox"/>	Domaine des Deux Roches	00012H	1/1/2011 1:00:00 AM	1/1/2020 1:00:00 AM	True
<input type="checkbox"/>	Seifried	00042B	1/1/2011 1:00:00 AM	1/1/2020 1:00:00 AM	True

The **Page Size** (number of items to be displayed on a page) can be set at the bottom of the search result page, where there is also a paging function for browsing the search result.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Chateau Lafite Rothschild	22851B	1/1/2011 1:00:00 AM	1/1/2020 1:00:00 AM	True
<input type="checkbox"/>	Chateau Palmer	22954B	1/1/2011 1:00:00 AM	1/1/2020 1:00:00 AM	True
<input type="checkbox"/>	Chateau-Lafite Baron	23416B	1/1/2011 1:00:00 AM	1/1/2020 1:00:00 AM	True

Page Size: 20 (1548 items) | Page 1 2 3 4 5 ...

Updating Multiple Catalog Entries at Once

The **Catalog Batch Update** option gives you the ability to quickly make multiple changes to your catalog. You can sort by **Entry Type**, **Meta Class**, **Field**, **Language**, **Catalog** and **Keyword(s)**. Once you apply one or more of these filters, the search results will appear in the bottom half of the screen.

If you make changes to the entry, click **Save All** to save all of your catalog updates.

Clicking on a result, such as the example below, will direct you to the entry's edit page.

EPISERVER COMMERCE Batch Update

Welcome | Change Language | About

Catalog Management

- Catalog Management
- Catalog Entry Search
- Catalog Batch Update
- Catalogs
- Wine
- Templates

Main Adjustment

Entry Type: Variation/Sku
 Meta Class: Default Catalog Entry
 Field: Entry : Name

Additional Filters

Language: English (United States)
 Catalog/Category: all catalogs
 Keyword(s):

Apply Filter

Save All

Name	Entry : Name
Enoteca Wine Glass Small	Enoteca Wine Glass Small
Enoteca Wine Glass Large	Enoteca Wine Glass Large
Enoteca Waiters' Friend Double Lever Corkscrew Blue	Enoteca Waiters' Friend Double Lever Corkscrew Blue
Enoteca Waiters' Friend Double Lever Corkscrew Red	Enoteca Waiters' Friend Double Lever Corkscrew Red
Enoteca Waiters' Friend Double Lever Corkscrew Yellow	Enoteca Waiters' Friend Double Lever Corkscrew Yellow
Enoteca Decanter 1000ml	Enoteca Decanter 1000ml
Enoteca Decanter magnum	Enoteca Decanter magnum

Order Management

The **Order Management** system provides shopping carts, order capture, order fulfillment, and payment function support. Features and functionality include return merchandise authorization (RMA), support for item exchanges, and UI enhancements. In this section the *order workflow* is described, as well as *shipping and receiving*, *shopping carts* and *payment plans*.

Refer to the *Shopping Workflow* section for a general description of the shopping procedure in EPiServer Commerce.

Order Workflow

The order workflow consists of the following main parts and tasks:

- **Creating an Order**
- **Fulfilling an order**
- **Splitting shipments**
- **Viewing, editing and searching for orders**

The order workflow is explained in more detail in this section.

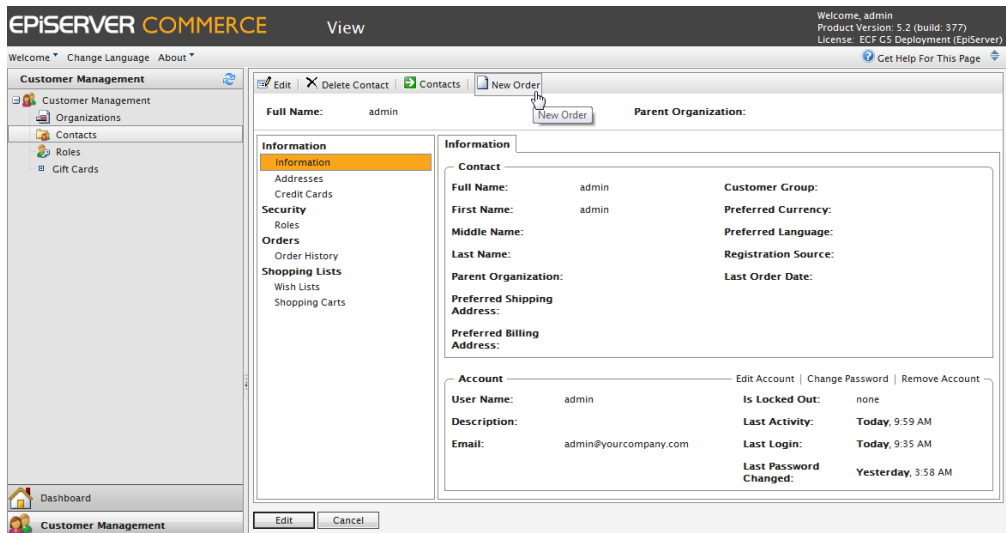
Refer also to the *Working Procedure* section for more information on how orders are created and processed in EPiServer Commerce.

Creating an Order

Option 1: Creating an Order Within a Contact

1. Go to **Customer Management > Contacts** and create or click on an existing contact. The contact details appear.

2. Click on **New Order**.



3. The **New Order** pop-up window appears. Select the site to apply the order to and click **OK**. The **Purchase Order New form** appears, allowing users to enter basic information about the order.

Filling Out the New Purchase Order

1. Enter basic order information.

Basic Order Info

Customer: admin

Currency: US dollar

Coupon Code: 1234567

Apply

Field	Description
Customer	This is the name of the contact.
Currency	Select from the drop-down list the currency to associate with the Purchase Order.
Coupon	Coupon codes created with a promotions can be applied here to associate with the Purchase Order. Click Apply once code is entered.

2. Click **New Item** to select the items in the site catalog to associate with the Purchase Order. A pop-up windows appears allowing you select items from a site catalog.

New Item | Delete

ID	Name

Page Size: 20

3. Search for items by entering your search terms (e.g. "iphone") into the search field and click **Find**. You can sort your search results alphabetically by clicking the **Name** column. Select an item from the list and click on **Configure Selected Entry**.

The 'New Line Item' dialog box displays a search for 'bordeaux'. The results table is as follows:

Picture	Name	Catalog	Type	Price	In Stock
	Mixed Cases	France	Variation	£8,546.05	1000
	Ch. Plantey Canteloup	France	Variation	£6.95	1000
	Chateau Langoa-Barton	France	Variation	£47.00	1000
	Chateau Bellevue	France	Variation	£43.00	1000
	Chateau Pichon-Longueville Lalande	France	Variation	£215.00	1000

At the bottom, the page size is set to 20, and there are 584 items. Navigation links for pages 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and more are available. Buttons for 'Cancel' and 'Configure Selected Entry' are at the bottom right.

Advanced Search

You can apply three filters to refine your item search results.

The 'Advanced Search' section of the 'New Line Item' dialog box includes three filters:

- Select catalog**: A dropdown menu.
- Select language**: A dropdown menu.
- Select entry type**: A dropdown menu.

Buttons for 'Find' and 'Advanced Search' are also present.

Field	Description
Select catalog	Select which specific catalog to search
Select language	Select a specific language (such as German) for items described in German
Select entry type	Select a specific type of entry, such as variation/sku or bundle

Configuring the Selected Entry

1. Before you add the item to the order, you can configure the actual price, the quantity, and apply a percentage or discount based discount.

New Line Item

Selected Entry: Chateau Langoa-Barton

Display Price: £47.00

Price:

Quantity:

In Stock: 1000. Reserved: 0.

Discount: Percentage Based ▼

Discount description amount

Total: **£47.00**

Required Fields

- Price
- Quantity

Field	Description
Display Price	This is the price seen on the public website. This is set at the catalog entry level.
Price	This is the actual cost of the item that will be charged when the item is added to the order.
Quantity	Set how many of the item to add to the order.
Discount	You can apply a discount to the item, either Value or Percentage based.
Total	The total is automatically calculated, factoring in the actual price, quantity, and any discounts applied.

2. Once the item is configured, click **Add item to the order**. The item will appear on the Purchase Order form.

<input type="button" value="New Item"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>						
ID	Name	Quantity	List Price	Total	Discount	
ELCB000SOVTF56	Nextware iPhone Screen Protector 2-pk.	1	\$19.99	\$19.99	\$0.00	
Page Size: 20 (1 items)						

Completing the Rest of the Purchase Order Form

1. Enter a Billing and a Shipping Address.

When entering the Shipping or Billing Address, you can select an existing address associated with the contact, if any.

Billing Address	Shipping Address
Address: <input type="text" value="Add new address"/>	Address: <input type="text" value="Add new address"/>
Name: <input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Same as Billing Address
First Name: <input type="text"/>	Name: <input type="text"/>
Last Name: <input type="text"/>	First Name: <input type="text"/>
Line 1: <input type="text"/>	Last Name: <input type="text"/>
Line 2: <input type="text"/>	Line 1: <input type="text"/>
City: <input type="text"/>	Line 2: <input type="text"/>
Country Name: <input type="text" value="United States"/>	City: <input type="text"/>
State: <input type="text" value="Alabama"/>	Country Name: <input type="text" value="United States"/>
Postal Code: <input type="text"/>	State: <input type="text" value="Alabama"/>
Day Phone: <input type="text"/>	Postal Code: <input type="text"/>
Evening Phone: <input type="text"/>	Day Phone: <input type="text"/>
Email: <input type="text"/>	Evening Phone: <input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Add to customer's address book	Email: <input type="text"/>
	<input type="checkbox"/> Add to customer's address book

Checkmark **Add to customer's address book** if you want to save the address to the contact.

If the Shipping Address is the same as the Billing Address, click on **Same as Billing Address**. The Shipping Address form is autopopulated with the information entered in the Billing Address form.

2. Select the kind of shipping to use for the order under **Shipment Details**. Select from the drop-down the shipping methods (add link) available.
3. Click on **Recalculate** to generate the cost summary.

Shipment Details	
Shipping method:	<input type="text" value="Fixed Shipping Rate"/>
<input type="button" value="Recalculate"/>	

Summary	
Item Subtotal:	\$19.99
Shipping Cost:	\$10.00
Less Shipment Discount:	\$0.00
Total Before Tax:	\$19.99
Item Taxes:	\$0.00
Shipment Total:	\$29.99

4. Click **OK**.

Option 2: Creating an Order from Purchase Order List

1. Go to **Order Management > Purchase Orders**.
2. Click on **New Order**. A pop-up appears, allowing you to select the site and contact to apply the new order to.

3. Click **OK**.

4. Follow the steps above to complete the Purchase Order.

The Order Form

Once the Purchase Order form is completed, the order **fulfillment process** begins.

Order No: PO19698 **Customer:** admin
Order Total: \$41.99 **Status:** InProgress

Summary **Details** **Payments** **Returns** **Notes**

Overview

Order #: PO19698 **Status:** In Progress
Created Date: 12/14/2011 10:14:22 AM **Coupon code:** none
Order Total: \$41.99 **Site name:**
Balance Due: \$41.99 **Cancel Order**
Currency: USD **Place On Hold**
Release Order Hold

Customer Information

Customer: admin **Open Customer Profile**
Email Address: admin@yourcompany.com

Billing Address

Name: Admin **Edit Billing Address**
Address: 111 First Street, Georgetown, Alabama, 123456, United States
Phone Number:

Meta Data

Tracking Number (en-US): PO19698
Expiration Date (en-US): <not set>
Parent Order Id (en-US): 0

The order form consists of five sections:

Tab Name	Description
Summary	Displays an overview of the order, including the customer information, billing address, and other data. From here you can cancel orders, edit information, and place an order on hold.
Details	Displays the shipment details, including shipment status, items to be shipped, and a list of applied discounts/coupons. Returns/Exchanges are also created here.
Payments	You can create and assign payments to the order here. Payments are automatically processed when saved.
Returns	Displays the details of a return, if made.
Notes	Displays the notes attached to the order. Notes are automatically logged when certain events occur within the order (e.g. the shipment status changed).

Fulfilling an Order

Once the **Purchase Order** form is completed, the order **fulfillment** process begins. This means that the payment will be cleared and the order will be released for packing and shipping.

The order form consists of five sections:

Tab Name	Description
Summary	Displays an overview of the order, including the customer information, billing address, and other data. From here you can cancel orders, edit information, and place an order on hold.
Details	Displays the shipment details, including shipment status, items to be shipped, and a list of applied discounts/coupons. Returns/Exchanges are also created here.
Payments	You can create and assign payments to the order here. Payments are automatically processed when saved.
Returns	Displays the details of a return, if made.
Notes	Displays the notes attached to the order. Notes are automatically logged when certain events occur within the order (e.g. the shipment status changed)

Processing the Order, Submitting a Payment, and Releasing to Shipping

The basic workflow from purchase order to shipping is done this way.

1. Add a payment to the order.

Order

Add Note Send Notifications Add Order Address

Order No: PO0850 **Customer:** Mary Smith
Order Total: \$59.98 **Status:** InProgress

Summary Details **Payments** Returns Notes

Create Payment

Name	Transaction Type	Amount	Status

Page Size: 100

2. Enter the amount of the payment. The **Amount** field auto-populates the value of the total order, including shipping costs. However, you can change the value of the payment (useful for splitting payments between two or more payment methods at the request of the customer).
3. Select the **Payment Method** from the drop-down list.
4. Click **OK**. The order goes into **Edit Mode**.

The Order is in Edit Mode. Save changes before exiting. Save Cancel

Add Note Send Notifications Add Order Address

Order No: PO2427 **Customer:** Mary Smith
Order Total: £86.00 **Status:** InProgress

Summary Details **Payments** Returns Notes

Create Payment

Name	Transaction Type	Amount	Status
Pay By Phone		86.00	Pending

Page Size: 100

Note: When in Edit Mode, you can add more payments to the order. However, once you click **Save**, you finalize the payment. This means that you cannot add or delete any further payments.

5. Once you have finished adding one or more payments, click **Save** to exit Edit Mode and save your changes. The payment gets automatically processed for the amount specified.

Order

Add Note Send Notifications Add Order Address

Order No: PO0850 **Customer:** Mary Smith
Order Total: \$59.98 **Status:** InProgress

Summary Details **Payments** Returns Notes

	Name	Transaction Type	Amount	Status
<input type="checkbox"/>	Pay By Phone	Sale	59.9800	Processed

Page Size: 100

6. Check the **Details** tab. You will see that the **Shipment Status** has changed to "Awaiting Inventory." Once the availability of the item has been determined, click on **Release Shipment** to release the order to your shipping department.

Summary **Details** Payments Returns Notes

Shipment # 1

New Line Item Delete

	ID	Name	Quantity	List Price	Placed Price	Total Discount	Discount Description	Total
<input type="checkbox"/>	83017B	Chateau Bellevue	2.00	£43.00	£43.00	£0.00		£86.00

Page Size: 100

Shipping Information

Shipping Address:
 1 First Street, Hometown, Alabama, 81818, United States [Edit Shipping Address](#)

Shipping Method:
 Free delivery (2-3 days) [Edit Shipping Method](#)

Shipment Summary

Item Subtotal: £86.00
 Shipping Cost: £0.00
 Shipment Total: £86.00

Shipment Status

Status: Awaiting Inventory

[Complete Shipment](#)
[Release Shipment](#)
[Cancel Shipment](#)

Returns/Exchanges

[Create Return](#)

Promotions

Type	Name	Coupon Code
------	------	-------------

7. By clicking on **Release shipment**, the status changes to "Released." For further processing of the order, your shipping department will go to **Order Management > Shipment**.



If you click **Cancel shipment**, you will end up canceling the entire order. (At the moment, there is no way to undo the cancellation, so you must be careful.)

Canceling an Order

Under the **Summary** tab, click on **Cancel Order**. This will completely cancel the order. The status of the order changes to "Canceled."

The cancellation of the order will be logged under the **Notes** tab.

Order No: PO0850 Customer: Mary Smith
 Order Total: \$59.98 Status: Cancelled

Summary Details Payments Returns Notes

New Item

	Originated By	Date/Time	Note Text
5	admin	2/21/2011 9:49:43 AM	New order placed by admin in ConsoleManager
6	admin	2/21/2011 10:01:16 AM	New Other payment in the amount of \$59.98 added to order
7	admin	2/21/2011 10:08:10 AM	Shipment 10 status changes to Released
8	admin	2/21/2011 10:11:21 AM	Order status changed to Cancelled

Page Size: 100

Splitting Shipments

If there are two or more items within an order, they can be **split** into separate shipments. This is useful for expediting items within the order that are immediately ready for shipment, while other items have extra shipping lead time.

1. Go to an existing purchase order or create a new one. The order must have two or more items.
2. Go to the **Details** tab in the order form. Look for **Shipment # 1**.

Add Note Send Notifications Add Order Address

Order No: PO0663 Customer: John Browne
 Order Total: £226.00 Status: InProgress

Summary Details Payments Returns Notes

Shipment # 1

New Line Item Delete

	ID	Name	Quantity	List Price	Placed Price	Total Discount	Discount Description	Total
	74521B	Domaine de Montille	2.00	£69.00	£69.00	£0.00		£138.00
	74838B	Maison Camille Giroud	4.00	£22.00	£22.00	£0.00		£88.00

Page Size: 100

3. Select the item you want to move by clicking on the **Move** icon.

Shipment # 1

New Line Item Delete

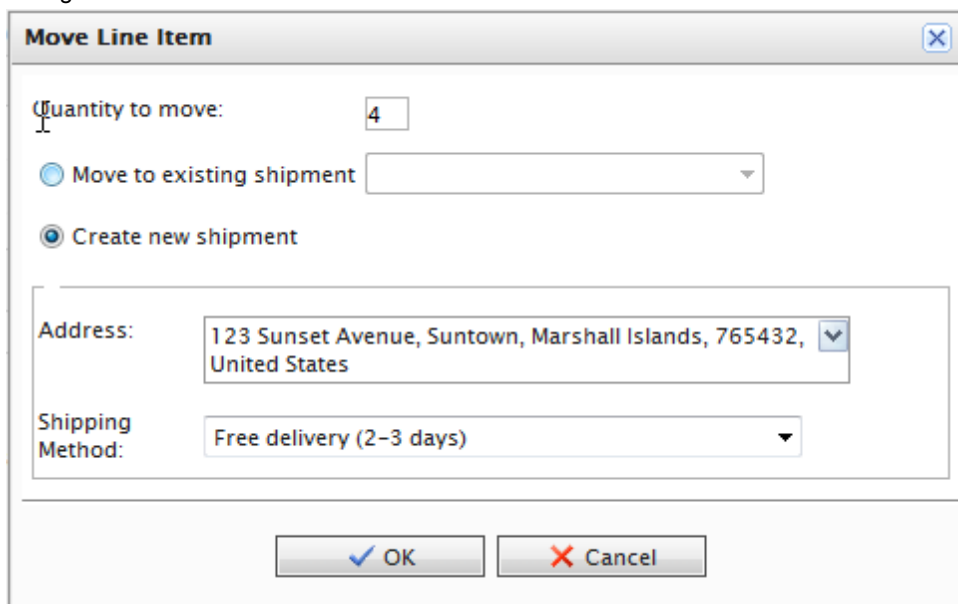
	ID	Name
	74521B	Domain
	74838B	Maison

Move

Page Size: 100

4. The pop-up appears, which allows you to choose to move the item(s) to an existing shipment or create a new shipment. You can also select the quantity of the item to move. Each new shipment within the order can have its own separate shipping address and shipping method. Select a shipping address and shipping method from their respective drop-down lists. Click **OK** to save your

changes.



Move Line Item

Quantity to move:

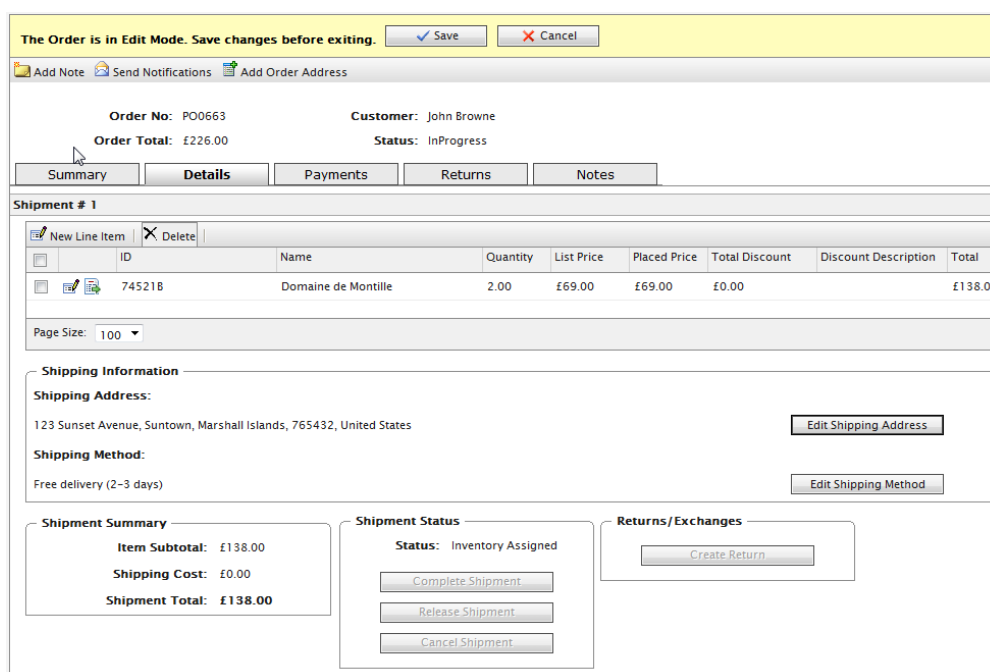
☐ Move to existing shipment

☒ Create new shipment

Address:

Shipping Method:

- After splitting the shipments, the order form goes into Edit Mode. The **Details** page shows the new shipment, which can be processed completely separate from one another, but tied to a single purchase order.



The Order is in Edit Mode. Save changes before exiting.

Add Note

Order No: PO0663 Customer: John Browne
 Order Total: £226.00 Status: InProgress

Shipment # 1

ID	Name	Quantity	List Price	Placed Price	Total Discount	Discount Description	Total
745218	Domaine de Montille	2.00	£69.00	£69.00	£0.00		£138.00

Page Size: 100

Shipping Information

Shipping Address:
 123 Sunset Avenue, Suntown, Marshall Islands, 765432, United States

Shipping Method:
 Free delivery (2-3 days)

Shipment Summary

Item Subtotal: £138.00
 Shipping Cost: £0.00
 Shipment Total: £138.00

Shipment Status

Status: Inventory Assigned

Returns/Exchanges

Shipment # 2

[New Line Item](#) | [Delete](#)

ID	Name	Quantity	List Price	Placed Price	Total Discount	Discount Description	Total
748388	Maison Camille Giroud	4.00	£22.00	£22.00	£0.00		£88.00

Page Size: 100

Shipping Information

Shipping Address:
123 Sunset Avenue, Suntown, Marshall Islands, 765432, United States [Edit Shipping Address](#)

Shipping Method:
Free delivery (2-3 days) [Edit Shipping Method](#)

Shipment Summary

Item Subtotal: £88.00
Shipping Cost: £0.00
Shipment Total: £88.00

Shipment Status

Status: Inventory Assigned

[Complete Shipment](#)
[Release Shipment](#)
[Cancel Shipment](#)

Returns/Exchanges

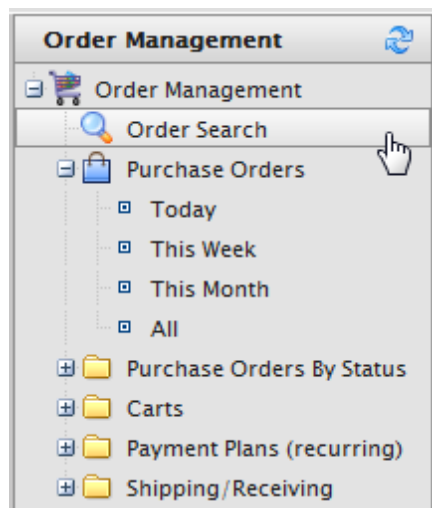
[Create Return](#)

6. Click **Save** to save your changes.

Searching for Orders

The Catalog Search function enables you look for specific sales items stored in EPiServer Commerce.

Click on **Order Management** and then **Order Search**



Using Order Search to Find Existing Purchase Orders

Order Search allows you to find existing orders, giving you six different search filters to help refine your search results. You can click on the ID number of the order to view it.

EPISERVER COMMERCE Order Search

Welcome | [Change Language](#) | [About](#)

Order Management

- Order Management
- Order Search**
- Purchase Orders
 - Today
 - This Week
 - This Month

Class Type: Purchase Order Return #:

Status: [Any] ID:

Date Range: All Customer: [Search](#)

ID	Customer	Total	Status	Last Modified
PO0485	Mary Smith	\$39.98	In Progress	Today, 11:46 AM
PO0850	Mary Smith	\$59.98	Cancelled	Today, 10:49 AM

Filter Name	Description
-------------	-------------

Class Type	Select "Purchase Orders" on the drop-down list. Otherwise, if you want to search for a specific shopping cart or payment plan, select those.
Status	<p>You can filter results by their statuses. For example, if you want to find only completed purchase orders, select from the drop-down list "Completed".</p> <p>Available status options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • OnHold • PartiallyShipped • InProgress • Completed • Cancelled • AwaitingExchange
Date Range	You can select from date ranges from "today," "last week," or "this month."
Return #	Enter the return number of a purchase order if a return was created for that particular order.
ID	You can specify the order ID. Orders created out of the box with EPiServer Commerce are typically numbered as PO####.
Customer	Enter a customer name and the search results will return only orders filtered by the specified name.

Click on **Search** to bring your search query. The desired results appear below. The results are broken down by five column fields:

- ID
- Customer (name)
- Total (cost of order)
- Status
- Modified (date)

You can sort results by **ID**, **Customer**, **Total**, or **Status**.

Viewing Purchase Orders by Date or Status

In the left navigation menu, you can click on the nodes below **Purchase Orders** and **Purchase Orders by Status**. For example, clicking on **Purchase Orders > Today** will show the orders created today only on the right window.

EPiSERVER

COMMERCE

Order List

Welcome ▾ Change Language About ▾

Order Management

Order Management

Order Search

Purchase Orders

Today

This Week

This Month

All

New Order

Delete Selected

ID	Customer	Total	Status	Last Modified
PO0485	Mary Smith	\$39.98	In Progress	Today, 11:46 AM
PO0850	Mary Smith	\$59.98	Cancelled	Today, 10:49 AM
PO7657	Hiep Khuc	\$499.98	In Progress	Today, 10:26 AM

Moreover, you can view orders within the **Order List by status**. For example, click on **Purchase Orders by Status > InProgress** to view orders with that status.

ID	Customer	Total	Status	Last Modified
PO0485	Mary Smith	\$39.98	In Progress	Today, 11:46 AM
PO7657	Hiep Khuc	\$499.98	In Progress	Today, 10:26 AM
PO3851	Hiep Khuc	\$967.44	In Progress	2/18/2011 11:48:36 AM
PO1537	Hiep Khuc	\$451.99	In Progress	2/18/2011 9:58:27 AM

Shipping and Receiving Workflow

The shipping and receiving workflow consists of the following main parts and tasks:

- Processing shipments
- Creating picklists
- Processing returns and exchanges

The shipping and receiving workflow is explained in more detail in the following sections.

Refer also to the *Working Procedure* section for more information on how orders are created and processed in EPiServer Commerce.

Processing Shipments and Creating Picklists

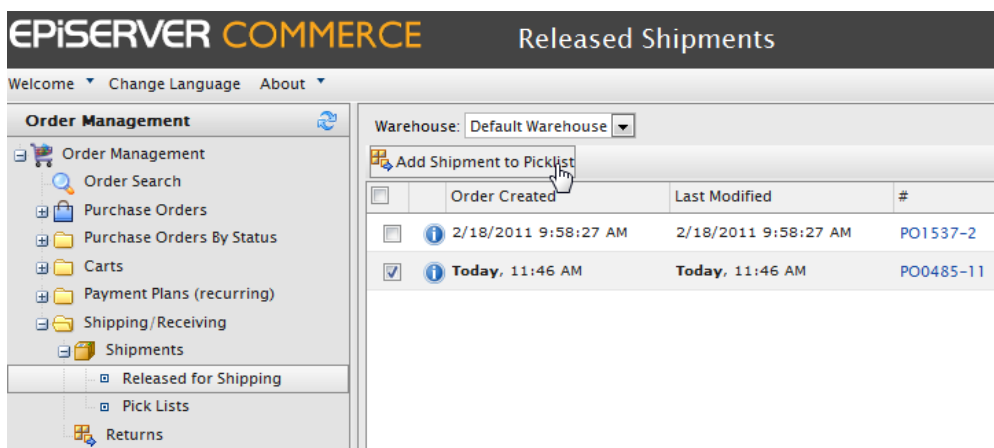
Once an order has been released for shipment, the order then goes through shipment processing, where you can add the shipment to a Picklist and select the warehouse where the item will be packed and shipped from.

1. Go to **Order Management > Shipping/Receiving > Shipments > Released for Shipping**. This shows the **Released Shipments** screen.

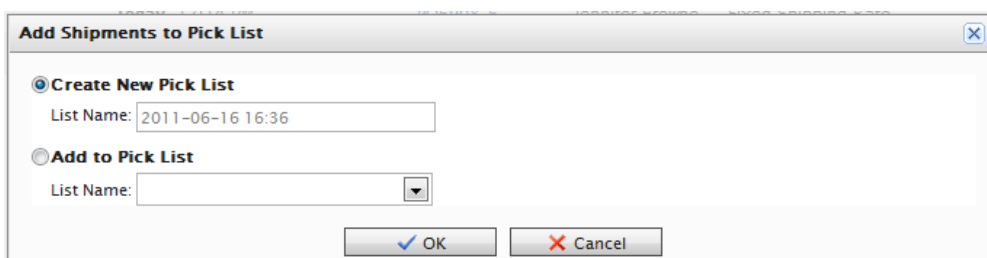
Order Created	Last Modified	#
2/18/2011 9:58:27 AM	2/18/2011 9:58:27 AM	PO1537-2
Today, 11:46 AM	Today, 11:46 AM	PO0485-11

2. Select a **Warehouse** from the drop-down list to determine where the item ship be packed and shipped from.

3. Checkmark which orders you want to add to the Picklist and click **Add Shipment to Picklist**.



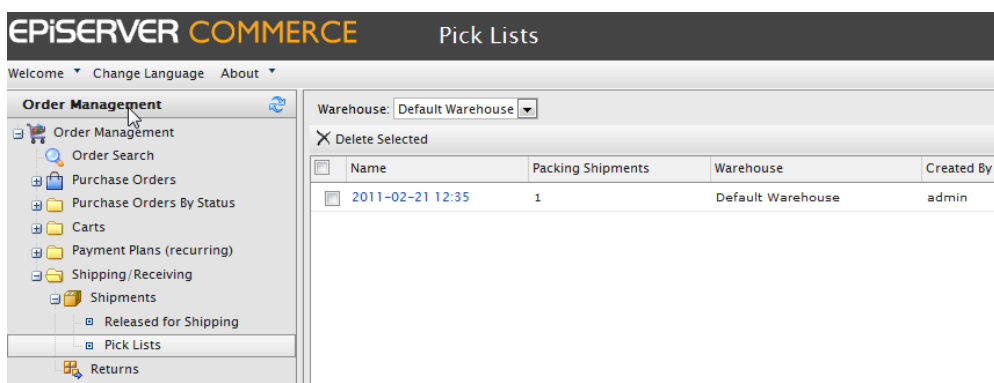
4. The **Add Shipments to Pick List** pop-up appears. You can choose to create a **New Pick List** (by default, the **List Name** shows the date and time the Pick List was generated) or add the chosen shipment(s) to an existing Pick List you can select from the List Name drop-down list. Click **OK** to save your changes.



Note that it is currently not possible to change the pick list name. It defaults to date and time.

Printing Picklists and Printing Packing Slips

1. Go to **Order Management > Pick Lists**. You can see existing Pick lists; you can filter the view by choosing which warehouse the pick list was generated in.



You can also sort existing pick lists by **Name**, **Packing Shipments**, **Warehouse**, and **Created By**.

2. Click on an existing pick list. The **Packing Shipments** window appears. You can choose to print a packing slip and/or a picklist. Checkmark one or more purchase orders. Click on **Print Picklist** to

generated a printable and exportable (Excel or PDF) pick list.

1 of 1 100% Select a format Export			
Shipment Id: 6			
Customer Name	Product Code	Product Name	Qty
Mary Smith	83017B	Chateau Bellevue	2.00
Shipment Id: 9			
Customer Name	Product Code	Product Name	Qty
John Browne	74521B	Domaine de Montille	2.00

To generate a packing slip, checkmark one or more purchase orders to include in the packing slip and then click on Print Packing Slip.

Finalizing a Package for Shipment

There are two ways to complete a shipment.

Method 1

1. Select the box next to the shipment and then click **Complete**:

Packing Shipments					
Complete Print Picklist Print Packing Slip Remove from Picklist					
<input type="checkbox"/>		Last Modified	#	Customer	Shipping Method
<input type="checkbox"/>		6/16/2011 12:09:53 PM	PO4563-4	Carlos Nevada	Fixed Shipping Rate
<input type="checkbox"/>		6/16/2011 12:14:41 PM	PO6908-6	Jennifer Browne	Fixed Shipping Rate
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		Today, 1:40 PM	PO10728-9	Lisa Prescott	Ground Shipping

2. The **Complete shipment** pop-up appears. The default shipment number is based on the number after the purchase order number. For example, in the screenshot above, the PO number for the selected order is "PO10728-9". The **last number after the dash** is the number you want to enter into the text field, in this case it is "9".

Packing Shipments

Complete | Print Picklist | Print Packing Slip | Remove from Picklist

	Last Modified	#	Customer	Shipping Method
	6/16/2011 12:09:53			
	6/16/2011 12:14:4			
	Today, 1:40 PM			

Complete shipment

Shipment #: Validate

OK Cancel

- Click **Validate**. Once validated, you will see the customer name, shipping address, shipping method, and a field to enter in the tracking number provided by the shipping provider. Enter in a tracking number and click **OK**. The shipment is sent out and completed. The purchase order status will change to "Completed."

Complete shipment X

Shipment #: Validate

Customer: Lisa Prescott

Shipping Address: 111 Palm Street, Sun City, Florida, 333445, United States

Shipping Method: Ground Shipping

Tracking Number:

OK Cancel



Currently, the Complete shipment pop-up is rendered over the purchase order number. So to reference the shipment number without closing the pop-up, you can move and drag the pop-up so you can see the PO number by hovering your mouse cursor over the Complete shipment title bar.

Method 2

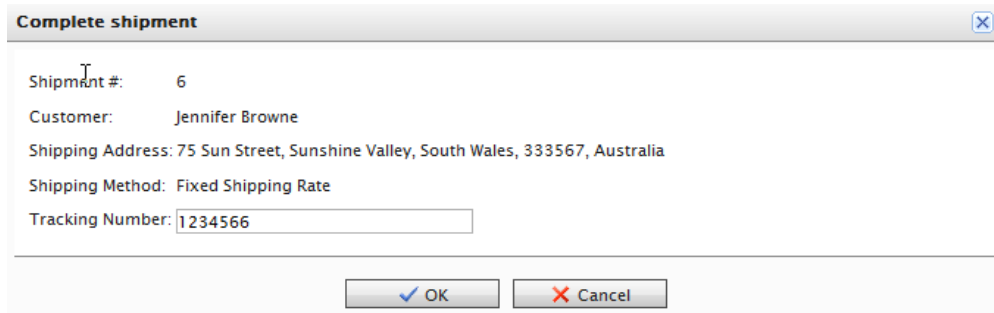
- To complete a shipment, click on the complete shipment icon highlighted in the screenshot below:

Packing Shipments

Complete | Print Picklist | Print Packing Slip | Remove from Picklist

	Last Modified	#	Customer	Shipping Method
	6/16/2011 12:09:53 PM	PO4563-4	Carlos Nevada	Fixed Shipping Rate
	6/16/2011 12:14:41 PM	PO6908-6	Jennifer Browne	Fixed Shipping Rate

- The **Complete shipment** pop-up appears. The shipment # is already validated with the last number of the PO number.



Complete shipment

Shipment #: 6

Customer: Jennifer Browne

Shipping Address: 75 Sun Street, Sunshine Valley, South Wales, 333567, Australia

Shipping Method: Fixed Shipping Rate

Tracking Number:

- Enter a tracking number provided by the shipping provider and then click **OK** to complete the shipment and complete the order.

Processing Returns and Exchanges

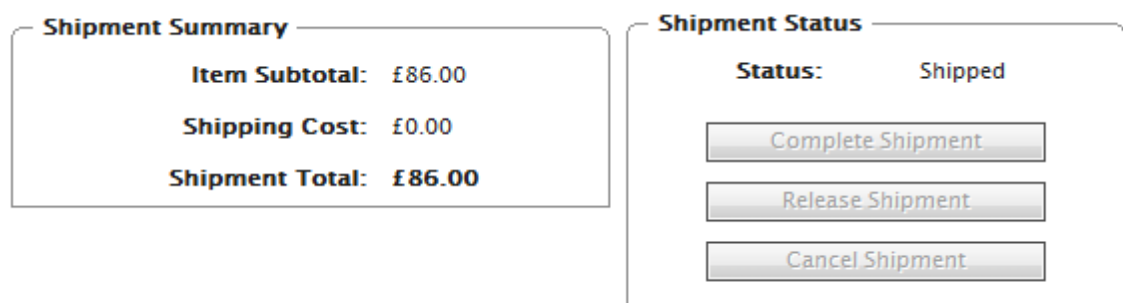
Initiating a Return

Once a package has been finalized and shipped out, EPiServer Commerce enables you to process returns and exchanges directly in the order.



Returns and exchanges can only be processed once a purchase order status is tagged as "Completed."

- Go to purchase order that has been finalized and shipped. Go to the **Details** tab and you will see that the **Create Return** is available under **Returns/Exchanges**. Click on it to begin the return and/or exchange process.



Shipment Summary

Item Subtotal: £86.00

Shipping Cost: £0.00

Shipment Total: £86.00

Shipment Status

Status: Shipped

- The **Create/Edit Return form** appears. Click on **New Item** to add associate the items to be returned.
- The Line Item drop-down menu defaults to the items that were in the original purchase order. You can set the **Return Quantity** and the **Return Reason** from the drop-down list (Faulty, Unwanted Gift, Incorrect Item). You can also add additional information to the return. Click **OK** to save your changes.

Create/Edit Return

☐ Delete

ID	Name	Quantity	List Price	Total	Reason
830178	Chateau Bellevue	2.00	£43.00	£86.00	Faulty

Page Size: 20 (1 items) | Page 1

Total Information

Sub Total: 86.00

Tax Total: 0.00

Shipping Total: 0.00

Handling Total: 86.00

Discount Total: 0

Total Return Amount: 86.00

Additional Information

Comments: Strange taste in batch 12345.

OK Cancel

- The purchase order will go into **Edit Mode**. Click **Save** to continue the return process. Otherwise, click **Cancel** to cancel the return.
- In the **Order List**, the order will now appear with status **Completed/Awaiting Return Completion**.

MERCE

Order List

New Order

New Payment Plan

✕ Delete Selected

ID	Customer	Total	Status	Last Modified
PO0663	John Browne	£226.00	Partially Shipped	Today, 11:34 AM
PO10564	Carlos Santana	£1,290.00	In Progress	Today, 11:30 AM
PO0791	Carlos Santana	\$180.85	In Progress	Today, 10:27 AM
PO2427	Mary Smith	£86.00	Completed (Awaiting Return Completion)	Today, 10:23 AM

Return Completing Actions

- Click on the **Returns** tab to process the return further. Once you get a notice from the shipping department, for example, that they have received the returned item, click on **Acknowledge Receipt Items**.

The screenshot shows the 'Order' page in EPiServer Commerce. At the top, the header includes 'MERCE Order' and user information: 'Welcome, admin', 'Product Version: 5.2 (build: 377)', and 'License: ECF G5 Deployment (EPiServer)'. Below the header, there are links for 'Add Note', 'Send Notifications', and 'Add Order Address'. The main content area displays order details: 'Order No: PO2427', 'Customer: Mary Smith', 'Order Total: £86.00', and 'Status: Completed'. A tabbed interface shows 'Summary', 'Details', 'Payments', 'Returns' (selected), and 'Notes'. The 'Returns' section shows 'Return # RMA8980' with details: 'Date/Time Initiated: Today, 12:50 PM', 'Created By: admin', 'Status: Awaiting Stock Return', and 'Return Total: £86.00'. A 'Notes' field contains 'Strange taste in batch 12345'. To the right, there are two action panels: 'Returns Actions' with buttons for 'Edit Return', 'Cancel Return', 'Complete Return', and 'Acknowledge Receipt Items' (highlighted with a mouse cursor), and 'Exchange Actions' with buttons for 'View Exchange' and 'Create Exchange'. Below these panels is a table of return items:

ID	Name	Quantity	List Price	Total	Reason
830178	Chateau Bellevue	2.00	43.00	86.0000	Faulty

At the bottom, there is a 'Page Size' dropdown set to '100'.

You can also choose to edit the return or cancel the return completely.

2. Once you click on **Acknowledge Receipt Items**, the **Complete Return** becomes available.

This close-up shows the 'Returns actions' panel. It contains four buttons: 'Edit Return', 'Cancel Return', 'Complete Return' (highlighted with a mouse cursor), and 'Acknowledge Receipt Items'. To the right of the panel, the text 'Ex' is partially visible.

3. Click on **Complete Return** to open the **Create Refund** form.

The screenshot shows the 'Create Refund' form. It has a title bar with a close button. The form contains the following fields and options:

- Amount:** A text box containing '86.0000'.
- Existing Payments:** Two radio button options: 'Pay By Phone (Sale) - £86.00' (selected) and 'New Credit'.
- Payment Method:** A dropdown menu showing 'Pay By Phone'.
- At the bottom right, there are two buttons: 'OK' (with a checkmark icon) and 'Cancel' (with a red X icon).

- a. The Amount value defaults to the invoice cost of the item (not including the shipping costs). For example, if the item cost \$49.99 and the shipping cost was \$2, then the Amount text box will show \$49.99.

However, you can specify a different amount to refund to the customer, including the full cost of the order, item(s) + shipping cost. By default, the refund will be deposited based on the payment method the customer used to make the order.

- b. If the customer wants the refund processed and deposited to a different credit card or payment method (such as cash, money order, or electronic transfer), click on the **New Credit** radio button and you can enter their alternate credit card information or other refund payment information.
4. Once done, click **OK** to create and process the refund. The status of the purchase order changes to **Completed**.

Order No: PO2427 Customer: Mary Smith
Order Total: £86.00 Status: Completed

Summary Details Payments **Returns** Notes

Return # RMA8980

Date/Time Initiated: Today, 12:50 PM Notes: Strange taste in batch 12345.
Created By: admin
Status: Complete
ReturnTotal: £86.00

Returns Actions

Edit Return
Cancel Return
Complete Return
Acknowledge Receipt Items

Exchange Actions

View Exchange
Create Exchange

ID	Name	Quantity	List Price	Total	Reason
830178	Chateau Bellevue	2.00	43.00	86.0000	Faulty

Page Size: 100

Initiating an Exchange Order

Generating an exchange creates a separate **Exchange Order** (denoted by "EO", instead of "PO") tied to the original Purchase Order. An Exchange Order is similar to processing a Purchase Order, as it involves payment processing and releasing packages for shipment.

1. Go to a Purchase Order, click on the **Details** tab, and then click on **Create Return**.
2. Add the items for exchange.
3. Click on the **Returns** tab and click on **Acknowledge Receipt Items**. Click **Create Exchange** to open the **Create Exchange Order form**.
4. Click on **New Item** and then select the item to be exchanged by clicking **Configure Selected Entry**. You can adjust the price, quantity, and applicable discounts before you add the item to the Exchange Order by clicking **Add items to the order**.

Create Exchange Order

New Line Item

Find [Advanced Search](#)

Picture	Name	Catalog	Type	Price	In Stock
	Chandon de Briailles	France	Variation	£55.00	1000
	Louis Jadot	France	Variation	£125.00	1000
	Dujac Fils & Pere	France	Variation	£36.60	1000
	Domaine Sylvie Esmonin	France	Variation	£72.00	1000
	Maison Joseph Drouhin	France	Variation	£165.00	1000

Page Size: 20 (2779 items) | Page 1 2 3 4 5 ...

Cancel Configure Selected Entry

Day Phone: Postal Code:

Create Exchange Order

New Line Item

Selected Entry: Domaine Sylvie Esmonin

Display Price: £72.00

Price:

Quantity:

In Stock: 1000. Reserved: 0.

Discount: Percentage Based

Discount description amount

Total: **£72.00**

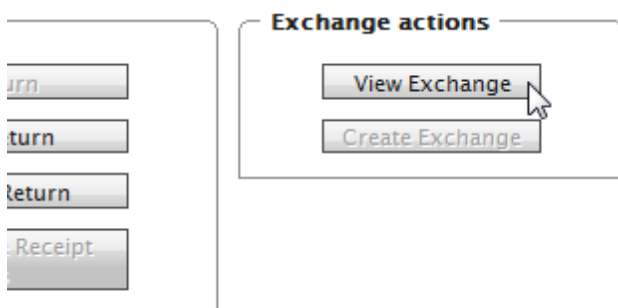
Back Add item to the order

Postal Code:

5. Enter a shipping and billing address. Select the shipping method to use for the Exchange Order. Click on **Recalculate** to adjust the Summary total.
6. Click **OK** once done.

Viewing an Exchange

1. Once an Exchange Order (EO) has been created, click on **View Exchange** to view the details of the EO. An EO is similar to how a Purchase Order is set up.



- Click on the **Payments** tab to add a payment to the Exchange Order. Select a payment method for processing the EO. You can adjust the amount if needed (the amount default value is based the item cost + shipping).

Commerce Order

The Order is in Edit Mode. Save changes before exiting. ✓ Save ✗ Cancel

📝 Add Note 📧 Send Notifications 📍 Add Order Address

Order No: EO0335 **Customer:** Carlos Santana **Original Order:** PO0791

Order Total: £72.00 **Status:** AwaitingExchange

Summary **Details** **Payments** **Returns** **Notes**

Create Payment

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Transaction Type	Amount	Status
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Pay By Phone		72.00	Pending

Page Size: 100 ▼

- The Exchange Order goes into **Edit Mode**. Click on **Save** to process the payment and the order. The payment Transaction Type changes to "Authorization."
- In the **Order List**, there will be an exchange order with prefix EO instead of PO, and with status **Awaiting Exchange**.

Commerce Order List

📄 New Order 📄 New Payment Plan ✗ Delete Selected

<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Customer	Total	Status	Last Modified
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	EO0335	Carlos Santana	£72.00	Awaiting Exchange	Today, 1:22 PM
<input type="checkbox"/>	PO0663	John Browne	£226.00	Partially Shipped	Today, 11:34 AM
<input type="checkbox"/>	PO10564	Carlos Santana	£1,290.00	In Progress	Today, 11:30 AM
<input type="checkbox"/>	PO0791	Carlos Santana	\$180.85	Completed (Awaiting Stock Return)	Today, 10:27 AM
<input type="checkbox"/>	PO2427	Mary Smith	£86.00	Completed	Today, 10:23 AM

- Go back to the original Purchase Order and click on the **Returns** tab. Click on **Complete Return** to enable the Customer Service Representative (CSR) to release the EO shipment. Optionally, you can cancel the shipment to cancel the Exchange Order. Once you release shipment, the CSR repeats the same process as he would when shipping a Purchase Order.

Shopping Cart

On the EPiServer Commerce sample site a **shopping cart (or basket)** is created in the system as soon as a visitor selects the **Add to basket** option on any page. Registered and anonymous customer carts can be viewed in detail and manually converted into a purchase order. In this section the shopping cart functionality is described in more detail.

Refer to the *Shopping Workflow* section for a general description of the shopping procedure in EPiServer Commerce.

Converting a Shopping Cart to a Purchase Order

Customer shopping carts can be manually converted over to Purchase Orders, rather than have them process the order via the front-end site.

1. Go to **Order Management > Carts**. You will see the Shopping Carts List. You can also click on "Today," "This Week," or "This Month" to filter by date range.

ID	Customer	Total	Status	Last Modified
14	Carlos	\$418.99	[undefined]	Today, 3:27 PM
9	Jennifer Browne	\$32.41	[undefined]	6/16/2011 4:25:13 PM
3	Anonymous	\$0.00	[undefined]	6/16/2011 12:07:01 PM

2. Click on the **ID** number of the shopping cart you want to convert over to a Purchase Order.
3. You will see the **Cart View** window and details of the customer's shopping cart.

Cart View

More Actions ▾

Overview

[Edit Information](#)

Cart #: 14

Created Date: 6/23/2011 1:27:46 PM

Cart Total: 418.99

Currency: USD

Customer: Carlos

Customer ID: f3ed5de8-5f95-43f6-a6d2-e4348cca9d2e [Open Customer Profile](#)

Email Address: carlos@somemail.com

Line Items | **Notes**

ID	Name	Quantity	List Price	Total
ELCB000WM2VAI6		1.00	\$19.99	\$19.99
ELCB000JNYWBG6		1.00	\$399.00	\$399.00

Page Size: 100 ▾

An **anonymous user Cart View** will look like this:

Cart View

More Actions ▼

Overview

Cart #: 3 [Edit Information](#)

Created Date: 6/16/2011 10:07:01 AM

Cart Total: 0.00

Currency: USD

Customer: Anonymous

Email Address:

Line Items [Notes](#)

ID	Name	Quantity	List Price	Total
ELCB000TGQHAW6		1.00	\$9.99	\$9.99

Page Size: 100 ▼

- Edit Information** - You can change the currency to be used for the Purchase Order.
 - Open Customer Profile** - You can view the profile of the registered customer (this option is not available for anonymous shopping carts).
 - Line Items** - This is the list of items currently in the customer's shopping cart, displaying the **Quantity** of each item, **List Price**, and **Total**.
 - Notes** - You can add, edit, or delete notes about the shopping cart.
4. Click on **More Actions** and click on **Convert to Purchase Order**.

Cart View

More Actions ▼

Convert to Purchase Order

Create Payment Plan

[Edit Information](#)

Cart #: 14

Created Date: 6/23/2011 1:27:46 PM

Cart Total: 418.99

Currency: USD

Customer: Carlos

Customer ID: f3ed5de8-5f95-43f6-a6d2-e4348cca9d2e [Open Customer Profile](#)

Email Address: carlos@somemail.com

The page refreshes and shows the Order view page for *further processing of the purchase order*.

For information about how to create a recurring payment plan using Authorize.Net, refer to *Creating a Recurring Payment Plan Using Authorize.Net*.

Payment Plans

This section describes how to work with **payment plans** and recurring payment plans in EPiServer Commerce. A payment plan or recurring payment can be for instance a subscription with associated payments, which are renewed on a regular basis until canceled.

Refer to the *Payment Methods* section for more information on payment methods in EPiServer Commerce.

Setting up a Payment Plan




Payment plans can be setup by the Customer Service Representative (CSR) to generate recurring payments. An example recurring payment would be for magazine or grocery subscriptions.

Payment plans are handled in the background by a scheduled Quartz job which should be configured by your IT team based on your business needs. Ideally, the payment plan job should run **once per day**.

Creating a Payment Plan

1. Go to **Order Management > Payment Plans (recurring)**. You will open up the Payment Plans List. To create a new payment plan, click on **New Payment Plan**.
2. Select a customer contact to attach the payment plan to.
3. The **Payment Plan New** page appears. Complete the form as you would when creating a new order.
4. Under **Payment Plan Details**, you will set the cycles and parameters of the payment plan.

Payment Plan Details

Plan Cycle (en-US):	<input type="text" value="No cycle"/>	
	<i>Cycles mode is used to define period for recurring payments. Can be day, week, month, year or custom.</i>	
Cycle Length (en-US):	<input type="text"/>	
	<i>Cycle length in units of cycle mode.</i>	
Max Cycles (en-US):	<input type="text"/>	
	<i>Number of maximum cycles to process</i>	
Completed Cycles (en-US):	<input type="text"/>	
	<i>Number of completed cycles</i>	
Start Date (en-US):	<input type="text" value="2/23/2012"/> 	<input type="text" value="02:19 PM"/>
	<i>Plan start date</i>	
End Date (en-US):	<input type="text" value="2/23/2012"/> 	<input type="text" value="02:19 PM"/>
	<i>Plan end date</i>	
Is Plan Active (en-US):	<input type="radio"/> True <input checked="" type="radio"/> False	
	<i>Set to true if plan is active</i>	
Last Transaction Date (en-US):	<input type="text" value="2/23/2012"/> 	<input type="text" value="02:19 PM"/>
	<i>The date of last transaction</i>	

5. Once the payment plan is configured, click **OK**.

Field	Description
Plan Cycle (Cycle Mode)	<p>You can choose from the following plan cycles, which determine how often the customer is charged.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - No Cycle: No recurring payment is created. The customer is charged once when the initial purchase order is created. - Daily Cycle: recurring payment happens daily from start date. - Weekly Cycle: recurring payment happens weekly from start date. - Monthly Cycle: recurring payment happens monthly from start date. - Custom1/Custom2: these are placeholders for developers to create custom cycles within the <code>Mediachase.Commerce.Orders.PaymentPlanCycle</code> class.
Cycle Length	<p>Entering a value of 1 or higher determines the unit of time for the Plan Cycle. For example, if the Plan Cycle is set to "Daily," and the Cycle Length is "3," then a transaction occurs every three days. If the Plan Cycle is set to "Monthly" and the Cycle Length is "1," then a transaction occurs once every month. If "2," every two months, etc.</p>
Max Cycles	<p>Determines the maximum number of cycles to run for this payment plan. For example, if the Max Cycles is set to "2," then the maximum number of transactions cycles is two and then the payment plan stops. Set the Max Cycles to "0" if you wish to run the payment plan indefinitely.</p>
Completed Cycles	<p>This tallies the number of completed cycles so far after the payment plan was created. When initially creating the payment plan, set this field to "0".</p>
Start Date	<p>Set the start date and time to determine when the payment plan should begin (beginning recurring transactions).</p>
End Date	<p>Set the end date and time when the payment plan should end (ending recurring transactions).</p>
Is Plan Active	<p>Set "True" to enable the payment plan. Set "False" to create the payment plan but keep it inactive.</p>
Last Transaction Date	<p>Logs the last transaction date. The date and time already in those two fields when first creating the payment plan should be kept as is.</p>

Payment Plan Order Detail Page Explained

The payment plan begins once the first purchase order is generated. The purchase order can be created manually (by clicking on Create First Purchase Order) or automatically by the payment plans quartz job.

After creating a new payment plan, a new **Order** page appears. This is slightly altered from the original Order detail page that appears after creating a new order. The changes include:

- Inability to manage shipments (i.e. release shipments for further processing)
- An Orders tab that shows a history of processed purchase orders from this payment plan
- A "Create First Purchase Order" button that a CSR can manually click on to create the first purchase order related to this payment plan. The button disappears after creating the first purchase order manually or when the payment plan quartz job runs and generates the first purchase order. Once that first purchase is generated, the payment plan goes into effect.
- The purchase order number that is generated includes the parent ID of the payment plan. For example, if the payment plan parent ID is 35, the subsequent purchase orders are numbered as "PO35XXX."
- When a payment is added to a payment plan, the customer is not charged. The customer is charged once the purchase order is generated for the first time (and through subsequent purchase orders). The payment plan simply collects the payment information until converted to a purchase order.

Editing and Canceling a Payment Plan

1. To edit an existing payment plan, go to **Order Management > Payment Plans (Recurring)** or **Today/This Week/This Month/All**. Click on the payment plan ID number to open the payment plans order details page and make edits.
2. To cancel a payment plan, when editing a payment plan, click on the **Summary** tab and then click on **Cancel Payment Plan**.

Creating a Recurring Payment Plan Using Authorize.Net

Out of the box, EPiServer Commerce supports **Authorize.net** as a recurring payment plan gateway.

For more information on how to setup payment methods, refer to the *Payment Gateways* section.

1. Go to **Administration > Order System > Payments > (Language)** and create a new payment method or click on an existing payment method (such as "Pay by Credit Card").
2. When setting up the parameters of the payment method, select this class name:

Class Name:	Mediachase.Commerce.Plugins.Payment.Authorize.AuthorizePaymentGateway ▼
-------------	---

3. Select "Yes" for **Supports Recurring**.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Click on the name of the payment method again and click on the **Parameters** tab.
6. Configure your Authorize.net account for both regular payments and recurring payments.

Overview	Parameters
<p>Configure Authorize.Net Account</p> <p>Get an Authorize.Net account at www.authorizenet.com.</p> <p>API UserId: <input style="width: 80%;" type="text" value="4y5BfuW7jm"/></p> <p>Transaction Key: <input style="width: 80%;" type="text" value="4cAmW927n8uLf5J8"/></p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Regular Payments</p> <p>Processing Url: <input style="width: 90%;" type="text" value="https://test.authorize.net/gateway/transact.dll"/></p> <p>Payment Options:</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;"> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Authorization <input type="radio"/> Sale </p> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Recurring Payments</p> <p>Processing Url: <input style="width: 90%;" type="text" value="https://apitest.authorize.net/xml/v1/request.api"/></p> <p>Recurring Method: <input style="border: none; border-bottom: 1px solid #ccc;" type="text" value="Internal"/></p> <p>Cancel Status: <input style="border: none; border-bottom: 1px solid #ccc;" type="text" value="OnHold"/></p> </div> <div style="margin-top: 10px; text-align: right;"> <input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> </div>	

Marketing

The **Marketing** system consists of the following components:

- *Campaigns* - a way to organize marketing activities. Campaigns must be associated with Promotions in order to provide customer discounts. Optionally, Campaigns can also be tied to Customer Segments for targeted marketing purposes.
 - For example, you can create a seasonal campaign that will include different Promotions targeted for the Spring season.
- *Promotions* - a way to apply various discounts to the products, order totals or shipping. A Promotion is a marketing tool used to increase sales of certain products or product lines. Various incentives such as lowered pricing and other discounts can be employed as part of a Promotion.
 - Promotions are always tied to Campaigns.
 - Promotions can be classified into two types: 1) either you can create a Promotion that is visible prior to checkout or 2) you can configure the Promotion to be displayed during the checkout process.
 - The most powerful aspect of the Marketing system is the Expression Engine which allows variable conditions to be applied when creating a Promotion. These conditions vary from the number of items, the percentage discount, shipping rates and many others.
- *Customer Segments* - these determine the target audience for the Promotions. Customer Segments determine the target audience for the Promotions. Within a Campaign, all Promotions will be applied to whatever Customer Segments associated with the same Campaign. Members of the Customer Segments can be pre-defined in static groups or you can use the Expressions Engine to create dynamic groups whenever Promotions are run.
 - For example, you can have a Customer Segment that targets all users from the Los Angeles area. You can create an Expression that will include all the customers whose home city is Los Angeles. Thus, when a user registers on the site he immediately becomes part of the target Customer Segment.
- *Expressions* - these are customizable Conditions which allow users to extend different aspects of the Marketing system -- Promotions, Customer Segments and Policies all rely on Expressions. There is an Expressions Engine which is a core technology behind the Marketing system.
 - For example, you want to set a Promotion for "40% off Item X." The Expression or Condition to enable this Promotion would include: Catalog ID for Item X and Reward of 40%.
- *Policies* - rules that are always executed when Promotions are applied. This allows a Marketing manager to declare rules just once for the whole site.
 - An example of a rule is as follows: "Do not allow negative orders".

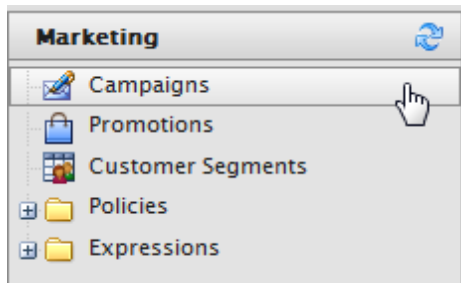
Campaigns

Campaigns provide a way to organize marketing activities. Campaigns must be associated with **Promotions** in order to provide customer discounts. Optionally, Campaigns can also be tied to **Customer Segments** for targeted marketing purposes. For example, you can create a seasonal campaign that will include different *Promotions* targeted for the spring season.

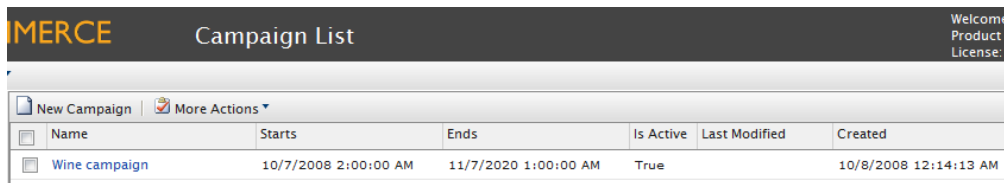
The various campaign options are described in more details in the following sections of this documentation.

Browsing Campaigns

To browse Campaigns, go to **Marketing > Campaigns** to open the **Campaign List**.



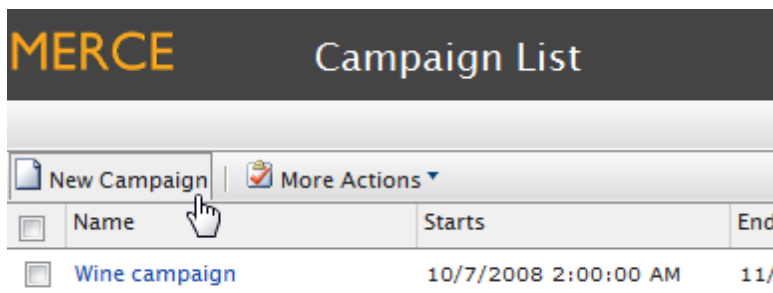
From the **Campaign List**, you can create a **New Campaign** or edit existing ones.



Creating a Marketing Campaign

Sales promotions are tied to specific Campaigns. A Campaign could be related to seasonal sales, such as Easter or Christmas. Campaigns are the first step to deploying targeted marketing efforts.

To create a new Campaign, click on **New Campaign** on the **Campaign List** page.



This opens up the **Campaign Edit** page.

1. Enter a **Campaign Name**, such as "Graduation Special."
2. Enter any **Comments** as notes about the Campaign.
3. Enter a date directly (or click on the **Calendar** icon to select a date) and time into the **Available From** field. This will indicate when the Campaign is expected to start.
4. Enter a date and time in the **Expires On** field.
5. Select the **Target Segments** from the list. Target segments are created under the *Customer Segments* section
6. Indicate whether or not the Campaign is **Active**, "Yes" or "No."
7. Indicate whether or not to **Archive** the Campaign, "Yes" or "No." **NOTE** This feature has not been implemented and switching its status from "No" to "Yes" will not change anything.
8. Once done, click on **OK**.

Campaign Edit

Overview

Campaign Name:
enter campaign name

Comments:

Available from:

Expires on:

Target Segments:

Active: ☒ Yes ☐ No

Archived: ☐ Yes ☒ No

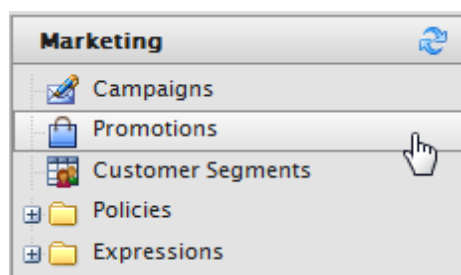
Promotions

Promotions provide a way to apply various discounts to the products, order totals or shipping. A promotion is a marketing tool used to increase sales of certain products or product lines. Various incentives such as lowered pricing and other discounts can be employed as part of a promotion.

Promotions are always tied to *Campaigns*. In addition, promotions can be classified into two types: 1) either you can create a promotion that is visible prior to checkout or 2) you can configure the promotion to be displayed during the checkout process. The most powerful aspect of the Marketing system is the *Expressions Engine* which allows variable conditions to be applied when creating a promotion. These conditions vary from the number of items, the percentage discount, shipping rates and many others.

Browsing Promotions

To view and browse Promotions, click on **Promotions** on the left navigation bar.



The **Promotion List** page opens, displaying a list of existing Promotions.

MERCE Promotion List				
New Promotion More Actions ▼				
<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Group	Priority	Starts
<input type="checkbox"/>	Exclusive Glasses 25%	entry	1	Today, 2:41 PM

You can click on the name of a Promotion to view its properties.

MERCE Promotion Edit	
Overview	
Promotion Type:	Catalog Entry: Build Your Own Discount ▼
Promotion Name:	Exclusive Glasses 25% <i>enter promotion name</i>
Display Name:	
English (United States)	Exclusive Glasses
German (Germany)	
Spanish (Spain)	
French (France)	
Promotion Properties:	
Campaign:	Graduation Special ▼
Promotion Group:	Catalog Entry
Combination with other promotions:	Combine with other promotions ▼ <i>select the degree to which multiple promotions can be combined</i>
Priority:	1 <i>promotions with higher priority will be evaluated first</i>
Coupon Code:	 <i>will require code if entered</i>
Status:	Active ▼ <i>status of the promotion</i>

Deleting a Promotion

On the **Promotion List** page, checkmark the box next to the name of the Promotion and then click on **More Actions > Delete Selected** on the menu bar.

MERCE Promotion List				
New Promotion More Actions ▼				
<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Group	Priority	Starts
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Exclusive Glasses	entry	1	Today, 2:41 PM

X Delete Selected
 Flip Status (active/inactive)

Creating an Entry Level Promotion

Out of the box, you can build these **Catalog Entry Promotion Types**:

- **Catalog Entry: Build Your Own Discount**
- **Catalog Entry: Buy Catalog entry X, get catalog entry Y at a discount**
- **Catalog Entry: Buy X Get \$ Off Discount**

The options above are available in the **Promotion Type** field when creating a new promotion. The following are examples of how to create each type of promotion.

Example: Build Your Own Discount - "40% Off Wine Decanter"

Once you have selected "Build Your Own Discount" from the **Promotion Type** drop-down menu, enter in a **Promotion Name**, such as "40 % Off Wine Decanter"

Under the **Display Name** section, enter in the display name for each language type.

MERCE Promotion Edit

Overview

Promotion Type: Catalog Entry: Build Your Own Discount ▼

Promotion Name: 40% Off Wine Decanter
enter promotion name

Display Name:

English (United States)	40% Off Wine Decanter
German (Germany)	
Spanish (Spain)	
French (France)	

Promotion Properties:

- Under the **Campaign** drop-down, select an existing Campaign created earlier
- **Promotion Group** is grayed out because the Promotion Type is specified
- From the **Combination with other promotions** drop-down, select the degree to which multiple promotions can be combined. There are three options: "Combine with other promotions", "Exclusive within select groups", and "Exclusive within all groups."
 - **Combine with other Promotions** - The selected promotion will be combined with all other promotion types that may be in use
 - **Exclusive within Selected Groups** - If the selected promotion is applied, no other promotions within that group will be applied (but other promotions in other groups may be applied)
 - **Exclusive within all Groups** - If the selected promotion is applied, no other promotions will be applied.
- Enter a numerical value into the **Priority** field (promotions with a higher priority will be evaluated first)
- Optionally, enter in a **Coupon Code** that customers can redeem from the front-end public site to get receive the discount. Otherwise, leave the field blank.
- Set the **Status** of the Promotion either as "Active", "Inactive," "Suspended," or "Deleted" from the drop-down menu. Select Active to enable the promotion.

Promotion Properties:

Campaign:	Graduation Special
Promotion Group:	Catalog Entry
Combination with other promotions:	Combine with other promotions <i>select the degree to which multiple promotions can be combined</i>
Priority:	1 <i>promotions with higher priority will be evaluated first</i>
Coupon Code:	Test <i>will require code if entered</i>
Status:	Active <i>status of the promotion</i>

Purchase Condition and Reward:

Here you can set your own **Purchase Condition** to receive the discount **Rewards**. To apply a 40% discount for a wine decanter, use the following settings in the screenshot.

Purchase Condition and Reward:

This type of promotion allows you to create your own custom promotion.

Use the condition below to restrict how the promotion will be applied.

Purchase Condition:

And

TargetLineItem.CatalogEntryId Equals (Text) F00146

Use the actions below to assign rewards.

Rewards:

And

get % off item reward 40.00%

Redemption Limits:

Under this section, you can specify the redemption limits of this promotion.

- Next to **Max. Total Redemption**, enter in the maximum number of times the promotion can be redeemed.
- Next to **Max. Redemptions Per Order**, enter in the maximum number of times the promotion can be redeemed per customer order.
- Next to **Max. Redemptions Per Customer**, enter in the number of times a promotion can be by a single customer.

Redemption Limits:

Max. Total Redemptions:	300	(Redeemed:)
	<i>number of times the promotion can be used by all customers, enter 0 for unlimited</i>	
Max. Redemptions Per Order:	1	
	<i>number of times the promotion can be used in a single order, enter 0 for unlimited</i>	
Max. Redemptions Per Customer:	1	
	<i>number of times the promotion can be used by a single customer, enter 0 for unlimited</i>	

Schedule:

Enter the date and time when the Promotion is **Available** and when it **Expires**.

Click **OK** to save the promotion. The promotion will appear in the **Promotion List**.

MERCÉ Promotion List						
Welcome, ad Product Vers License: ECF						
New Promotion More Actions ▾						
<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Group	Priority	Starts	Ends	Sta
<input type="checkbox"/>	40% Off Wine Decanter	entry	1	Today, 3:02 PM	3/23/2012 3:02:00 PM	ac
<input type="checkbox"/>	Exclusive Glasses 25%	entry	1	Today, 2:41 PM	3/23/2012 2:41:00 PM	ac

When the promotion is applied, the price on the front-end should change.

Buy catalog entry X, get catalog entry Y at a discount

The steps to create this discount are similar to creating a custom discount. The difference is the Purchase Condition and Reward.

1. Under the **Select catalog entry X** drop-down menu, select a specific catalog entry.
2. Under the **Select catalog entry Y** drop-down menu, select another specific catalog entry.
3. Enter a value for the **Quantity of "X" needed to qualify for the promotion**. For example, the customer must purchase 2 of Catalog Entry X as a prerequisite for the discount.
4. Enter a value for the **Quantity of "Y" needed to qualify for the promotion**. For example, the customer must purchase 3 of Catalog Entry Y as a prerequisite for the discount.
5. In the Amount field, enter in a number and select from the drop-down to indicate that the Promotion is **Percentage Based or Value Based**. For example, if you enter 40 and select Percentage Based, the Promotion will take off 40%. If Value based, it will be 40 off the total price.

Purchase Condition and Reward:

This type of promotion makes additional SKUs available at a percentage discount when an order includes some required amount of the specified SKU

Select catalog entry X:	<input type="text" value="Enoteca Wine Glass Large [35368]"/>
Select catalog entry Y:	<input type="text" value="Enoteca Decanter 1000ml [F00146]"/>
Quantity of 'X' needed to qualify for the promotion:	<input type="text" value="4"/>
Quantity of 'Y' needed to qualify for the promotion:	<input type="text" value="1"/>
Amount:	<input type="text" value="25"/> <input type="text" value="Percentage Based"/>

Buy X Get \$ Off Discount

This type of promotion gives a discount per item by purchasing the minimum quantity specified under these Purchase Conditions.

1. Enter a **Minimum quantity** that the customer needs to purchase in order to receive the discount.
2. Enter the **Amount** of the Promotional discount, whether Percentage Based or Value Based.
3. Select any number of **Variations** from the drop-down menu and click on "add variation." Repeat to add more **Variations** to this Promotion. Click on the red **X** button next to the Variation to delete it.

Purchase Condition and Reward:

This type of promotion gives \$ off discount per item for the minimum quantity.

Minimum quantity:

Amount: Percentage Based ▼

Variations: [Chateau Haut-Batailley \[81725M\] \(5\) more...](#)

Creating an Order Level Promotion

Order Level Promotions are discounts applied if the overall order satisfies the conditions specified by the promotion.

Out of the box, you can build these **Order Entry Promotion Types**:

- **Order: Buy X, get N quantity of Y at a discount**
- **Order: Sub Total Volume Discount** - if the order subtotal minimum is met, then the customer receives the discount.
- **Build Your Own Discount** - you can create a custom order level promotion based on a range of purchase conditions and rewards (similar to creating a custom catalog entry discount).

The options above are available in the **Promotion Type** field when creating a new promotion. The following are examples of how to create each type of promotion.

Buy X, get N quantity of Y at a discount

This type of promotion allows a customer to be eligible to buy a designated number of items at a reduced price.

1. Select an **Entry X variation** from the drop-down menu and click on "add variation."
2. **Select catalog entry Y** from the drop-down menu. A certain number of "Y" entries will be discounted based on the Purchase Conditions.
3. Enter a **Max quantity Y** for the maximum number of Y entries eligible for a discount.
4. Enter the **Amount** of the promotional discount, whether Percentage or Value based.

Purchase Condition and Reward:

This type of promotion is eligible to buy designated number of item at a reduced price.

Entry X variation: [Chateau Guiraud \[80758H\] \(2\) more...](#) ☐ Exclude

Select catalog entry Y: ▼

Max quantity Y:

Amount: Percentage Based ▼

Order Sub Total Volume Discount

Enter in the **Minimum order amount** into the field. For example, if the order amount was set to \$200, then the customer must have \$200 or more in his shopping cart to qualify for the discount.

Enter in the **Amount** of the discount. It can either be "Percentage Based" or "Value Based." If Percentage Based, then the customer gets a percentage off the price. If Value Based, the customer gets a fixed amount discounted off.

Purchase Condition and Reward:

This type of promotion discounts the order subtotal if minimum order amount is met.

Minimum order amount:

Amount: Percentage Based ▼

Example: Build Your Own Discount - "20% Off for a Shopping Cart Subtotal of \$100 or More"

Like a custom Catalog Entry discount (add link here), users can create their own custom Order Level discount based on a list of **Purchase Conditions** and **Rewards**. This means that there is a wide range of Order Level discount possibilities.

The follow Condition and Reward example shows how to create a Promotion that gives 20% off for a shopping cart subtotal of \$100 or more.

Purchase Condition and Reward:

This type of promotion allows you to create your own custom promotion.

Use the condition below to restrict how the promotion will be applied.

Purchase Condition:

And

ShoppingCart.SubTotal Equals 99.99

Use the actions below to assign rewards.

Rewards:

And

get % off whole order reward 20.00%

The discount should reflect on the shopping cart on front-end public site.

Creating a Shipping Level Promotion

Shipping Level Promotions are promotions that give discounts based on the overall shipment. The discount will appear on the order page just before you submit the order.

Out of the box, you can build these **Order Entry Promotion Types**:

- **Shipping: Build Your Own Discount** - you can create a custom shipping promotion based on a range of purchase conditions and rewards (similar to creating a custom catalog or order entry discount).

The option above is available in the **Promotion Type** field when creating a new promotion. The following are examples of how to create each type of promotion.

Example: Buy N quantity Get % Off Shipment Discount

This Promotion type applies shipping discount if the specified **Variations** total the **Minimum Quantity** set or more.

1. Enter a **Minimum Quantity**, for example "5".
2. Enter an **Amount** of the discount Reward, and select from the drop-down whether it is "Percentage Based" or "Value Based, for instance "20%".

Purchase Condition and Reward:

This type of promotion allows you to create your own custom promotion.

Use the condition below to restrict how the promotion will be applied.

Purchase Condition:



Use the actions below to assign rewards.

Rewards:

**Creating Custom Promotions**

You can create custom promotions instead of using the built-in ones. It is possible to create custom promotions on a **catalog**, **order**, or **shipping** level.

How to Use "Or" When Building Your Own Promotions

EPiServer Commerce has a powerful discounting engine and can be used to build all types of promotions without writing custom code. In most cases these discounts can be built using one of the built in "Build Your Own Discount" options.

Building the Discount

In this case we want to build a promotion that will give a \$10 discount on certain items in our catalog. We want products with "Bordeaux" OR "Sauternes" in the display name to receive \$10 off the item. In this case we are using a Promotion Type of **"Catalog Entry:Build Your Own Discount"**. Constructing the purchase condition can be a confusing when using the **Or** operator. The first item we must add to the condition is the **Or** operator since **And** is the default. The **Or** will have the effect we desire if added first which is **And (Or (DisplayName = Bordeaux, DisplayName = Sauternes))** which is translated by the rules engine to **And (DisplayName = Bordeaux Or DisplayName = Sauternes)**. If **the Or** is not added first the results will not be as desired as the DisplayName would have to contain Bordeaux And Sauternes.

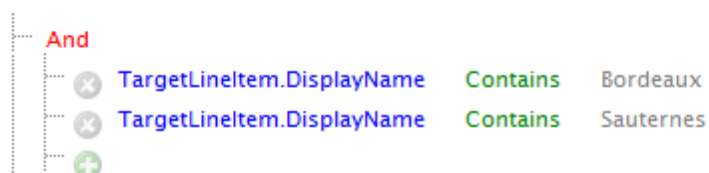
The Reward is set to \$10 Off.

Purchase Condition and Reward:

This type of promotion allows you to create your own custom promotion.

Use the condition below to restrict how the promotion will be applied.

Purchase Condition:



Use the actions below to assign rewards.

Rewards:



Seeing the Discount Applied

We have added three items to our shopping cart. As you can see two of the items (containing "Bordeaux" and "Sauternes") have been given the \$10 off discount and the name of the promotion is shown with the item. The third item in our cart did not meet the criteria we set so no discount was applied.

Your Basket - you have 5 item(s) in your basket

Image	Item Name	Quantity	Price	Total	Remove
	Barolo, Le Vigne, Az. Agr. Luciano Sandrone, Piedmont	5	£117.00	£585.00	

Do you have a promo code? [Apply](#)

£0.00 discount awarded in this basket.

0 loyalty points recieved with this purchase.

Subtotal	£585.00	(exc. Tax)
Order Discount	-£0.00	(exc. Tax)
Company Discount	-£0.00	(exc. Tax)
Total Order	£585.00	(exc. Tax)

[Back](#) [Update Basket](#) [Go to Checkout](#)

Customer Segments

Customer Segments determine the **target audience** for *Promotions* or *Campaigns*. Within a campaign, all promotions will be applied to whatever customer segments associated with the same campaign. Members of the customer segments can be pre-defined in static groups or you can use the *Expressions Engine* to create dynamic groups whenever promotions are run.

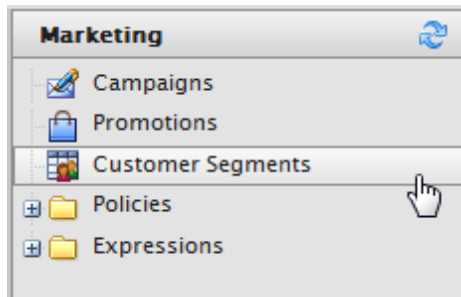
For example you can have a customer segment that targets all users from the Los Angeles area. You can create an expression that will include all the customers whose home city is Los Angeles. Thus, when a user registers on the site he or she immediately becomes part of the target customer segment.

Creating a Customer Segment

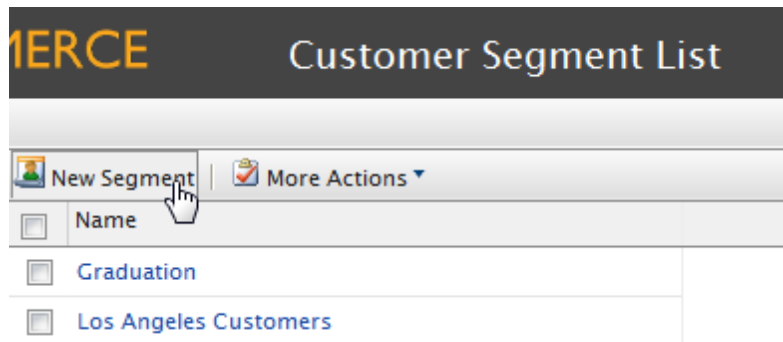
Customer Segments defines a specific groups of customers to be targeted by *Promotions* or *Campaigns*.

Creating a Customer Segment Assigned to Contacts

Go to **Marketing > Customer Segments**.



Click on **New Segment** on the menu bar to open the **Segment Edit** page.



1. Enter a **Segment Name**, such as "Los Angeles Customers."
2. Enter in a **Display Name**, which will appear to users when associating this customer segment when *Creating a Marketing Campaign*.
3. Enter a **Description**.
4. Select from a list of contacts from the **Members** drop-down to assign them to this **customer segment**. Select the name from the drop-down and then click **add member**. You can choose to **Exclude** member by clicking on the checkbox and then clicking **add member**.
5. Once done, click **OK** to save the customer segment.

Segment Edit

Overview

Segment Name:
enter segment name

Display Name:

Description:

Members:

☐ Exclude member
[add member](#)

☒ Mary Smith
☒ John Browne

Conditions:

The above conditions will be evaluated in runtime and if any are true, the customer will be part of this segment.

Creating a Customer Segment with Conditions

Instead of assigning members manually to a customer segment, you can use **Conditions** to apply rules. If a customer satisfies the conditions, then the customer is part of the customer segment.

To add conditions to the customer segment, click on **New Condition** on the **Segment Edit** page. This example will show how to specify "Company X" or "Winearts" emails as part of this customer segment.

Enter an **Expression Name**, such as "Company X or Email Addresses."

Setup the conditions based on the image below.

Condition Dialog

Expression Name:
enter expression name

Expression Xml:

- And
 - Email Equals (Text) Company X
 - Email Equals (Text) Winearts

Click **OK** to save the Conditions.

Conditions:

☒ Company X or Winearts Email

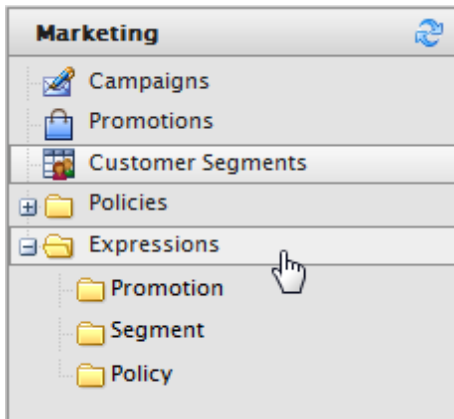
The above conditions will be evaluated in runtime and if any are true, the customer will be part of this segment.

Expressions

Expressions are customizable conditions which allow users to extend different aspects of the marketing system -- *Promotions*, *Customer Segments* and *Policies* all rely on expressions. The expressions engine constitutes the core technology behind the marketing system.

Expressions are created from the Marketing system under **Promotion**, **Segment**, or **Policy**.

To access and create expressions, click on **Expand Expressions** and **Promotions/Segment/Policy** to view the **Expression List** page.



MERCE		Expression List		Welcome, admin Product Version: 5.2 (build: 377) License: ECP G5 Deployment (Ep	
New Expression More Actions ▼				Get Help For This Pa	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Description	Modified	Created	
<input type="checkbox"/>	EntryCustomDiscount	{MarketingStrings:Promotion_Custom_Descrip	2/23/2012 2:42:50 PM	2/23/2012 2:42:50 PM	
<input type="checkbox"/>	EntryCustomDiscount	{MarketingStrings:Promotion_Custom_Descrip	2/23/2012 3:13:48 PM	2/23/2012 3:13:48 PM	
<input type="checkbox"/>	BuyXGetYDiscounted	{MarketingStrings:Promotion_Buy_X_Get_Y_AI		2/23/2012 3:30:24 PM	
<input type="checkbox"/>	BuyXGetNoYatReducedPrice	{MarketingStrings:Promotion_Buy_X_Get_N_AI		2/23/2012 3:40:42 PM	
<input type="checkbox"/>	BuyXGetOffDiscount	{MarketingStrings:Promotion_Buy_X_Get_Doll		2/23/2012 3:47:33 PM	
<input type="checkbox"/>	EntryCustomDiscount	{MarketingStrings:Promotion_Custom_Descrip	Today, 10:10 AM	Today, 10:07 AM	



In order to create an Expression, knowledge of XML is required. For more information on expressions, refer to the examples in the sample site.

To create a new Expression, click on **New Expression**. The **Expression Edit** page appears.

1. Enter an **Expression Name**, such as "EntryCustomDiscount."
2. Enter a **Description** of the Expression.
3. Enter the **Expression XML**.
4. Under **Category**, select from the drop-down whether this Expression is for a "Promotion," "Segment," or "Policy." Depending on your selection, the expression will appear under those respective folders.

MERCE Expression Edit

Overview

Expression Name:

enter expression name

Description:

enter expression description

Expression Xml:

enter expression xml

Category:

on category

OK Cancel

5. Click **OK** to save changes.

Policies

Policies are rules that are always executed when *Promotions* are applied. Promotion policies determine whether a conflict situation will arise when a particular promotion is applied in addition to any previously applied promotions. If no conflict is detected, this promotion is added to the list of applicable promotions; otherwise it is eliminated and will not be applied to the order.

Policies are **business rules on how to eliminate similar promotions for the same order or same product**. Policies are pre-configured for each store. Policies can be optionally associated with one or more promotion groups.

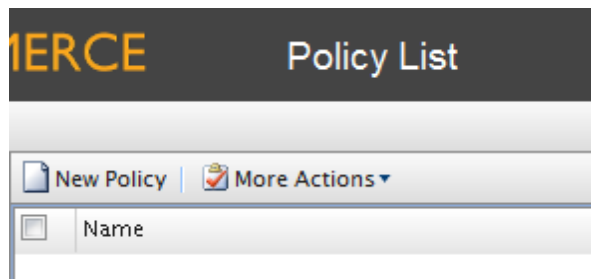
- **Local Policy** - If a policy is associated with a promotion group, it is considered a local policy, and applies only to those promotions in the group to which this policy is associated. If a policy is not associated with a promotion group, it is considered a global policy which applies to all promotions.

This allows a marketing manager to declare rules just once for the whole site. For example, you can create a policy such as this: "Do not allow negative orders".



Creating policies is meant for advanced users.

To create a new Policy, go to **Marketing > Policies** to open the **Policy List**.



Click on **New Policy** to open the **Policy Edit** page.



Policy Status and **Policy Is Local** has not been fully implemented. Therefore, all policies will be global (meaning it cannot be limited to a Promotion Group) until this feature becomes available in a future release.

Enter in a **Policy Name**.

Enter the **Status** of the policy.

Select "Yes" or "No" to set the Policy **Is Local**.

- **Policy Is Local is No** - this is the default behavior. This means that this Policy is not part of a Promotion Group and is available for all Promotions.
- **Policy Is Local is Yes** - this means this Policy is part of a Promotion Group and is applicable only for that Promotion Group

Select an existing **Policy Expression** from the drop-down menu.

Select from the **Groups** list to place the Policy under.

Click **OK** when done.

Asset Management

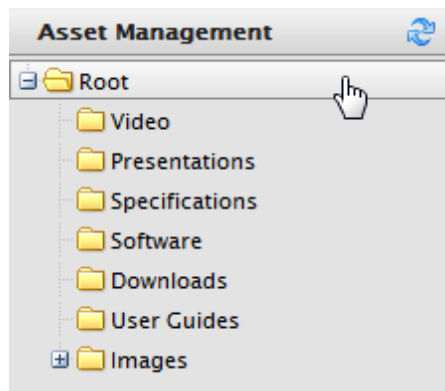
The **Asset Management** system allows for assets including images, MP3s, PDFs, software packages and other downloadable files to be centrally stored and displayed on the website.

Refer also to the *File Management* section in this documentation to find out more about file management in EPiServer Commerce.

Browsing, Editing, and Deleting Folders and Assets

The **Asset List** page categorizes and manages downloadable Asset files. The default list of Asset folders are: **Video**, **Presentations**, **Specifications**, **Software**, **Downloads**, **User Guides**, and **Images**. These folder names can be changed.

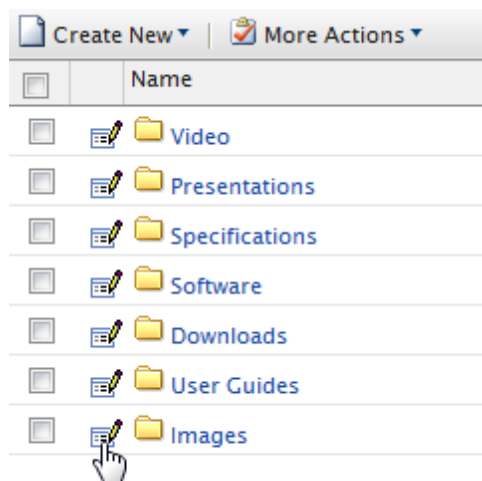
To access the Asset List, click on **Asset Management > Root** or any other folder below Root.



MERCE Asset List			
<div> <div>Create New ▾</div> <div>More Actions ▾</div> </div>			
<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Size	Created
<input type="checkbox"/>	Video		2/22/2012 4:03:05 AM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Presentations		2/22/2012 4:03:05 AM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Specifications		2/22/2012 4:03:05 AM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Software		2/22/2012 4:03:05 AM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Downloads		2/22/2012 4:03:05 AM
<input type="checkbox"/>	User Guides		2/22/2012 4:03:05 AM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Images		2/22/2012 4:03:05 AM

The **Asset List** shows folders and assets. The **Asset List** shows the total **Size** of the Assets and the **Created** date.

Folder and Asset names can be edited by clicking on the **Edit** icon next to the **Name**.



This brings you to the **Folder Item** page, allowing you to edit the **Name**.

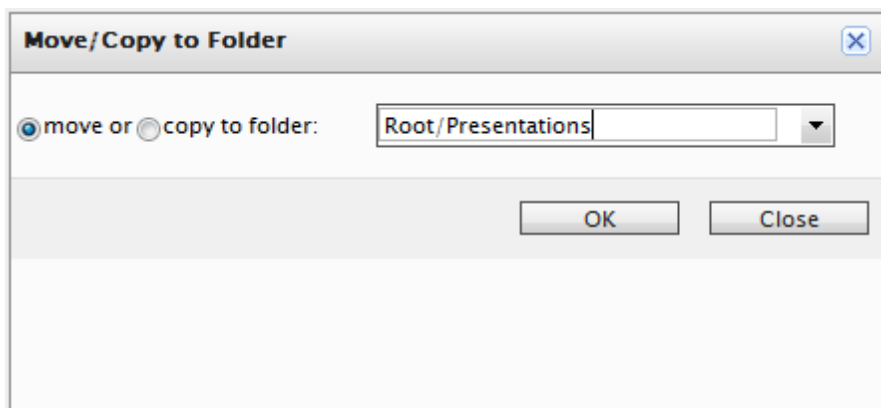
If you are editing an Asset such as an image, the **File Item** page appears, allowing you to edit the name as well.

Copying/Moving and Deleting Folders and Assets

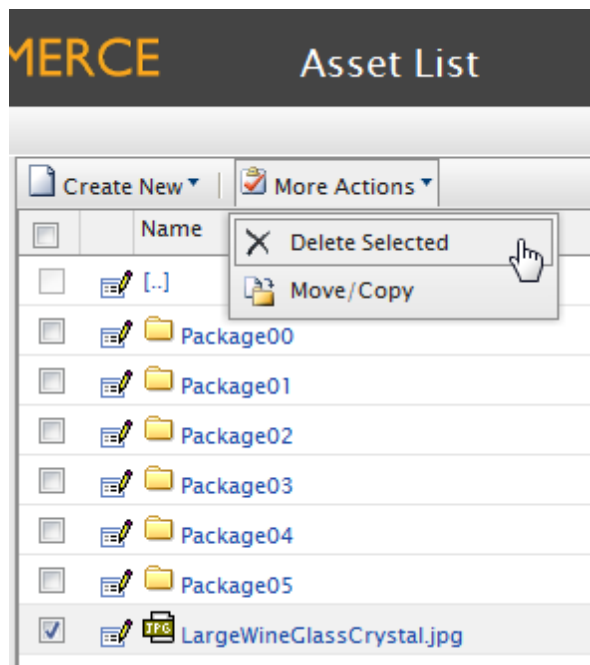
Users can also copy/move and delete Folders and Assets.

To copy or move an Asset or Folder to another location, place a check mark in the box next to the Folder or Asset name and then click on **More Actions > Move/Copy**.

The **Move/Copy to Folder** pop-up appears. You can select to "move" or "copy to folder." From the drop-down menu, select the destination. Click on **OK** to confirm.



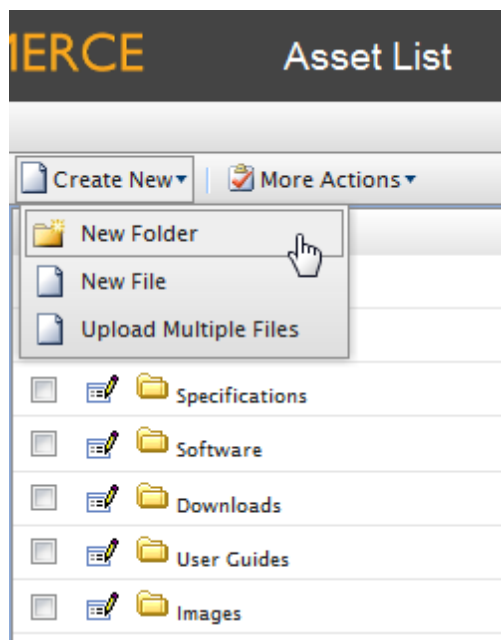
To delete a Folder or Asset, place a check mark in the box and click on **More Actions > Delete Selected**.



Creating Folders and Uploading Assets

Creating Folders

To create a new folder, go to the **Asset List** by clicking **Asset Management > Root** (or any folder underneath Root). Then click on **Create New > New Folder**.

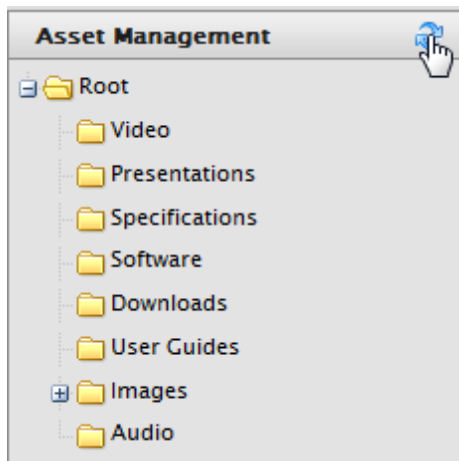


Enter in a name for the folder and click **Create**.

The folder will be created in whichever folder you are currently in. In this example, the folder "Audio" was created underneath **Root**.

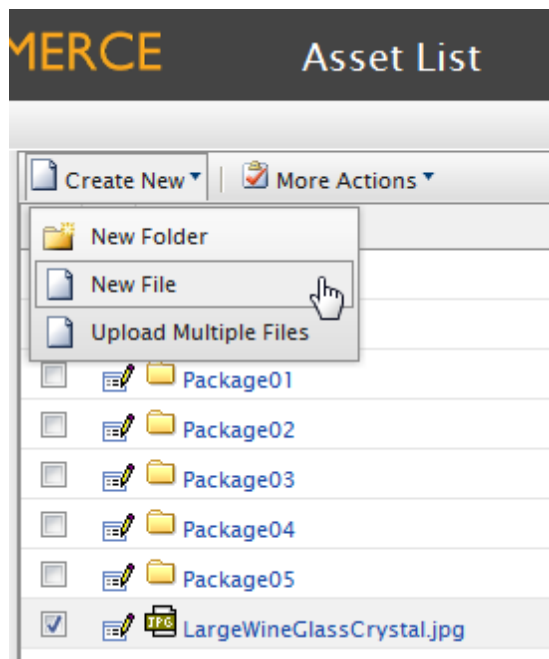
Create New ▾ More Actions ▾			
<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Size	Created
<input type="checkbox"/>	Video		5/11/2010 3:34:57 PM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Presentations		5/11/2010 3:34:57 PM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Specifications		5/11/2010 3:34:57 PM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Software		5/11/2010 3:34:57 PM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Downloads		5/11/2010 3:34:57 PM
<input type="checkbox"/>	User Guides		5/11/2010 3:34:57 PM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Images		5/11/2010 3:34:57 PM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Audio		Today, 3:15 PM

To see the folder in the left navigation frame, click on the **Refresh** icon and the new folder "Audio" will appear. You can create additional sub-folders underneath Audio (or any other existing folder).



Uploading Individual Files

To upload a single File, navigate to the Folder you want to upload the File to and then click on **Create New > New File**.



Click on **Browse** or enter in the file path into the field. Once done, click on **Upload**.

File Item

Welcome, admin
Product Version: 5.2 (build: 377)
License: ECF G5 Deployment (EpiServer)

[Get Help For This Page](#)

File Item

Click **Browse** and select file, or type file path:

C:\Transfer\SmallWineGlass.jpg

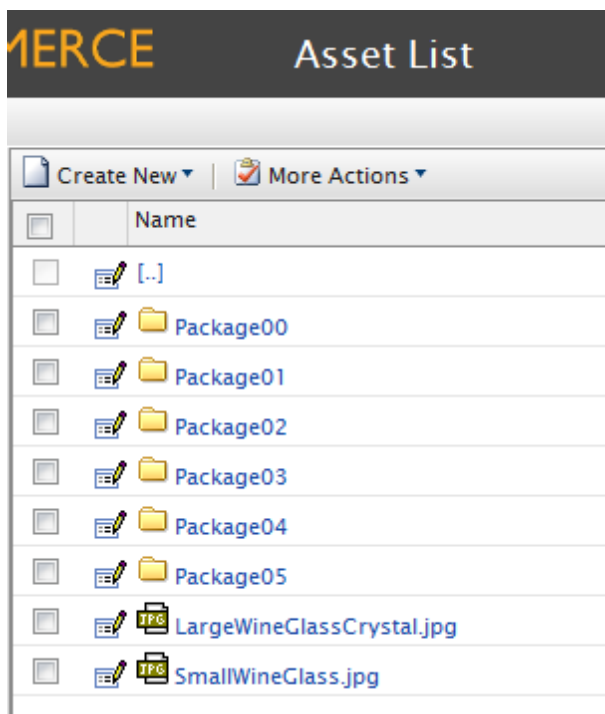
A progress bar appears below. Once the upload is complete, the **Folder Element** form appears, allowing you to edit the name of the file, if you wish. Once done, click **OK**.

File Item

ImageFolderElement

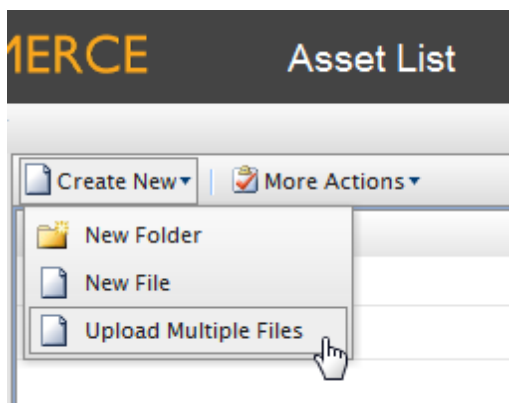
Name:

The File is now visible on the **Asset List** of the destination folder.

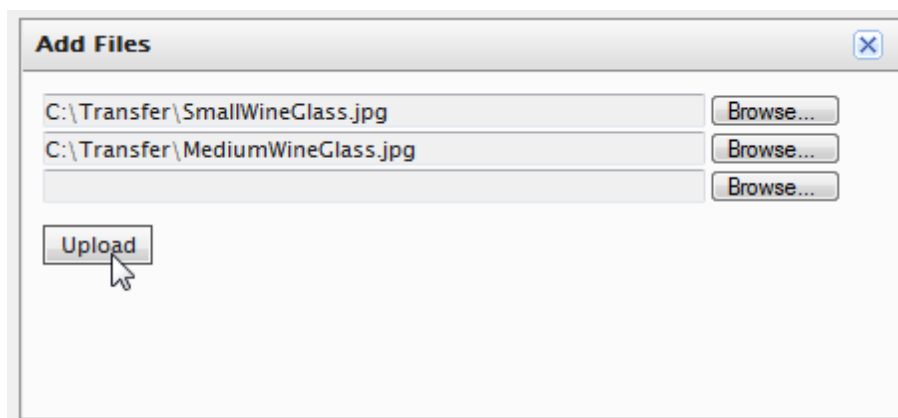


Uploading Multiple Files at One Time

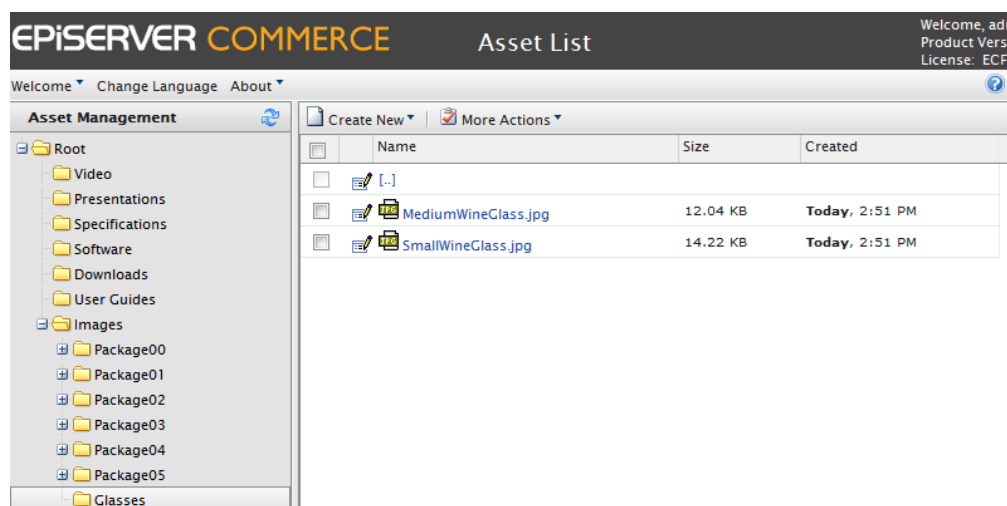
To upload multiple files to a folder, click on **Create New > Upload Multiple Files**.



The **Add Files** pop-up window appears. Click on **Browse** to add files. An additional field will appear below, allowing you to add more. You can upload up to five files at one time. One done adding files, click **Upload**.



A progress bar window will pop-up, showing you the progress of the uploads. Once complete, the files will appear in the **Asset List**.



Reporting

Through the **Reporting** system, various reports are included out-of-the-box to help management and other personnel to make informed decisions. The default reports include:

- **Sales Report** - this report provides an overview of a site's sales performance over a period of time
- **Shipping Report** - this report provides the shipping method, number of orders and total shipping cost over a period of time
- **Best Sellers Report** this report is used to determine which products sold the most in terms of quantity and total revenue over a period of time
- **Low Stock Report** - this report is used to determine which products are running low in inventory. If a product's inventory is less than its reorder minimum quantity, it will be included in this report.

The display of these reports can be generated by Start and End date/time and filtered by Day/Month/Year. In addition, they can be exported to Excel or PDF format, or printed.

SQL Reporting Services

Since the Commerce Manager utilizes SQL databases, custom reports can be created using **Microsoft SQL Server Reporting Services**. Reporting Services provides a complete, server-based platform designed to support a wide variety of reporting needs enabling organizations to deliver relevant information where needed across the entire enterprise. Read through the resources below to get familiarized with Reporting Services and how you can create custom SQL reports to display data from your EPiServer Commerce site.

- *Reporting Services Features*
- *Using SQL 2008 Reporting Services and Report Builder 2.0 to Create Custom SQL Reports*
- *Download Report Builder 2.0*
- *Reporting Services and ReportViewer Controls in Visual Studio*
- *Reporting Services Components and Tools*
- *Reporting Services Configuration How-To Topics*

Generating and Customizing Reports

By default, users can generate **Sales**, **Shipping**, **Best Sellers**, and **Low Stock Reports** about the site. Reports can be customized/filtered and exported to suit the needs of the user.

To generate a report, click on **Reporting > Sales > Sales Report/Shipping Report** or **Reporting > Products > Best Sellers Report/Low Stock Report**.

Period	Num. Of Orders	Items Ordered	Sub Total	Tax	Shipping	Discounts	Total	Invoiced
05/08/2010	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
05/09/2010	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
05/10/2010	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
05/11/2010	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
05/12/2010	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
05/13/2010	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
05/14/2010	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Customizing/Filtering and Exporting Reports

Users can select the Start Date and End Date ranges and time as well as group the Report data by "Day," "Month" or "Year." Once done, click on **Apply Filter**.

An example **Sales Report** with a date range from 5/1/2010 at 6am to 6/7/2010 at 12pm **Grouped By Month** is in the image below.

Period	Num. Of Orders	Items Ordered	Sub Total	Tax	Shipping	Discounts	Total	Invoiced
May, 2010	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
June, 2010	5	10	41,318.61	0.00	52.00	0.00	41,370.61	41,370.61
	5	10	41,318.61	0.00	52.00	0.00	41,370.61	41,370.61

Users can also change the zoom size of the report by clicking on the drop-down menu with "100%." Also, paging controls are available next to the zoom drop-down menu. Users can also reload the report by clicking on the **Refresh** icon.

To **Export** a report to a file format for sharing with others, click on the drop-down that says "Select a format." Select a format from the drop-down menu, such as Excel or PDF. Click on **Export** and **Open** or **Save** the file once the prompt appears.

System Administration

In the **System Administration** part you will configure and administer many of the settings used in EPiServer Commerce. This guide includes various configuration tasks such as setting up shipping and payment gateways, your default language, currency, units, tax configuration, licensing, and search settings.

Most often, these settings are configured from the **Administration** area of Commerce Manager. This section provides a brief overview of the various configuration options. Refer to the EpiServer Commerce Developer Guide for more detailed technical information about configuration.

System Settings

System Settings includes functionality for setting up payment methods using built-in payment gateways as well as default language, currency, units and meta data fields and classes.

Setting up Meta Fields and Classes

Using **meta fields and meta classes**, it is possible to extend the meta data of **catalog items** and **order forms**. Meta fields are used for adding specific data about an item. For instance, if you create a meta class called "Wine" you will want to add meta fields that are specific details related to wines, for instance color, taste, vintage and maturity.

Adding Meta Fields to a Meta Class

1. Go to **Administration > Catalog System > Meta Fields**.
2. Click on **New Meta Field** to create a new meta field.

The screenshot shows the EpiServer Commerce Manager Administration interface. The top navigation bar includes 'Start', 'CMS', 'Commerce' (selected), and 'Mail'. The user is logged in as 'Admin'. The main header displays 'EPISEVER COMMERCE' and 'Meta Fields'. A sidebar on the left shows the 'Administration' tree with 'Meta Fields' selected. The main content area displays a table of existing meta fields with columns: ID, Name, Type, Multi-Language, Compare, Search, History, and Friendly Name. A '+ New Meta Field' button is visible at the top left of the table.

ID	Name	Type	Multi-Language	Compare	Search	History	Friendly Name
167	DisplayName	ShortString	True	True	True	False	Display Name
168	PrimaryImage	ImageFile	False	False	False	False	Primary Image
169	Description	LongHtmlString	True	False	True	False	Description
170	Region	ShortString	True	True	True	True	Region
171	ExtendedDescription	LongHtmlString	True	False	True	False	Extended Description
172	Type	ShortString	True	True	True	True	Type
173	Margin	Decimal	False	True	False	True	Margin Percentage
174	RecommendBoost	Integer	False	False	False	True	Recommendation Boost
175	Color	ShortString	True	True	True	True	Color
176	Style	ShortString	True	True	True	True	Style
177	Closure	ShortString	True	True	True	True	Closure
178	Varieties	ShortString	True	True	True	True	Grape mix
179	ABV	Decimal	False	True	True	True	Alcohol
180	Taste	ShortString	False	True	True	True	Taste
181	Vegetarians	Boolean	False	True	False	True	Vegetarians
182	Vegans	Boolean	False	True	False	True	Vegans
183	Vintage	ShortString	True	True	True	True	Vintage
184	Size	Float	False	True	True	True	Size
185	Maturity	ShortString	True	True	True	True	Maturity

Page Size: 20 (19 items) | Page 1

3. The **Meta Field Edit** page appears. There is a wide variety of parameters you can set for the meta field depending on the type you select.

ERCE

Meta Field Edit

Name :

Maturity

Friendly Name :

Maturity

Description :

Maturity

Type :

Short String

☒ Supports Multiple Languages

☒ Use in comparing

☒ Allow Null Values

☒ Save History

☐ Use Encryption

Search Properties:

☒ Allow Search

☒ Store the value

Indexing Option:

Tokenized

OK

Cancel

Field	Description
Name	Enter a system name without spaces or special characters (e.g. "NumberMegapixels," without the quotes).
Friendly Name	Enter a user-friendly name seen by end-users on the back and front-end (e.g. "Number of Megapixels," without the quotes).
Description	Enter any additional information about the meta field.
Type	<div>The drop-down menu shows the field types you can use for the meta field. The types available are:</div> <div><div>- datetime</div><div>- decimal</div><div>- float</div><div>- money</div><div>- Integer</div><div>- Boolean</div><div>- Date</div><div>- Email</div><div>- URL</div><div>- Short String</div><div>- Long String</div><div>- Long Html String</div><div>- String Dictionary</div><div>- File</div><div>- Image File</div><div>- Dictionary</div></div>

Search Properties	<p>Depending on the data field type selected, you may have the option to set the search properties of the data field. The options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Allow search (Determines whether the field is searchable after a search query) . - Store the value (Specifies whether the actual value of the field needs to be stored in the search index or it can be discarded after it is indexed) . - Indexing option (tokenized or non-tokenized) .
--------------------------	--

Adding Meta Field to a Catalog Meta Class

1. Go to **Administration > Catalog System > Meta Classes** or **Administration > Order System > Meta Classes**.
2. The meta field you created will appear in the list of meta fields. Select a meta class, checkmark the meta field you want to add to the meta class, and then click **OK**.

Business Foundation

Business Foundation is where you define and customize many of the settings used in EPiServer Commerce. The meta data engine and data model makes it possible to create meta objects, add customized fields and define relations between objects. The form is fully customizable so you can control the layout and specify which fields you want to display.

Customizing Existing Business Objects

Out of the box, Commerce Manager includes Business Objects that can be edited and customized. Customizing existing business objects is a good starting point for end users to model business objects for their needs. However, pre-existing business objects such as "Address" and "Organization" cannot be deleted, only edited.



The current implementation of Business Foundation only supports the Customer and Asset Management subsystems. Support for other subsystems such as Order and Catalog are planned for future releases.

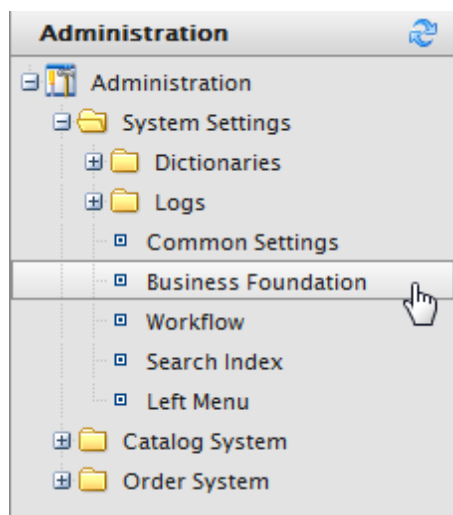
Fields in Business Foundation

This section covers how to add or edit different types of data fields within an existing business object.

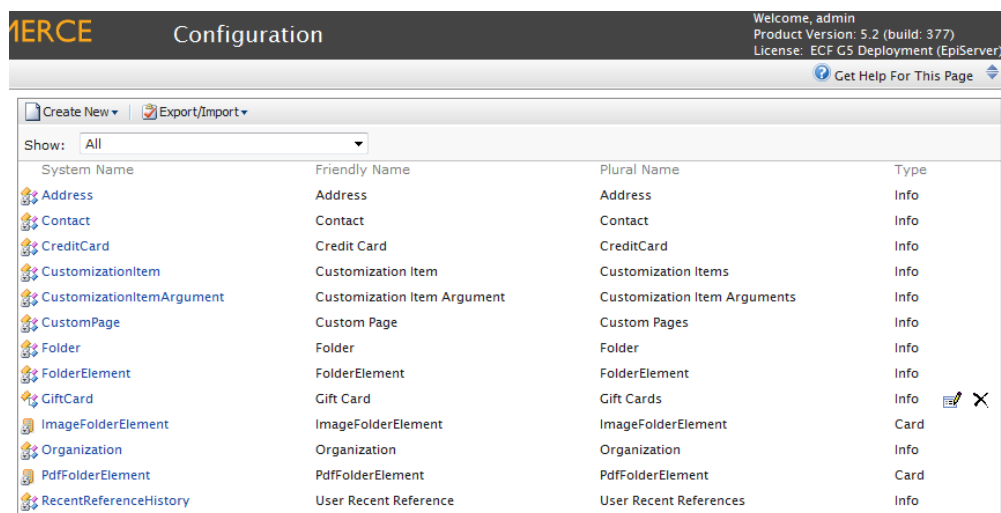
Adding Fields to Business Objects

Existing **Business Foundation Objects** can be customized to have additional data entry fields. For example, you can add fields to the New Credit Card form built-in to Commerce Manager.

To add new fields to a Business Object, click on **Administration**, expand **System Settings**, and click on **Business Foundation** to access the list of Business Foundation Objects.



In this example, the **CreditCard Business Object** is used.



Click on the business object in the list to open it for editing. To add a new field to the **CreditCard Business Object** (or any other Business Object), click on **New Field**.

Business Object Customization			New Field	Edit	Publish	Back To List
System Name: CreditCard		Friendly Name: Credit Card				
Type: Business Object		Plural Name: CreditCard				
Fields	1:N Relations	N:1 Relations	N:N Relations	Forms	System Views	
System Name	Friendly Name		Type			
Address	Address		Text (ReferencedField)			
AddressId	Address		Reference			
CardType	Type		CreditCardType			
Contact	Contact		Text (ReferencedField)			
ContactId	Contact		Reference			
Created	Created		DateTime			
CreatorId	Creator		Guid			
CreditCardId	Id		Guid			
CreditCardNumber	Card Number		Text			
ExpirationMonth	Expiration Month		Integer			
ExpirationYear	Expiration Year		Integer			
LastFourDigits	Last Four Digits		Text			
Modified	Modified		DateTime			
ModifierId	Modifier		Guid			
Organization	Organization		Text (ReferencedField)			
OrganizationId	Organization		Reference			
SecurityCode	Security Code		Text			

The **New Field** form allows you to specify the type of data field you want created for the Business Object.

New Field		Back
Business Object:	Credit Card	
Field Name:	CustomerServicePhoneNumber	
Friendly Name:	CustomerServicePhoneNumber	
Description:		
Add Field To:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Allow Nulls <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Edit Form <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> View Form <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Short Info Form	
Field Type:	String	
Format:	Text	
Maximum Length:	100	
	<input type="checkbox"/> Unique value	
	<input type="button" value="Save"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

1. Enter a **Field Name**, which is the system ID or name of the field. The Field Name that is entered autopopulates the Friendly Name field.
2. Since the **Friendly Name** is autopopulated based on the Field Name, you can either keep the name the same or change it. The Friendly Name is what appears on a form (such as the Credit Card form)
3. You can optionally enter in a **Description** that appears below the data entry field to explain the field to the user.
4. Checkmark on or off to **Allow Nulls** for this field
5. You can choose to **Add Field To** an existing Form. Checkmark all that apply.
6. Enter a **Field Type**. For further explanation of each Field Type, refer to the Reference Section on the bottom of this page. In this example, a **String** field type is used.
 - a. The **Format** drop down menu and options depend on your Field Type selection. In this exam-

ple, **Text** is selected as the field format, with a **Maximum Length** of 100. **Unique** value is left unchecked.

- Once done, click **Save**. The new field appears on the list of fields.

CreditCardId	Id	Guid
CreditCardNumber	Card Number	Text
CustomerServicePhoneNumber	Customer Service Phone Number	Text
ExpirationMonth	Expiration Month	Integer

To verify if the new field appears, check the form associated with that new field. Since this example customized the **New Credit Card** form, you will see that the new field appears.

The screenshot shows the 'New Credit Card' form in the EPiServer Commerce interface. The form is titled 'New Credit Card' and has a tabbed interface with 'Overview' selected. The 'Overview' tab contains the following fields:

- Type: Visa (dropdown menu)
- Last Four Digits: [Empty text box]
- Card Number: [Empty text box]
- Security Code: [Empty text box]
- Customer Service Phone Number: [Empty text box]
- Expiration Month: [No value] (dropdown menu)
- Expiration Year: [No value] (dropdown menu)

The background shows a 'View' window with a sidebar menu containing the following items:

- Information
- Addresses
- Credit Cards (highlighted)
- Security
- Roles
- Orders
- Order History
- Shopping Lists
- Wish Lists
- Shopping Carts

The 'Full Name' field is populated with 'Mary Smith'. The 'Edit' and 'Cancel' buttons are visible at the bottom of the form.

Editing Fields of Business Objects

Fields created by the user can be edited. To edit a field, click on the **Edit** icon.



Fields that are locked cannot be edited.

CreditCardNumber	Card Number	Text
CustomerServicePhoneNumber	Customer Service Phone Number	Text
ExpirationMonth	Expiration Month	Integer
ExpirationYear	Expiration Year	Integer



The only attributes that can be changed are Friendly Names and Descriptions. Once those changes are made, click **Save**.

Business Object:

Credit Card

Field Name:

CustomerServicePhoneNumber

Friendly Name:

Customer Service Phone Number

Description:

Phone # found on back of card

☒ Allow Nulls

Field Type:

String

Format:

Text

Maximum Length:

100

☐ Unique value

Save

Cancel

Relations in Business Foundation

In order to track and record relevant data, business objects must be related to other objects, whether they are "1 to many," "many to 1," "many to many." Currently, business objects only affect the customer and asset management systems.

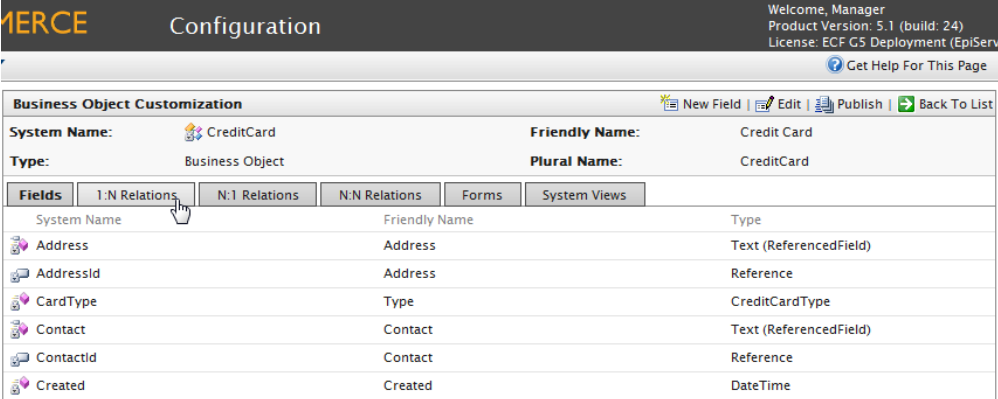
- **1 to Many Relationship** - 1 object can be associated or related with multiple object-related data. For example, one organization can be associated with multiple contracts.
- **Many to 1 Relationship** - Multiple object-related data can be associated or related with a single object. For example, multiple contacts can be related to a single organization.
- **Many to Many Relationship** - Multiple object-related data can be associated or related with multiple objects. For example, different SKUs can be associated with one or more *Warehouses for tracking and storage*.

Adding a 1 to Many Relation

Business Foundation objects allows you to specify **1 to Many Relationships**. For example, if you have one organization, you can relate many types of data to that organization, such as multiple contacts, addresses, or organizational units or divisions within an organization. Within a 1:N relationship, the business object you selected will be "1."

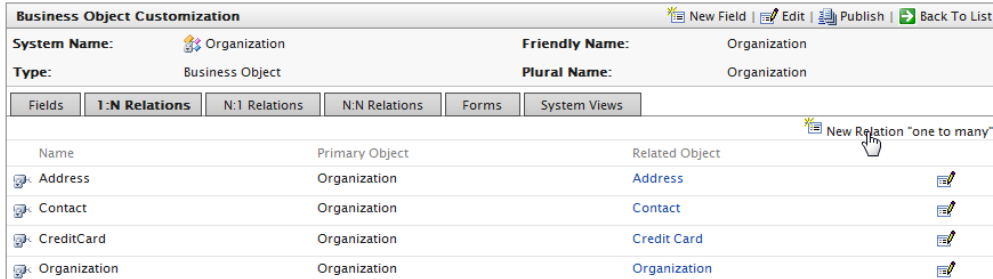
In the example below, 1 = Organization and N = related objects such as Address, Contact, CreditCard, etc.

To add a 1 to many relationship to a business object, you will need to create a new business object or use an existing one. On the Business Object Customization page, click on **1:N Relations**.



System Name	Friendly Name	Type
Address	Address	Text (ReferencedField)
AddressId	Address	Reference
CardType	Type	CreditCardType
Contact	Contact	Text (ReferencedField)
ContactId	Contact	Reference
Created	Created	DateTime

Click on **New Relation "one to many"** to create a new relation.



Name	Primary Object	Related Object
Address	Organization	Address
Contact	Organization	Contact
CreditCard	Organization	Credit Card
Organization	Organization	Organization

Under **General Info**, the Primary Object Organization is automatically set to Organization.

1. Select a **Related Object** to relate an the Organization object in the dropdown.
2. The Object section below General Info will have a different title based on Related Object you selected. For example, if you selected "Address," the title would be "Object 'Address'".
3. Enter in a **Field Name** and **Friendly Name**. They are autopopulated already using the system name of the business object.
Both names must be unique and not be the same as an existing field. The **Field Name** cannot contain spaces or special characters, only letters, numbers, and underscores.
4. Checkmark the box **Allow Nulls** if you do not want this to be a required field the user fill in while editing a form. Otherwise, uncheck the box to make it a required field.
5. Under **Add Field To**, checkmark the Forms you want the field to render in, such as the Edit Form (to enter and submit information) or View Form (read information only).

6. Under the Object "Name of Primary Object" section, select a Display region in the dropdown box. Additional options such as **Display Text** and **Display Order** will appear based on your dropdown menu selection.
7. Once all the relevant information is entered, click on **Save**.

Relation 1:N

General Info

Primary Object: Organization
Related Object: Address

Object "Address"

Field Name: Organization
Friendly Name: Organization
☒ Allow Nulls
Add Field To:
☒ Edit Form
☒ View Form
☒ Short Info Form

Object "Organization"

Display Region: [Not Set]



The Related Object will have the Primary Object appear under the opposite relationship (N:1) on its configuration form. For instance, if organization is the Primary Object and the Related Object is Address, the relationship is automatically generated under the **N:1** tab in **Address**.

Configuration

Welcome, admin
Product Version: 5.2 (build: 243)
License: ECF GS Deployment (EpiServer)

Get Help For This Page

Business Object Customization

System Name: Address
Type: Business Object
Friendly Name: Address
Plural Name: Address

Fields | **1:N Relations** | N:1 Relations | N:N Relations | Forms | System Views

Name	Primary Object	Related Object
Contact	Address	Contact
Contact	Address	Contact
CreditCard	Address	Credit Card

Adding a Many to 1 Relation

You can relate business objects via a **Many to 1 Relationship**. For example, you can relate multiple contacts to a single organization or unit.

In the example below, N = Organization and 1 = related objects such as ParentId, PrimaryContactId etc.

To create **Many to 1 relationships**, click on a business object and click on the **N:1 Relations** tab.

Configuration Welcome, Manager
Product Version: 5.1 (build: 24)
License: ECF CS Deployment (EPiServer)

Business Object Customization New Field | Edit | Publish | Back To List

System Name: Organization **Friendly Name:** Organization
Type: Business Object **Plural Name:** Organization

Fields	1:N Relations	N:1 Relations	N:N Relations	Forms	System Views
System Name		Friendly Name		Type	
BusinessCategory		Business Category		BusinessCategory	
Created		Created		DateTime	
CreatorId		Creator		Guid	

Click on **New Relation "Many to one"** to create a new relationship.

Business Object Customization New Field | Edit | Publish | Back To List

System Name: Organization **Friendly Name:** Organization
Type: Business Object **Plural Name:** Organization

Fields	1:N Relations	N:1 Relations	N:N Relations	Forms	System Views
System Name		Name		Primary Object	Related Object
ParentId		Parent		Organization	Organization
PrimaryContactId		Primary Contact		Contact	Organization

New Relation "many to one"

The Relation N:1 form is very similar to the Relation 1:N form, except you can select the Primary Object from the dropdown, whereas the Related Object defaults to the name of the Business Object.

Under **General Info**, the Primary Object Organization is automatically set to Organization.

1. Select a **Primary Object** to relate an the Organization object in the dropdown. The Object section below General Info will have a different title based on the Related Object name.
2. Enter in a Field Name and Friendly Name. They are autopopulated already using the system name of the business object.
Both names must be unique and not be the same as an existing field. The **Field Name** cannot contain spaces or special characters, only letters, numbers, and underscores.
3. Checkmark the box **Allow Nulls** if you do not want this to be a required field the user fill in while editing a form. Otherwise, uncheck the box to make it a required field.
4. Under **Add Field To**, checkmark the Forms you want the field to render in, such as the Edit Form (to enter and submit information) or View Form (read information only).
5. Under the Object "Name of Primary Object" section, select a Display region in the dropdown box. Additional options such as **Display Text** and **Display Order** will appear based on your dropdown menu selection.
6. Once all the relevant information is entered, click on **Save**.

Relation N:1	
General Info	
Primary Object:	Address
Related Object:	Organization
Object "Organization"	
Field Name:	Address
Friendly Name:	Address
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Allow Nulls
Add Field To:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Edit Form <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> View Form <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Short Info Form <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> System View (All organizations)
Object "Address"	
Display Region:	[Not Set]
<input checked="" type="button" value="Save"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	



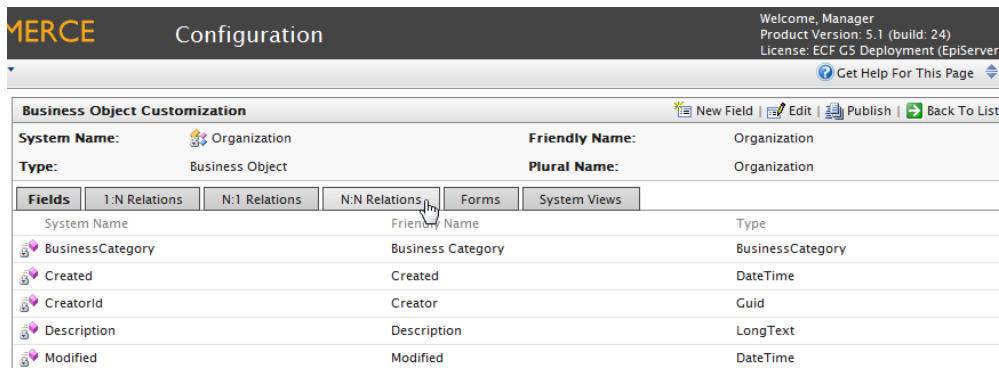
Like an 1:N relationship, if you create a N:1 relationship with a Primary and Related Object, a 1:N relationship is automatically generated for the Primary Object under the **1:N** tab.

Adding a Many to Many Relation

You can also create **Many to Many Relationships** with business objects. For example, many to many relationships help to track different SKUs and their inventory levels with different warehouse locations. Another example is multiple contacts a part of multiple organizations. A Many to Many relationship between two objects is also referred to as a **Bridge**.

In the example both Organization and Organization_Contact = N.

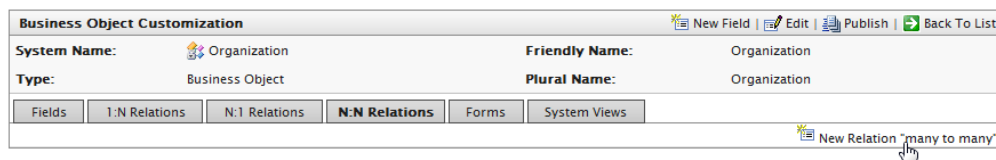
To create a **Many to Many relationship**, click on a business object and then click on the **N:N Relations** tab.



The screenshot shows the 'Business Object Customization' page for the 'Organization' business object. The 'N:N Relations' tab is active, displaying a table of existing relations. The table has three columns: 'System Name', 'Friendly Name', and 'Type'.

System Name	Friendly Name	Type
BusinessCategory	Business Category	BusinessCategory
Created	Created	DateTime
CreatorId	Creator	Guid
Description	Description	LongText
Modified	Modified	DateTime

Click on **New Relation "many to many"** to create a new N:N relationship.



The screenshot shows the 'Business Object Customization' page for the 'Organization' business object. The 'N:N Relations' tab is active, and the 'New Relation "many to many"' button is highlighted at the bottom right of the interface.

The Relation N:N is much different compared to the Relation 1:N/N:1 forms.

1. The **Current Object** defaults to the name of the Business Object you are editing
2. Select a **Related Object** from the dropdown menu
3. The **Relation Name** is autopopulated by (Current Object Name_Related Object Name). Change this name if you wish, but you cannot have spaces or special characters, only letters, numbers, and underscores.
4. Enter in a **Friendly Name**, which can have special characters and spaces. Make sure both Relation and Friendly Names are unique do not already exist.
5. Under Current Object, select a **Display Region** where the field will appear.
6. Under Related Object, select a **Display Region** where the field will appear.

Once all the relevant information is entered, click on **Save**.

Relation N:N	
General Info	
Current Object:	SKUs
Related Object:	SKU_Warehouse
Relation Name:	SKUs_Warehouse
Friendly Name:	SKUsSKUs Warehouses
Current Object (SKUs)	
Display Region:	Information
Display Text:	SKUs Warehouses
Display Order:	10000
Related Object (SKU_Warehouse)	
Display Region:	Information
Display Text:	SKUs
Display Order:	10000
<input type="button" value="✓ Save"/> <input type="button" value="✗ Cancel"/>	



A many to many relationship is automatically generated for the related object when you click on its N:N tab under its configuration form.

Forms in Business Foundation

Forms dictate how fields are presented to the user when view and editing information. This section explains how you can customize forms for viewing and editing by end users.

Customizing an Existing Form

Every field is associated with a **Form**, and each Business Object is associated with one or more types of forms. The common types of forms found in Commerce Manager are the **Edit Forms**, **Short Info Forms**, and **View Forms**. For example, the **New Credit Card** form looks like this:

By editing the form, you can change the layout, add new fields and sections, and more.

To edit an existing form, click on a **Business Object** and click on the **Forms** tab to see the list of associated forms.

Click on the **Edit** icon next to the form you want to make changes to. The form customization window pops up.

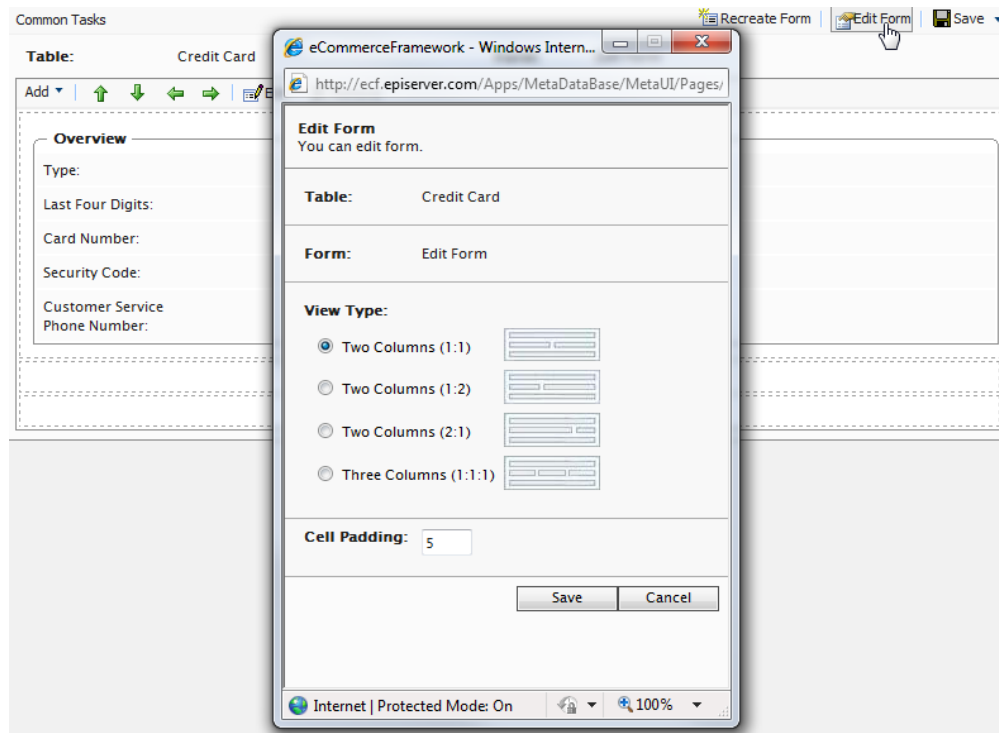
There are various functions available to edit and customize a form.

Editing the Layout of a Form

You can change the layout and the fields that appear on the form.

1. Click on **Edit Form**.
 - a. Select a **View Type** (or the layout of the form). You have a choice between a Two Column (1:1, 1:2, 2:1), or Three Column (1:1:1) layout.
 - b. Enter in a pixel value for the **Cell Padding**, or spaces between each cell.
2. Click **Save** to confirm your changes.

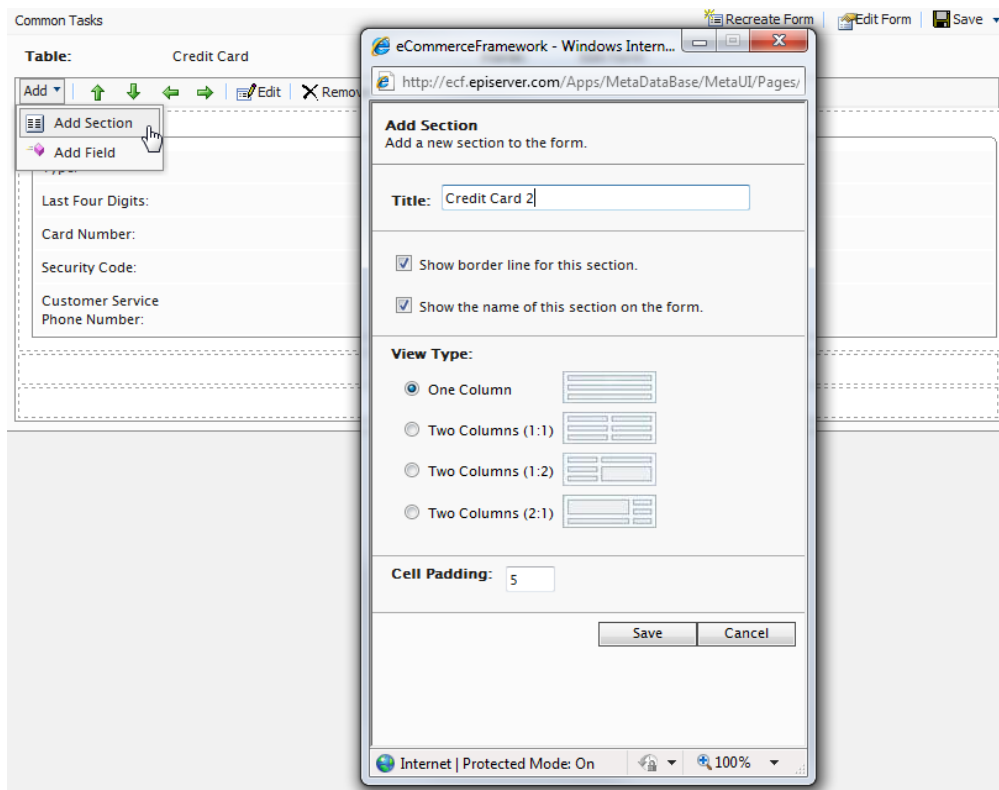
This example uses a Two Column (1:1) layout.



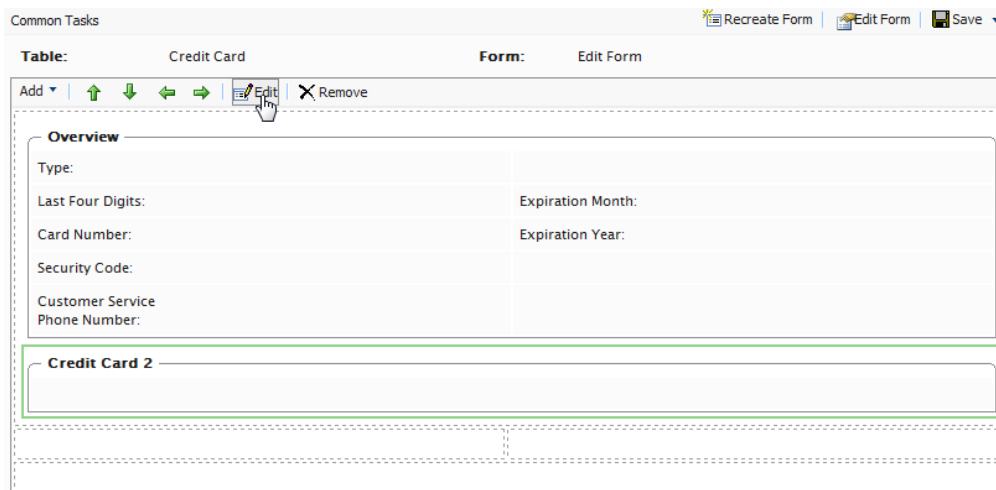
Adding Sections and Fields

Once your layout is set, you can add additional sections and/or additional fields.

1. Click on **Add --> Add Section** to add a new section. Adding sections allows you to separate and divide groups of fields on a form with their own header and border.
2. Enter in a **Title** for the section.
3. Checkmark the box next to "Show border line for this section" if you want to show the border around section. Otherwise, uncheck the box to hide the border.
4. Checkmark "Show the name of this section on the form" if you want to show the title of the section on the form. Otherwise, uncheck the box to hide the title.
5. Select a **View Type** or layout of the section: One Column, Two Columns (1:1), Two Columns (1:2), Two Columns (2:1)
6. Enter a numeric pixel value for **Cell Padding** or amount of space between each cell in the section.
7. Click **Save** to save your changes.



You can edit a section by clicking on a section and click on **Edit**.



Within each section are fields. You can add new fields to a specific section by highlighting the section and then by clicking **Add --> Edit**.

Common Tasks

Recreate Form | Edit Form | Save

Table: Credit Card Form: Edit Form

Add | Add Section | Add Field

Last Four Digits: Expiration Month:

Card Number: Expiration Year:

Security Code:

Customer Service Phone Number:

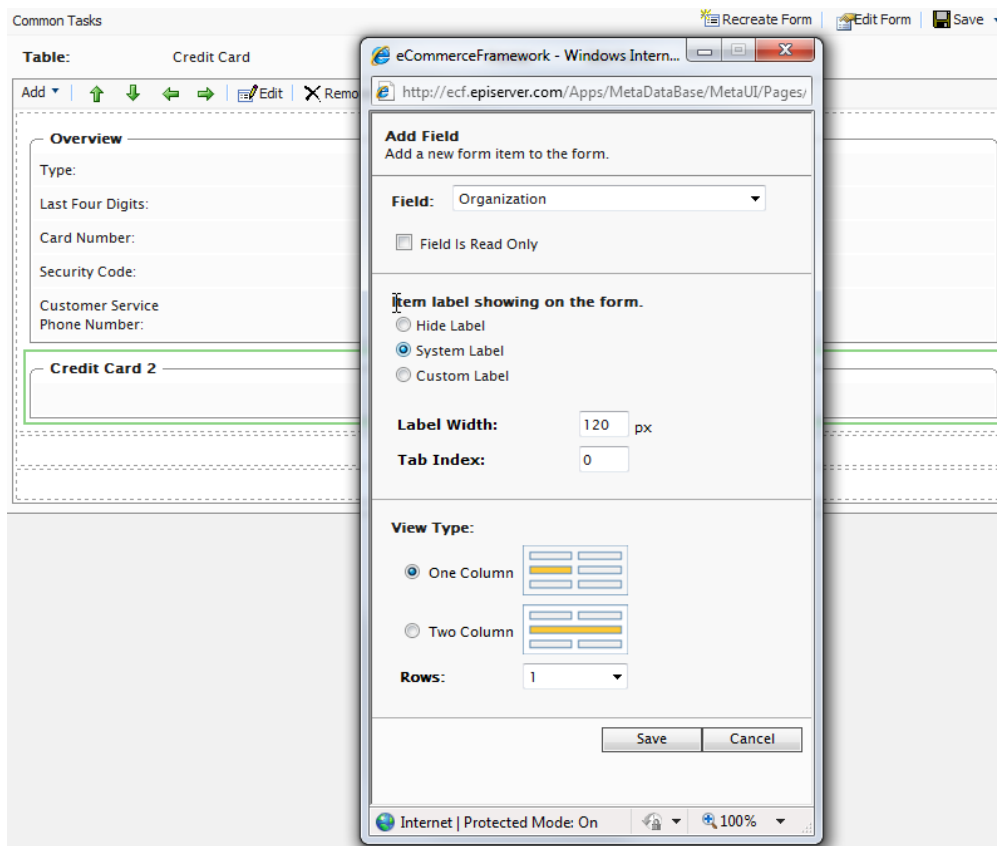
Credit Card 2

Last Four Digits:

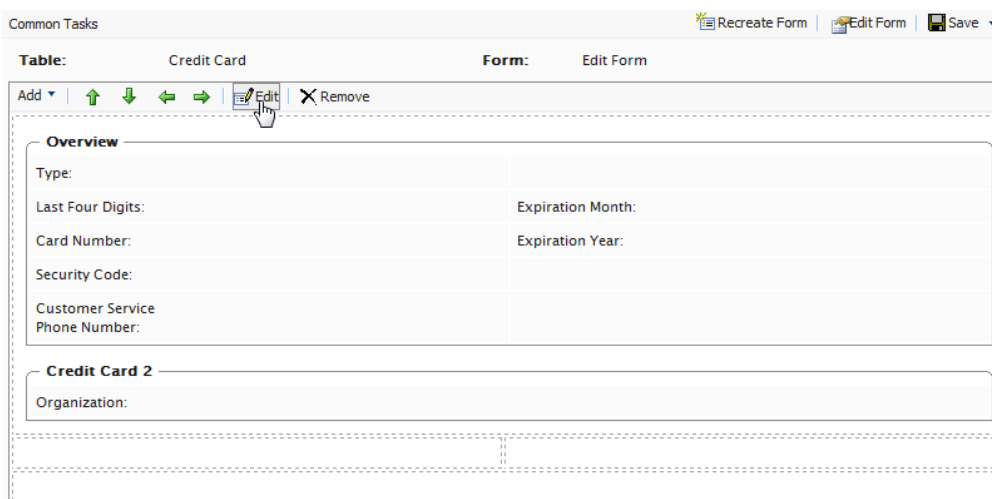
Select an existing associated field in the dropdown menu.

a. Checkmark the "Field is Read Only" box if you want the field to be unavailable for edit. When you see the rendered form, the field will be grayed out.

1. Select the "Item label showing on the form."
2.
 - **Hide Label:** No label appears next to the text box
 - **System Label:** Shows the system name next text box
 - **Custom Label:** Enter in a custom label
3. Enter in a **Label Width** numerical value. Default is 120px.
4. **Tab Index:** enter an index for the tab.
5. Select a **View Type**, either a One Column or Two Column. In the dropdown, enter in the number of text box rows, up to 3.
6. Click **Save** to add the field to the section.



To edit a field, click and highlight the field and click on **Edit** to change your previous settings.



You can re-arrange fields on a form but using the arrow controls on menu bar. Highlight the field and then click on the directional arrow you want the field to move to.

Common Tasks Recreate Form Edit Form Save

Table: Credit Card **Form:** Edit Form

Add ↑ ↓ ← → Edit Remove

Overview

Type:

Last Four Digits: Expiration Month:

Card Number: Expiration Year:

Security Code:

Customer Service
Phone Number:

Credit Card 2

Organization:

In this example, the "Security Code" field is moved to the right where the "Customer Service Phone Number" field is placed by clicking on the right directional arrow. Fields are moved from cell to cell within a section.

Common Tasks Recreate Form Edit Form Save

Table: Credit Card **Form:** Edit Form

Add ↑ ↓ ← → Edit Remove

Overview

Type:

Last Four Digits: Expiration Month:

Card Number: Expiration Year:

Security Code:

Customer Service
Phone Number:

Credit Card 2

Organization:

Deleting Sections and Fields

To delete a section or field, highlight either one and click on **Remove**. A popup will appear. Click **OK** to confirm deletion. Otherwise, click **Cancel**.

Common Tasks Recreate Form Edit Form Save

Table: Credit Card **Form:** Edit Form

Add ↑ ↓ ← → Edit Remove

Overview

Type:

Last Four Digits: Expiration Month:

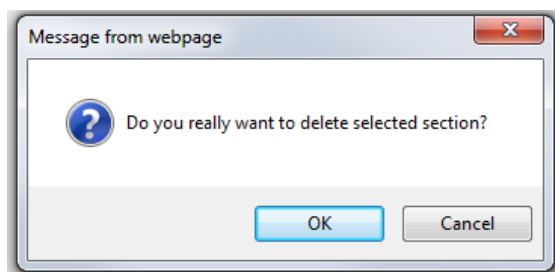
Card Number: Expiration Year:

Security Code:

Customer Service
Phone Number:

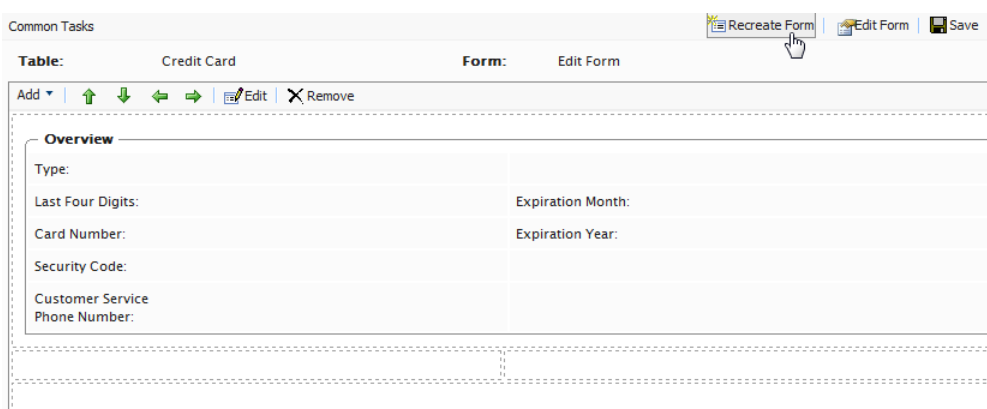
Credit Card 2

Organization:

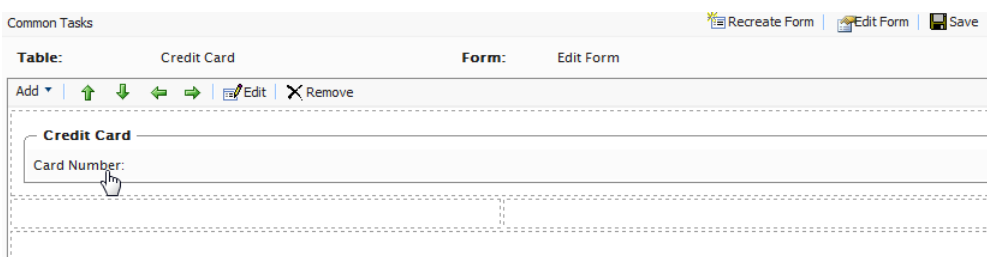


Recreating a Form

Recreating a form allows a user to create a form from scratch with a single field rather than customize a form with all fields already in place. Click on **Recreate Form** on the upper right corner of the window.



A popup will appear. Click on **OK** to recreate the form. Otherwise, click **Cancel**. Once you confirm, the fields will clear from the form except for the required field.



Saving a Customized Form

Once you are done with your changes, click on **Save** on the upper right corner of the window. To save and close the window at the same time, click the down-arrow next on the Save button and on the drop-down click **Save and close**.

Common Tasks

Table: Credit Card Form: Edit Form

Add ↑ ↓ ← → Edit Remove

Save Save and close

Overview

Type:		Expiration Month:	
Last Four Digits:		Expiration Year:	
Card Number:			
Security Code:			
Customer Service Phone Number:			

Once those changes are saved, the form you edited will render based on your configuration. For example, here is the customized Credit Card edit form an end user sees.

New Credit Card

Overview

Type: Visa

Last Four Digits:

Card Number:

Customer Service Phone Number:

Expiration Month: [No value]

Expiration Year: [No value]

Security Code:

Credit Card 2

Organization: {Customer:CreditCard_mf_Organization_Description}

Creating a New Business Object

Creating new business objects allows users to extend customer and asset forms for tracking and relating different types of data. Business Objects can be related in a "one to many," "many to one," or "many to many" relationship. Find out more about this in the *Relations in Business Foundation* section.

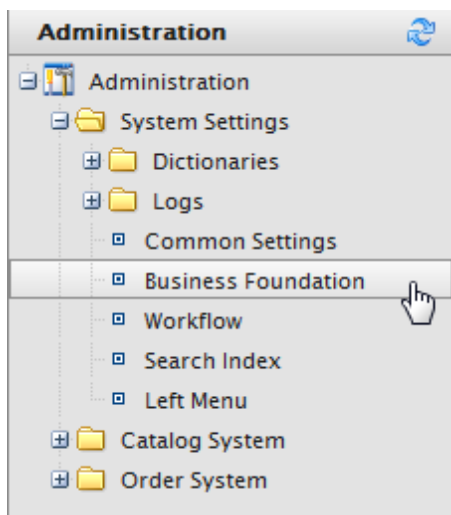
This section covers an example of how to create and publish a contract business object using a "many to one" relationship. In the following steps you will learn how to create and publish a simple contract business object for relating multiple contracts to a single organization:

- Creating a new contract object
- Connecting the contract to an organization
- Publishing the contract

Creating a New Contract Object

New Business Objects can be created to suits a multitude of business purposes. This example shows you how to create a Contract business object.

To add new fields to Business Object, click on **Administration**, expand **System Settings**, and click on **Business Foundation** to access the **Business Foundation Configuration** page.



Click on **Create New** and on the dropdown click on **New Business Object**. The **New Business Object** form page appears. Enter all relevant information.

Base Info

- **System Name:** name of the Business Object (once you input a name, the Friendly Name and Plural Name fields are autopopulated)
- **Friendly Name:** alternative to the System Name
- **Plural Name:** plural version of the system/friendly name (e.g. inventories)
- **Supports Extensions:** this allows you to extend an existing meta class with extra properties. For example, you can have a download class and you can extend it with "imagedownload" which contains width and height as extra parameters.

Field Info

- **System Name:** enter in a system name
- **Friendly Name:** enter in a friendly, front-end name
- **Maximum Length:** maximum number of characters allowed in this field

Click **Save** to save changes.

Business Object Customization				New Field Edit Publish Back To List	
System Name: Contract		Friendly Name: Contract Name			
Type: Business Object (Public)		Plural Name: Contract			
Fields	1:N Relations	N:1 Relations	N:N Relations	Forms	System Views
System Name		Friendly Name		Type	
Contract		Contract Name		Text	
ContractId		Id		Guid	

Add fields to the Contract business object as needed. Refer to **Adding New Fields to Business Object** section for instructions on how to add new fields to a business object.

Click **Save** to save changes.

Connecting a Contract to an Organization

The next step is to create a relationship between this contract with an organization. In this example, the "Many to one" relationship will be used because multiple contracts can be tied to a single organization.

1. To add a relationship, click on the N:1 tab and click **New Relation "Many to one"**.

MERCE Configuration Welcome, Manager
Product Version: 5.1 (build: 24)
License: ECF GS Deployment (EpiServer)

Business Object Customization New Field | Edit | Publish | Back To List

System Name: Contract **Friendly Name:** Contract Name
Type: Business Object (Public) **Plural Name:** Contract

Fields | 1:N Relations | **N:1 Relations** | N:N Relations | Forms | System Views

System Name	Friendly Name	Type
Contract	Contract Name	Text
ContractId	Id	Guid

2. On the **Relation N:1** form, select the primary object as "Organization." The Related Object will be the Contract object (the friendly name appears as opposed to the system name)

3. Enter a **Field Name**, such as "Organization."

4. Enter a **Friendly Name** that will render next to the field in a user view.

Checkmark the box next to Allow Nulls if you want the user to be able to submit the form without having to enter any data into the field. Otherwise, an unchecking this box means that this becomes a required field that the user must enter data in.

5. Checkmark the boxes you want the field to render in, such as the Edit Form, View Form, and Short Info Form.



To learn more about forms, go to *Customizing an Existing Form*.

6. Lastly, set the Display Region using the dropdown menu. The display region determines which section the field will appear within the business object--in this case, the Organization object. **Note:** Depending on your selection, you may have additional options below the dropdown menu, such as **Display Text** and **Display Order**. An example is below.

7. Click **Save** to save your changes and go back to the Business Object Customization form.

Relation N:1

General Info

Primary Object: Organization

Related Object: Contract Name

Object "Contract Name"

Field Name: Organization

Friendly Name: Organization

☒ Allow Nulls

Add Field To:

- ☒ Edit Form
- ☒ View Form
- ☒ Short Info Form
- ☒ System View (General View)

Object "Organization"

Display Region: Information

Display Text: Contract

Display Order: 10000

Now that the Organization business object is tied to **Contract**, you will see that Contract now appears under the Information section or the **Organization Info** view page.

EPiServer Commerce Organization Info

Welcome, Manager
Product Version: 5.1 (build: 24)
License: ECF G5 Deployment (EPiServer)

[Get Help For This Page](#)

[Edit](#) [Organizations](#)

Name: EPiServer **Parent:**

Information

- Information
- Contacts
- Organizations
- Addresses
- Credit Cards
- Contract**

Contract

[Add Items](#) [Exclude Selected](#)

	Contract Name
<input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="checkbox"/>	



Since this example ties many contracts to a single organization, the organization business object is automatically related to the contracts object as a "1:N" relationship.

Business Object Customization			New Field	Edit	Publish	Back To List
System Name: Organization		Friendly Name: Organization				
Type: Business Object		Plural Name: Organization				
Fields	1:N Relations	N:1 Relations	N:N Relations	Forms	System Views	
New Relation "one to many"						
Name	Primary Object	Related Object				
Address	Organization	Address				
Contact	Organization	Contact				
Contract	Organization	Contract Name				
CreditCard	Organization	Credit Card				
Organization	Organization	Organization				

Publishing a Contract

Another feature of Business Foundation is the ability to publish objects within the left navigation frame as a node. You can essentially add more functionality to a specific system without modifying code.

Now that the Contract object has been created and related to another object, you can publish it as a node.

To publish a business object, click on **Publish** under the **Business Object Customization** form.

Business Object Customization			New Field	Edit	Publish	Back To List
System Name: Contract		Friendly Name: Contract Name				
Type: Business Object (Public)		Plural Name: Contract				
Fields	1:N Relations	N:1 Relations	N:N Relations	Forms	System Views	
System Name	Friendly Name	Type				
Contract	Contract Name	Text				
ContractId	Id	Guid				
Organization	Organization	Text (ReferencedField)				
OrganizationId	Organization	Reference				

A new window will pop up for publication settings.

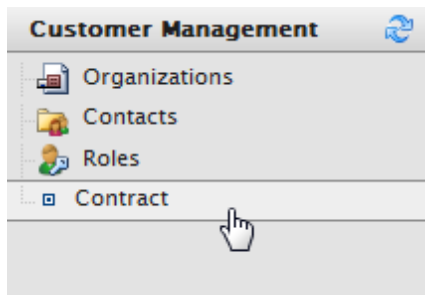
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Dashboard 0 Customer Management 40 Catalog Management 60 Order Management 80 Marketing 100 Asset Management 120 Reporting 130 Administration 200 	<p>Display Region: < nothing is selected ></p> <p>Display Text: Contract</p> <p>Display Order: 10000</p> <p>Client Script: CSManagementClient.ChangeBafView('Contract', 'List')</p> <p>Access Permissions: businessfoundation:contract:list:permission</p> <p>Item Icon: <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Browse..."/></p> <p><input type="button" value="Publish"/> <input type="button" value="Close"/></p>
---	---

1. Select a **Display Region** from the navigation tree on the left. Click on the node you want Contract to be placed under. For example, Contract will be placed on the root level of Customer Management.
2. The **Display Text** defaults to the system name of the Business Object. You can choose to keep the name or change it.
3. The **Display Order** defaults to 10000. You can keep it at that number or change the value to determine the position of the node.
4. The **Client Script** is autopopulated and can be left as is for most users. However, you can change Client Script if necessary.
5. **Access Permissions** is autopopulated and can also be left as is. If you want to change Access Permissions, refer to the *Permissions* section.
6. An Item Icon can be uploaded to represent the node. Click **Browse** to upload an icon.
7. Once all relevant information is entered, click on **Publish**.

To verify if the object was published, go to the **Display Region** where you specified the object to be published to. Click on the refresh icon on the left navigation frame if you at first do not see the new node.

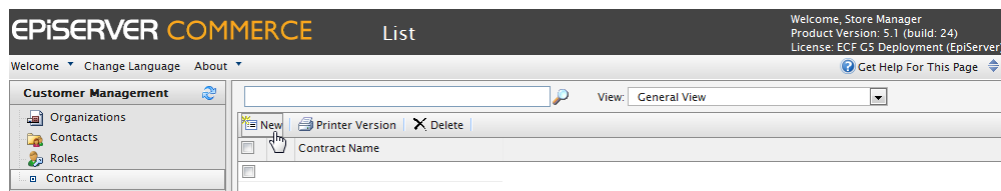


Always refresh your browser after publishing a business object.



Adding Contracts to an Organization

Now that the contract business object has been published, you can add multiple contracts to a single organization using a form. Click on the Contract node to bring up the list of contracts. Click on **New** to add a new contract.



Enter a **Contract Name** (friendly name of the contract object) and select an **Organization** from the drop-down menu to associate the contract with. This functionality is in harmony with the "N:1" relationship between contract and organization.

Click **OK** to save the contract. The View Form appears.



To learn how to edit forms, go to the *Customizing and Existing Form* section.

You can make further edits to the details of the Contract by clicking Edit or delete the entry. Otherwise, click on **Back to list** to go back to the list of contracts.

By going to the **Organization Info** page for the particular organization you assigned multiple contracts to, you will see the list contracts you assigned.



You may need to make sure the **Display Region** is set for the related object (i.e. organization) or else you will not see the business object in the **Edit Form**.

Publishing Business Objects

A user-created business object can be published as a node anywhere in the left navigation frame to extend functionality under that particular subsystem. Before publishing you can set the proper access permissions for the business object, controlling which user groups will have access to use the business object.



You must refresh your browser after a business object has been published.

Setting Permissions and Publishing

When **publishing Business Objects** to place on a node on the **left Navigation Frame**, you can set permissions before publishing.

Click on **Publish** on the **Business Object Customization** page.

Configuration Welcome, Store Manager
Product Version: 5.1 (build: 24)
License: ECF G5 Deployment (EPiServer)

Business Object Customization New Field | Edit | Publish | Back To List

System Name: Contract **Friendly Name:** Contract Name
Type: Business Object (Public) **Plural Name:** Contract

Fields	1:N Relations	N:1 Relations	N:N Relations	Forms	System Views
System Name		Friendly Name		Type	
Contract		Contract Name		Text	
ContractId		Id		Guid	
Organization		Organization		Text (ReferencedField)	
OrganizationId		Organization		Reference	

You can set permissions by customizing **Access Permissions**. This string is auto-generated. To change, you can copy and paste string values from other objects.

Display Region: < nothing is selected >
Display Text: Contract
Display Order: 10000
Client Script: CSManagementClient.ChangeBafView('Contract', 'Lis...)
Access Permissions: businessfoundation:contract:list:permission
Item Icon: Browse...

Publish **Close**

Deleting Published Business Objects

Once a business object has been published, you can delete all **customized** business object by going to **Administration > System Settings > Business Foundation**. To remove from the Left Menu, you have to perform an additional step of going to **Administration > System Settings > Left Menu** and clicking the **Delete** icon.

The screenshot shows the EpiServer Commerce Administration interface. On the left is a 'Left Menu' with categories like Administration, System Settings, Dictionaries, Logs, Common Settings, Business Foundation, Workflow, Search Index, Left Menu, Catalog System, and Order System. Below these are icons for Dashboard, Customer Management, Catalog Management, Order Management, Marketing, Asset Management, and Reporting. On the right, a table lists menu items with their titles and order numbers. A mouse cursor is hovering over the 'Gift Cards' item.

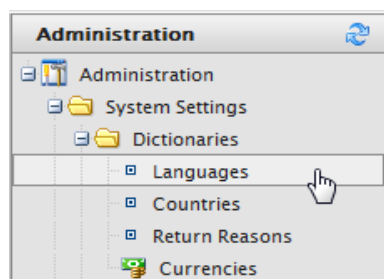
Title	Order
Dashboard	0
Home	10
Customer Management	40
Organizations	30
Contacts	40
Roles	50
Gift Cards	10000
Catalog Management	60
Catalog Entry Search	10
Catalog Batch Update	20
Catalogs	30
Templates	40
Order Management	80
Order Search	10
Purchase Orders	20
Today	10
This Week	20
This Month	30
All	40
Purchase Orders By Status	30

Creating Dictionary Values

In EPiServer Commerce, **Dictionary Values** are used for defining languages, countries and currencies used in the e-commerce process, as well as your own defined return reasons used in order management. This section explains how to add *Languages, Countries, Currencies* and *Return Reasons* to EPiServer Commerce.

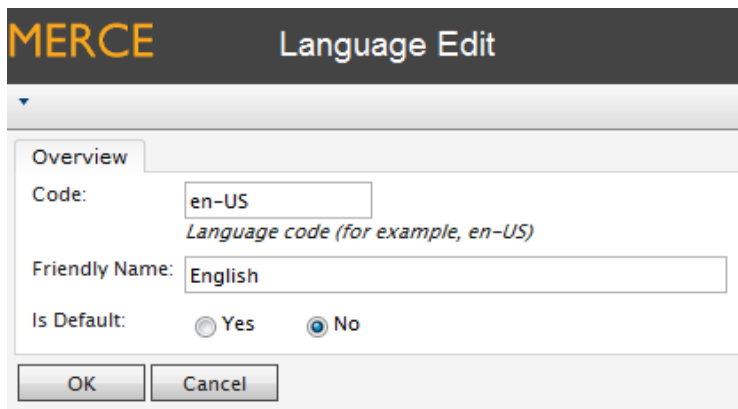
Adding New Languages

By default, you are given several **Language** options. To add a new Language, login to Commerce Manager and go to **Administration --> System Settings --> Dictionaries --> Languages**.



Click **New Language** and fill in the following:

- **Language Code** - to obtain code, go to this MSDN site: <http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms533052%28VS.85%29.aspx> (you must use the codes that contain dashes "-")
- **Friendly Name** - this name is displayed in the front-end site language drop-down and various Commerce Manager admin pages.
- **Is Default** - Yes/No



MERCE Language Edit

Overview

Code:
Language code (for example, en-US)

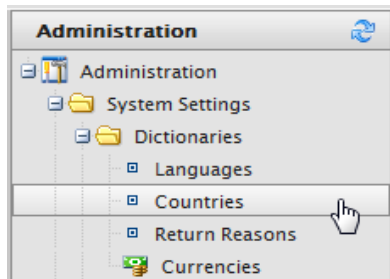
Friendly Name:

Is Default: ☐ Yes ☒ No

Click **OK** to save the language.

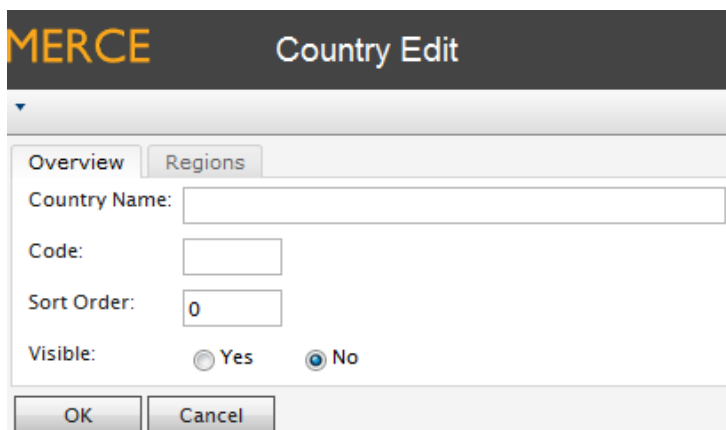
Adding New Countries

To add a new Country, login to Commerce Manager and go to **Administration > System Settings > Dictionaries > Countries**.



Click on **New Country** and fill in the following displayed in the **Overview** tab:

- **Country Name** - this is the friendly name that is displayed in the public site during the checkout process
- **Code** - to obtain the code, go to this MSDN site <http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ee799297%28CS.20%29.aspx> (use the ISO Short Code or ISO Long Code as long as you remain consistent)
- **Sort Order** - enter a number starting from 0 (the lower number is listed on the top of the drop-down)
- **Visible** - Yes/No



MERCE Country Edit

Overview **Regions**

Country Name:

Code:

Sort Order:

Visible: ☐ Yes ☒ No

Regions refer to states, provinces or prefectures. In the **Region** tab, fill in the following:

- Type a **Friendly Name** (e.g. CA - this will be displayed in the public site during the checkout process) and click **Add**. You can checkmark it either as **Visible** or not on the public site

Overview Regions

New Region Name: CA

Regions:

Edit Command	Name	Ordering	Visible
	CA	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

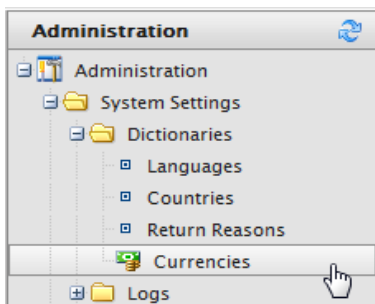
When you click the **Edit** icon, you can change the **Ordering** of the region. Click **Update** to save those changes.

Regions:

Edit Command	Name	Ordering	Visible
<input type="button" value="Update"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	CA	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Adding New Currencies

To add a new **Currency**, login to Commerce Manager and go to **Administration > System Settings > Dictionaries > Currencies**.



Click on **New Currency**. Fill in the following displayed in the **Overview** tab:

- **Currency Name** - this name is displayed in the front-end public site currency drop-down and various Commerce Manager admin pages
- **Code** - this currency code needs to be obtained from this site http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/ISO_4217#Active_codes

MERCE Currency Edit

Overview Rates

Currency Name:

Code:

Modified:

In the **Rates** tab, you can **Add Rates** which are the foreign exchange rate when you want to convert from one currency to another.

Overview Rates

Edit Command	Currency	Rate	Rate Date	Modified
--------------	----------	------	-----------	----------

When the **Edit Currency Rate Information** popup appears, enter in:

- **To Currency** - select from the drop-down the Currency to convert to from the current currency.
- **End of Date Rate** - enter in the End of Day rate.
- **Average Rate** - enter in the Average rate.
- **Currency Rate Date** - enter in a Currency Rate Date.

Then click on **Save Changes**.

Edit Currency Rate Information

From Currency: Australian dollar (AUD)

To Currency: Canadian dollar

End Of Day Rate: 0.0000

Average Rate: 0.0000

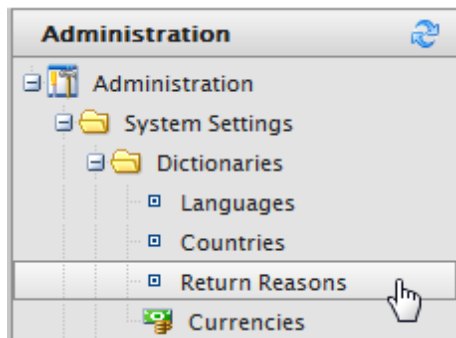
Currency Rate Date: 5/25/2010 11:25 AM

Modified: 5/25/2010 11:25:12 AM

Save Changes

Managing Return Reasons

Out of the box, the three **return reasons** in EPiServer Commerce are "Faulty," "Incorrect Item," and "Unwanted Gift." More return reasons can be added or customized so that when a Customer Sales Representative (CSR) processes a return, more return reasons are available via the drop-down menu.



Creating a New Return Reason

1. To add a new return reason, go to **Administration > System Settings > Dictionaries > Return Reasons**. The **Return Reasons** screen appears.
2. Click **New Return Reason**. The **Return Reason Edit** screen appears.
3. Once done, click **OK**. The new return reason appears on the list.

Field	Description
Return Reason	Enter a friendly name, such as "Changed Mind".
Sort Order	The lower the value, the higher the position the return reason is on the list screen.
Visible	Select Yes (to enable to return reason) or No (to disable it).

Editing and Deleting a Return Reason

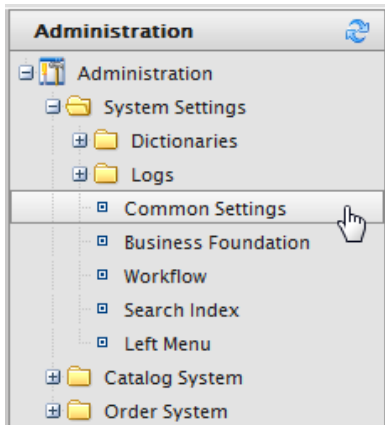
- On the **Return Reasons** list, click on the **Edit** icon. Make any edits to the Return Reason name, Sort Order, and its Visibility and then click **OK** to save your changes.

- To delete an individual Return Reason, click on the **Delete** icon. To delete multiple return reasons at one time, check-mark the box next to the Return Reason and then click **More Actions > Delete Selected**. Confirm your selection by clicking **OK**.

Configuring Default Common Settings

Under Common Settings you define the settings to be used by the system for language, currency, and length and weight units.

To set your default language, currency or unit, login to Commerce Manager and go to the **Administration --> System Settings --> Common Settings** and make the appropriate selections.



Out of the box, you have the following options:

- **Language** - English, German, Spanish, French.
- **Currency** - US dollars, Canadian dollars, Euros, Yen, Pound sterling and many others.
- **Length units** - meters, feet.
- **Weight units** - kilograms, pounds.

Click **OK** to save your changes.

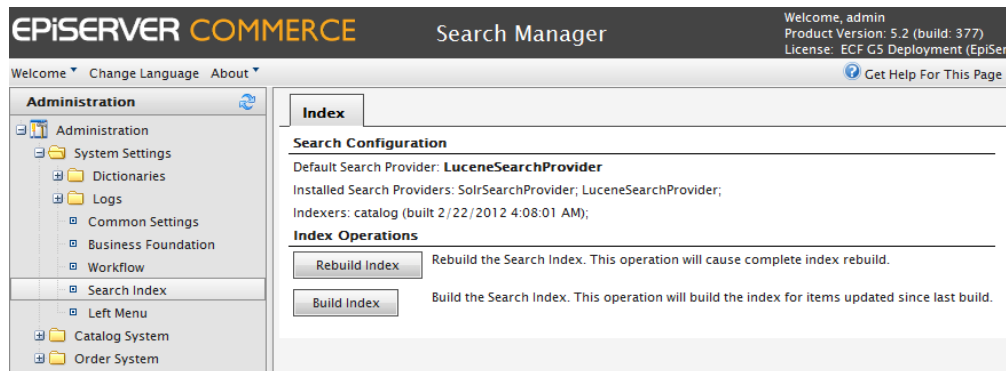
Indexing the Product Catalog

When you have done changes to an existing product catalog, such as adding or deleting products, you will need to index the catalog for those changes to be reflected in the search results.

There are two types of indexing: **Build** and **Rebuild**. Use the **Build** option to make a **quick re-indexing** of an existing catalog where you made changes to existing products. Build is faster than a rebuild because it performs a reindexing of only the items that were changed since the last build.

If you are using a brand new catalog or you made structural changes to your existing catalog (i.e. moving categories around, changing a product name, etc.), then you will need to perform a **Rebuild**. Rebuild takes longer because it does a complete indexing.

To build or rebuild your catalog, go to **Administration > System Settings > Search Index**.



Select **Rebuild Index** or **Build index**. Once you perform either of these two operations, you will see the changes or additions reflected in your search results.

If you have the Quartz service installed, then your catalog is reindexed every five minutes or whatever time interval you decide upon. Refer to the EPiServer Commerce Developer Guide for more information about the Quartz service.

Customizing the Left Menu

Prior to customizing your left menu, we advise you to read the section *Publishing Business Objects* describing how to configure Business Objects and adding them as individual nodes in the left navigation frame.

Adding a Left Menu Item from the Left Menu Page

To add a **Left Menu** item, you have two choices. You can either configure the entire menu item first within Business Foundation or you can add an empty container by clicking the **Add** button and then go back to Business Foundation to fill in the page contents (objects).

EPISERVER COMMERCE Left Menu

Welcome, admin
Product Version: 5.2 (build: 377)
License: ECF GS Deployment (EpiServer)

Welcome ▾ Change Language ▾ About ▾ Get Help For This Page

Administration

- Administration
 - System Settings
 - Dictionaries
 - Logs
 - Common Settings
 - Business Foundation
 - Workflow
 - Search Index
 - Left Menu
- Catalog System
- Order System

Dashboard

Customer Management

Catalog Management

Order Management

Marketing

Asset Management

Reporting

Administration

Title	Order
Dashboard	0
Home	10
Customer Management	40
Organizations	30
Contacts	40
Roles	50
Gift Cards	10000
Catalog Management	60
Catalog Entry Search	10
Catalog Batch Update	20
Catalogs	30
Templates	40
Order Management	80
Order Search	10
Purchase Orders	20
Today	10
This Week	20
This Month	30
All	40
Purchase Orders By Status	30

Page Size: 20 (83 items) | Page 1 2 3 4 5

A new window will pop up for publication settings.

1. Select a **Display Region** from the navigation tree on the left. Click on the node you want Contract to be placed under. For example, Contract will be placed on the root level of Customer Management.
2. The **Display Text** defaults to the system name of the Business Object. You can choose to keep the name or change it.
3. Enter in an **Item Link**, an URL to a page. When the object is clicked, a new window will appear on the right based on the given link.
4. The **Display Order** defaults to 10000. You can keep it at that number or change the value to determine the position of the node.
5. **Access Permissions** is auto-populated only when a menu is created through the Business Foundation. When creating a new left menu from scratch, you may leave this field blank or otherwise copy in permissions from other existing menus. If you want to change Access Permissions, refer to the *Permissions* section.
6. An **Item Icon** can be uploaded to represent the node. Click **Browse** to upload an icon.
7. Once all relevant information is entered, click on **Publish**.

Adding

Dashboard	0
Customer Management	40
Catalog Management	60
Order Management	80
Marketing	100
Asset Management	120
Reporting	130
Administration	200

Display Region: Customer Management

Display Text:

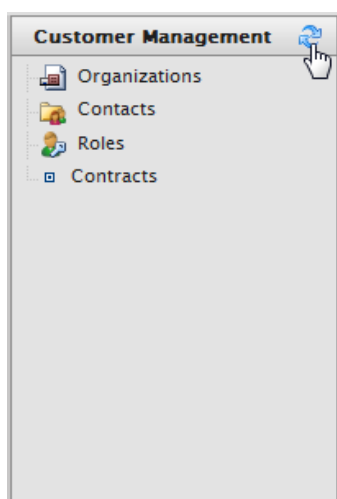
Item Link:

Display Order:

Access Permissions:

Item Icon:

To verify if the object was published, go to the **Display Region** where you specified the object to be published to. Click on the **Refresh** icon on the left navigation frame if at first you do not see the new node.



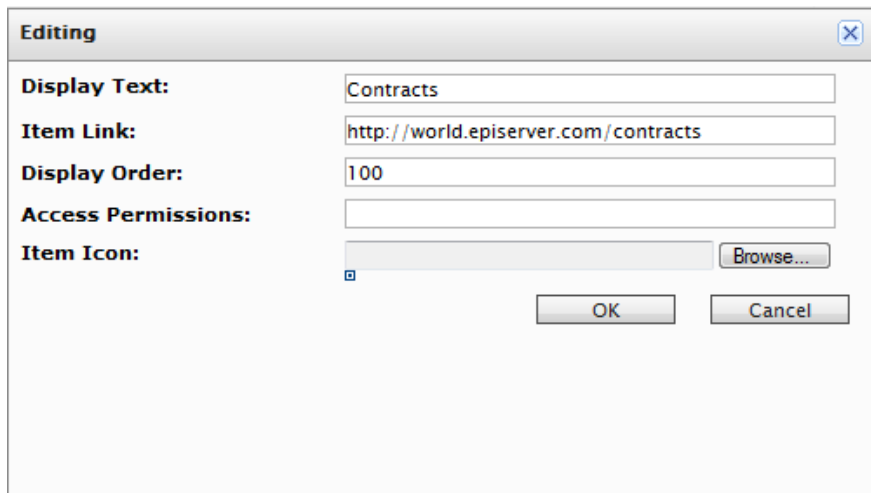
Editing, Ordering, or Deleting a Left Menu Item

To **Edit** a user-generated node in the left menu, click on the **Notepad** icon.

Add

	Title	Order
	Dashboard	0
	Home	10
	Customer Management	40
	Organizations	30
	Contacts	40
	Roles	50
	Contracts	10000
	Catalog Management	60
	Catalog Entry Search	10

If the left menu item was created via the **Left Menu** page, this popup window will appear.



Editing [X]

Display Text:

Item Link:

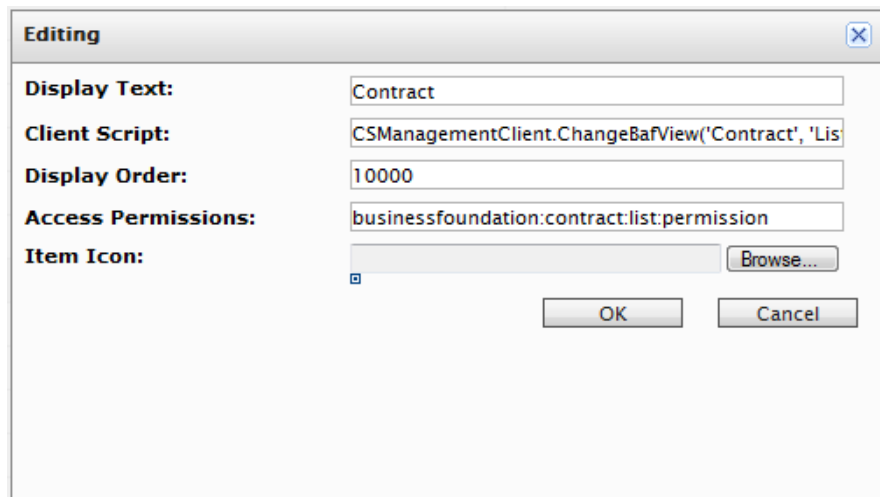
Display Order:

Access Permissions:

Item Icon:

If the left menu item node was created using **Business Foundation**, this popup appears.

To change the sort order of the left menu item, adjust the numerical value in **Display Order**. The lower the value, the higher the position of the item within the navigation tree relative to items with a higher Display Order value.



Editing [X]

Display Text:

Client Script:

Display Order:

Access Permissions:

Item Icon:

To save changes, click **OK**.

To delete a left menu item, click on **X** icon.

The screenshot shows the EPiServer Commerce Administration interface. The top bar includes 'Commerce Manager Settings', 'EPiSERVER COMMERCE', 'Left Menu', and user information: 'Welcome, admin', 'Product Version: 5.2 (build: 377)', and 'License: ECF GS Deployment (EPiServer)'. The left sidebar contains a tree view under 'Administration' with folders like 'System Settings', 'Catalog System', and 'Order System'. The main content area displays a table of system settings.

Title	Order
Dashboard	0
Home	10
Customer Management	40
Organizations	30
Contacts	40
Roles	50
Gift Cards	10000
Catalog Management	60
Catalog Entry Search	10
Catalog Batch Update	20
Catalogs	30
Templates	40
Order Management	80
Order Search	10
Purchase Orders	20
Today	10
This Week	20
This Month	30
All	40
Purchase Orders By Status	30

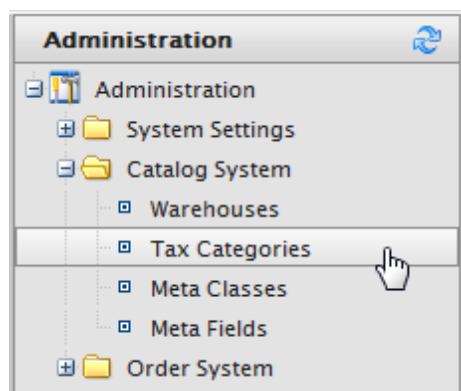
Catalog System

Under **Catalog System** you can set up tax categories and warehouses, as well as catalog specific meta fields and meta classes. *Tax categories* and *warehouses* are described in the following. For more information on how to add meta fields and classes, refer to the section *Setting up Meta Fields and Classes*.

Tax Categories

Under **Tax Categories** you define the different tax categories for products to be used in the e-commerce process. Refer to the *Tax Configuration* section for more detailed information on how to configure special taxes such as state, local and federal taxes.

Go to **Administration, Catalog System** and click **Tax Categories** to see a list of existing tax categories.



To create a new category, click on **New**. A pop-up window appears. In the **Tax Category Name** field, enter a name and click **OK** to save the tax category.

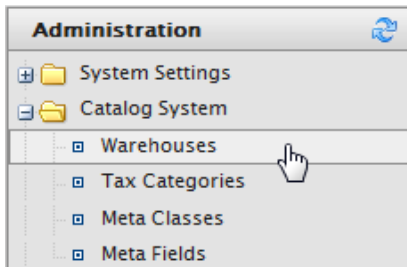
Warehouses

A **Warehouse** is the physical place with an address from which product items are shipped. In EPiServer Commerce you can define a list of warehouses to be available in the e-commerce process.

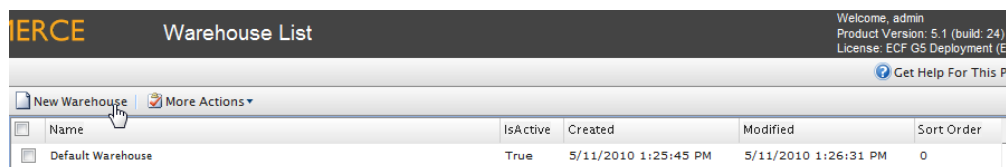


You can only associate one single warehouse for every SKU. So when you are creating a new SKU, you will have to specify the warehouse where the item is being stored, within the **Pricing/Inventory** tab.

To access warehouses, navigate to **Administration > Expand Catalog System > Warehouses**.



The **Warehouse List** page appears. The sample site has a default example warehouse called "Default Warehouse". To create a new warehouse, click on **New Warehouse** on the menu bar.



The **Warehouse Edit** page has two tabs: **Overview** and **Address**.

1. Under the **Overview** tab enter in a **Name** and **Code**. The Name and Code name can have spaces in between characters.
2. Enter in a value for the **Sort Order** to determine the Warehouse's position on the **Warehouse List**.
3. Under **Available** select "Yes" or "No."
4. Under **Is Primary** select whether or not this Warehouse is the primary one. You can only have one primary Warehouse.

Warehouse Edit

Overview | Address

Name:

Code:

Sort Order:
The sort order for the category entry.

Available: ☒ Yes ☐ No

Is Primary: ☐ Yes ☒ No

OK Cancel

5. Under the **Address** tab, enter all relevant information regarding this Warehouse.

Overview

Address

First Name:

Last Name:

Organization:

Line 1:

Line 2:

City:

State:

Country Code:

Country Name:

Postal Code:

Region Code:

Region Name:

Day Phone:

Evening Phone:

Fax Number:

Email:

OK

Cancel

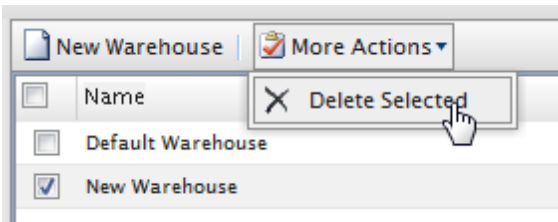
6. Once you are satisfied with your entries, click on **OK** to save the Warehouse. Otherwise, click **Cancel** to go back to the **Warehouse List** page. The new Warehouse will appear on the list.

New Warehouse

More Actions

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	IsActive	Created	Modified	Sort Order
<input type="checkbox"/>	Default Warehouse	True	5/11/2010 1:25:45 PM	5/11/2010 1:26:31 PM	0
<input type="checkbox"/>	New Warehouse	True	Today, 1:17 PM	Today, 1:17 PM	10

To delete a Warehouse, place a check mark on the box next to the name of the Warehouse and the click on **More Actions** on the menu bar.



Confirm deletion by clicking **OK** on the pop-up window. Otherwise, click **Cancel** to go back.

Order System

Under **Order System** you can set up payment methods, shipping providers and configure specific taxes. You can also define meta fields and classes for orders. For more information on how to add meta fields and classes, refer to the section *Setting up Meta Fields and Classes*.

Payment Gateways

When creating and configuring payment methods in EPiServer Commerce, there are three components that need to be created or re-used as well as configured: **Payment Types**, **Payment Gateways** and **Payment Methods**.

Payment Types – Payment types are **classes** which contain the properties of a particular payment type. For example, a credit card payment type contains credit card number, card expiration date, card type, etc. All payment types inherit from the abstract class Payment. The most common payment types are already built-in to EPiServer Commerce:

- Credit card
- Cash Card
- Gift Card
- Invoice

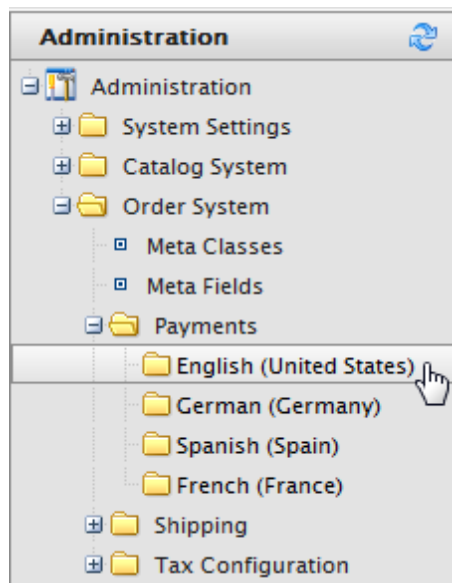
In addition, a generic "OtherPayment" class type is included in EPiServer Commerce. Payment types are meta classes.

Payment Gateways – Payment gateways provide an **interface** to the system which provides payment processing. A payment type is passed to the payment gateway and the gateway executes the payment transaction with the payment system (e.g. PayPal). One payment type is associated with each payment gateway.

Payment Methods – Payment methods contain information about the way the customer **views a payment option** and has a payment gateway associated with it.

Using Built-In Payment Gateways

To setup payments using a built-in payment gateway, go to **Administration, Language** (English, German, Spanish, etc.).



The **Payment Methods** window appears.

MERCE

Payment Methods

Welcome, admin

Product Version: 5.2 (build: 377)

License: ECF G5 Deployment (EpiServer)

Get Help For This Page

New

More Actions

		Name	IsActive	IsDefault	Ordering	Created	Last Modified
		Gift Card	True	False	0	2/22/2012 5:08:21 AM	2/22/2012 5:08:21 AM
		Pay By Credit Card	True	False	2	4/20/2010 2:00:00 AM	4/20/2010 2:00:00 AM
		ExchangePayment	False	False	2	4/20/2010 2:00:00 AM	4/20/2010 2:00:00 AM
		Pay By Phone	True	True	2	4/20/2010 2:00:00 AM	4/20/2010 2:00:00 AM
		Credit on Account	True	False	100	2/22/2012 5:08:21 AM	2/22/2012 5:08:21 AM

If selecting English (US) on the sample site the following payment methods will be available by default:

- Gift Card
- Pay By Credit Card
- Exchange Payment
- Pay By Phone
- Credit on Account

To create a new **Payment Method**, click on **New** to open the **Payment Method Edit** screen.

MERCE
Payment Method Edit

OverviewParameters

ID:
Name:
Description:
System Keyword:
Language: select language
Class Name: (none)
Sort Order: 0
IsActive: ☐ Yes ☒ No
IsDefault: ☐ Yes ☒ No
Supports Recurring: ☐ Yes ☒ No

Restricted Shipping Methods

Available Shipping Methods
Chosen Shipping Methods

Default Shipping
Online Download

Add ->
Add All ->>
<- Remove
<<- Remove All

OKCancel

Here is an explanation of some of the gateway properties:

- **ID** – the system-assigned unique identifier for the payment gateway
- **Name** – the name to be displayed to the user
- **Description** – a description that can be displayed to the user
- **System Keyword** – the unique name for each instance of the gateway; new non-unique keywords will not save to the database. This is not be editable after a gateway is initially created
- **Language** – allows a specific language to be specified for the payment gateway
- **Class Name** – name of the gateway class to be associated with the payment
- **Sort Order** – specifies the order of the payment method on the list of payment methods page
- **IsActive** – specify whether or not the payment method is active
- **IsDefault** – specific whether or not the payment method is the default one
- **Supports Recurring** – specify whether this payment methods supports recurring payments, such as for subscriptions
 - **Restricted Shipping Methods** – Restricted shipping methods is not fully implemented out of the box and requires a developer to complete the functionality.

Restricted Shipping Methods

Available Shipping Methods		Chosen Shipping Methods
<div>Default Shipping</div> <div>Online Download</div>	<div>Add -></div> <div>Add All ->></div> <div><- Remove</div> <div><<- Remove All</div>	

Restricted Shipping Methods

Available Shipping Methods		Chosen Shipping Methods
<div>Online Download</div>	<div>Add -></div> <div>Add All ->></div> <div><- Remove</div> <div><<- Remove All</div>	<div>Default Shipping</div>

Click **OK** to save the **Payment Method**. The payment method will appear in the list of Payment Methods.

MERCÉ		Payment Methods					Welcome, admin Product Version: 5.1 (build: 24) License: ECF GS Deployment (EpiServer)	
		Get Help For This Page						
New More Actions								
	Name	IsActive	IsDefault	Ordering	Created	Last Modified		
	Money Order	False	False	0	Today, 10:45 AM	Today, 10:45 AM		
	Payment by card (DIBS)	True	True	0	5/12/2010 6:10:05 AM	5/12/2010 6:10:05 AM		
	Pay By Phone	True	True	1	1/1/2006 1:00:00 AM	5/12/2010 6:10:34 AM		
	Pay By Credit Card	True	False	2	1/1/2006 1:00:00 AM	1/1/2007 1:00:00 AM		

Setting up Payment Methods using nSoftware Provided Payment Gateways

EPiServer Commerce supports multiple payment gateways out of the box using **nSoftware** where new payment methods can easily be set up by end-users.

1. To enable nSoftware supported gateways, create a new payment method.
2. Enter in a **Name**, such as nSoftware or anything else.
3. Enter in a **Description**.
4. Enter in the **System Keyword** as "ICharge".
5. Select a **Language** from the drop-down menu.
6. Select the **Class Name** "Mediachase.Commerce.Plugins.Payment.ICharge.IChargeGateway".
7. Select "Yes" for **IsActive**.
8. Change the **Sort Order**, **IsDefault**, Supports Recurring as needed.
9. Click **OK** to save changes.

MERCE Payment Method Edit

Overview Parameters

ID:

Name: nSoftware

Description: nSoftware

System Keyword: ICharge

Language: select language

Class Name: Mediachase.Commerce.Plugins.Payment.ICharge.IChargeGateway

Sort Order: 0

IsActive: ☐ Yes ☒ No

IsDefault: ☐ Yes ☒ No

Supports Recurring: ☐ Yes ☒ No

Restricted Shipping Methods

Available Shipping Methods		Chosen Shipping Methods
Default Shipping Online Download	Add -> Add All ->>	
	<- Remove <<- Remove All	

OK Cancel

Once created, click on the payment gateway again to go back to the **Payment Method Edit** page. Click on the **Parameters** tab.

The **Configure IBiz E-Payment Integrator Component** appears and you can select from the **Gateway** drop-down menu several dozen of the most popular payment gateways will appear. Depending on the gateway you select, such as Authorize.Net, the **Configuration Parameters** will change. Enter in your credentials and other relevant information to activate the gateway and click **OK**.

Configure IBiz E-Payment Integrator Component

Gateway: Authorize.Net

Get IBiz E-Payment Integrator from www.nsoftware.com. You will find more documentation on how to configure it there also.

Configuration Parameters

Payment Options: Sale

*Merchant Login:

Merchant Password:

Transaction Key:

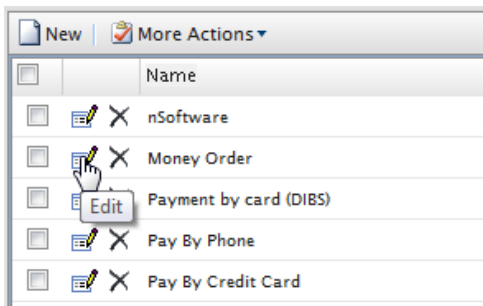
Secret Hash:

Payment Gateway URL (used for testing):

OK **Cancel**

Editing Payment Methods

To edit an existing payment method, click on the **Notepad** icon next to the **Delete** icon.



The ID is auto-generated. Every field can be changed except System Keyword. After you are satisfied with your changes, click on **OK**.

MERCE Payment Method Edit

Overview Parameters

ID: e0fbbe1d-053f-4adc-b15c-669374639502

Name: Money Order

Description:

System Keyword: iCharge

Language: English (United States)

Class Name: EPiServer.Business.Commerce.Payment.DIBS.DIBSPaymentGateway

Sort Order: 0

IsActive: ☐ Yes ☒ No

IsDefault: ☐ Yes ☒ No

Supports Recurring: ☐ Yes ☒ No

Restricted Shipping Methods

Available Shipping Methods

Online Download

Chosen Shipping Methods

Default Shipping

Add ->

Add All -->>

<- Remove

<<- Remove All

OK Cancel

Deleting Payment Methods

To delete **Payment Methods**, click on the **X** icon next to the payment method name and click **OK** when the popup appears. To delete multiple payment methods at once, check mark each payment method you want to delete, then click on **More Actions --> Delete** on the drop-down menu. Click **OK** when the popup appears.

Shipping

Shipping involves everything related to the actual physical delivery of products to e-commerce customers. Just as for payments, you can set up shipping methods, gateways and providers. In the following the terminology is described as well as the different configuration possibilities for shipping.

Shipping Method

A shipping method manages a set of information and rules that determines the shipping cost and displays it on the front-end site while a customer checks out an item from his/her shopping basket. The shipping fee is added to the total price of the purchase. A shipping method is mapped to a shipping provider visible to a back-end administrator in Commerce Manager. This allows the public site to display friendly names such as "Ground Shipping" to the customer and this is mapped to a provider such as UPS. Therefore, when a customer picks "Ground Shipping," he/she will be using UPS.

Shipping Providers

A shipping provider is the class(es) that interacts directly with one or more actual shipping services such as USPS, UPS, or FedEx. It retrieves shipping price information from the shipping service(s) its associated with. One typical scenario would be to have a provider that represents a particular service (e.g. USPS). A provider can also represent a particular type of shipping situation. One example is that you could have a provider for overnight delivery. The provider could retrieve pricing for that service to determine the lowest price given the location of the customer. A provider could also represent other specific scenarios with one or more services such as price by weight or ground shipping.

Shipping Gateways

Under Shipping Providers, a shipping gateway is the specific class that you select (Generic Gateway or Weight/Jurisdiction Gateway).

There are two options out of the box for shipping gateways: 1) Generic Gateway (flat shipping rate) and 2) Weight/Jurisdiction Gateway (base price + additional fee depending on weight and shipping location). You select the shipping gateway in the Shipping Provider screen and then configure the actual values for that gateway/provider in the Shipping Methods area.

Shipping Jurisdictions

An option which allows you to define values for region-specific shipping rates; this is only used when you select the Weight/Jurisdiction Gateway (i.e. California)

Shipping Jurisdiction Groups

Group of jurisdictions; this is required because this is a required field when configuring the Shipping Method parameters (i.e. Southwest region).

Shipping Methods

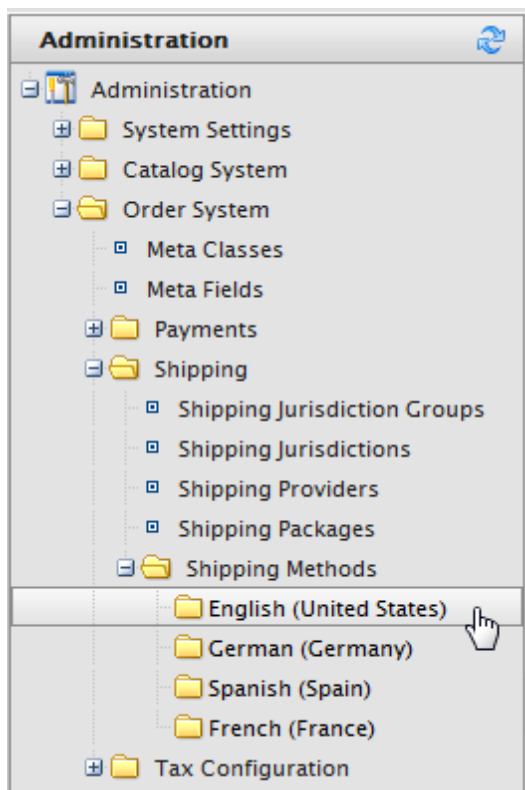
A **Shipping Method** manages a set of information and rules that determines the shipping cost and displays it on the front-end site while a customer checks out an item from his/her shopping basket. The shipping fee is added to the total price of the purchase.

A shipping method is mapped to a **Shipping Provider** visible to a back-end administrator in Commerce Manager. This allows the public site to display friendly names such as "Ground Shipping" to the customer and this is mapped to a provider such as UPS. Therefore, when a customer picks "Ground Shipping," he/she will be using UPS.

Customizing Shipping Methods

There are two **Shipping Methods** available out of the box for you to customize: Ground Shipping and Fixed Shipping.

To customize the Shipping Methods, first go to **Administration > Order System > Shipping > Shipping Methods > English (United States)** or any other languages.



At the **Shipping Methods List** screen, select the edit icon for either of the available methods. The **Overview** tab screen for **Shipping Method Edit** will load with the below fields:

 A screenshot of the 'Shipping Method Edit' form, specifically the 'Overview' tab. The form contains the following fields and controls:

- ID:** a1ca1bca-6fbf-4b6f-b01f-bbf3df23a02a
- Name:** Default Shipping
- Friendly Name:** Ground Shipping
- Description:** Calculates shipping based on weight and zone.
- Provider:** Weight/Jurisdiction Gateway
- Language:** English (United States)
- Base Price:** 2.00
- Currency:** US dollar
- IsActive:** Yes (selected)
- IsDefault:** Yes (selected)
- Sort Order:** 0

 At the bottom of the form are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

- **ID** - this is auto-generated after saving the new shipping method
- **Name** - enter in a name without spaces or special character; this name will not be displayed in the public site, but is only for end users to manage and organize the shipping methods
- **Friendly Name** - enter a friendly name which can have spaces and special character; the friendly name is the name seen by customers who are purchasing items
- **Description** - enter a description (optional)

- **Provider** - select an available provider from the drop-down menu; the options displayed here are created in the *Shipping Providers* screen (*Generic Gateway* is for a fixed shipping fee specified below under base price, while *Weight/Jurisdiction Gateway* is used for a shipping fee depended on the weight and shipping location)
- **Language** - select a language of your choice from the drop-down menu
- **Base Price** - the base price you specify here will become the fixed shipping fee for the Generic Gateway option, and part of the Weight/Jurisdiction Gateway option.
- **IsActive** - select Yes or No under IsActive to enable is disable it, respectively
- **IsDefault** - select Yes or No if this shipping method is the default one
- **Sort Order** - enter a number for the sort order to determine its position on the list of shipping methods

The **Settings** tab is used to exclude any Countries, Regions, and Payments from a particular shipping method.

To exclude a selection, highlight the items on the **Available** boxes on the left and move them to the **Chosen Countries** boxes by clicking **Add**.

Overview

Settings

Parameters

Restricted Countries

Available Countries

Afghanistan
Albania
Algeria
American Samoa
Andorra
Angola
Anguilla
Antarctica
Antigua and Barbuda
Argentina

Add ->
Add All ->>
<- Remove
<<- Remove All

Chosen Countries

Restricted Regions

Available Regions

Alabama
Alaska
American Samoa
Arizona
Arkansas
Armed Forces Africa
Armed Forces Americas (except C
Armed Forces Canada
Armed Forces Europe
Armed Forces Middle East

Add ->
Add All ->>
<- Remove
<<- Remove All

Chosen Regions

Restricted Payments

Available Payments

Payment by card (DIBS)
nSoftware
Pay By Phone
Pay By Credit Card

Add ->
Add All ->>
<- Remove
<<- Remove All

Chosen Payments

OK

Cancel

The **Parameters** tab is use to set conditions to determine the shipping fee. This screen become available only when the Weight/Jurisdiction Gateway is select in the **Provider** field in the Overview tab (it will be empty with the Generic Gateway option).

Overview

Settings

Parameters

Configure Price Per Weight for Jurisdiction Group

Jurisdiction Group: United States
Weight: or more
Price:
Start Date: 5/25/2010 12:00 AM
End Date: 5/25/2011 10:55 AM

Group Name	Weight	Price	Start Date	End Date	Edit	
United States	0 or more	10	10/8/2008 12:00:00 AM	10/8/2020 12:00:00 AM	Modify	Delete

OK

Cancel

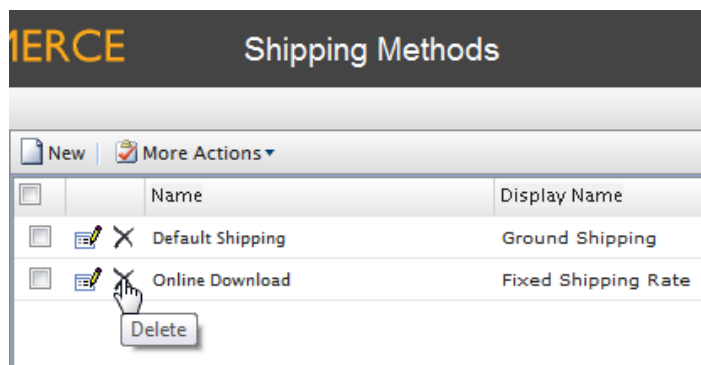
- **Jurisdiction Group** - select a jurisdiction group to apply the current **Shipping Method** using the drop-down menu; the options listed here are set up in the **Shipping Jurisdictions** and **Shipping Jurisdiction Groups** screen.
- **Weight** - enter a numerical value for the weight; units for the weight is set in the *Common Settings* screen
- **Price** - enter a price to be added to the base price (**Overview** tab) when the weight and jurisdiction group conditions are met.
- **Start Date** - enter a start date and time for the shipping method to take effect
- **End Date** - enter a end date and time for the shipping method to expire

When finish entering the values above, select **Add** to save the condition. The condition will appear on table below. In the above example, if the customer checks out an item that weights anywhere between 0 to 10 weight units (lbs for example), and the customer's shipping address is in the United States, then the total shipping fee will equal \$10 + the base price you enter in the overview screen.

Click **OK** to save changes.

Deleting Shipping Methods

1. Check off the box that corresponds to the shipping methods you want to delete.
2. Click on the More Actions button on the upper left corner of the main window menu bar, and choose **Delete** from the pull down menu.
3. Click **OK** when prompted. The selected methods will be deleted from the list.



Shipping Providers

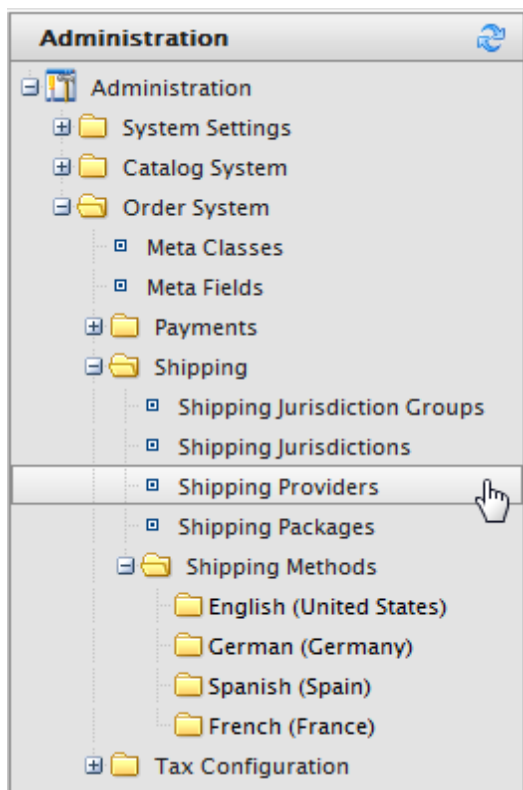
A **Shipping Provider** is an actual service such as USPS, UPS, or FedEx. However, a provider can also be a type of shipping in order to determine shipping price. For example, one can have a "Percentage of Total Cost" provider or "Fixed Price" provider. In this case, the shipment "types" can be associated to one of the existing providers (i.e. USPS, UPS, FEDEX).

The Shipping Providers page manages the list of these providers/types. There are two shipping methods available out of the box for you to customize: 1) Generic Gateway and 2) Weight/Jurisdiction Gateway.

A **Generic Gateway** is used for a fixed shipping fee while **Weight/Jurisdiction Gateway** is used for a shipping fee that is calculated based on the weight and shipping location.

Customizing Shipping Providers

Go to **Administration > Order System > Shipping > Shipping Providers**. Edit one of the two providers listed.



1. Edit **Name**, and **Description**.
2. **System Keyword (no spaces)** and **Classes** are something that your developers need to code and provide.
3. Click **OK** to save changes.

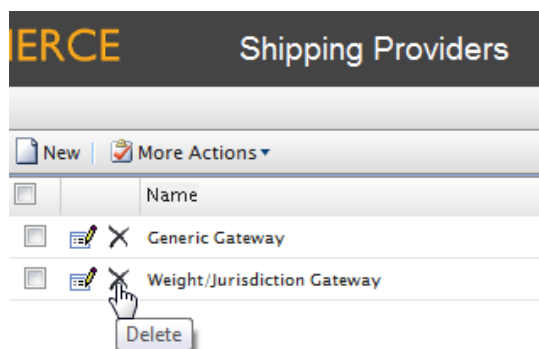
The revised shipping provider will appear in the **Shipping Providers** page.



The **Parameters** and **Packages** tabs are not fully implemented; they serve as a starting point for developers for full implementation of those features.

Deleting Shipping Providers

1. Go to the **Shipping Providers** page.
2. Check off the box that corresponds to the shipping providers you want to delete.
3. Click on the **More Actions** button on the upper left corner of the main window menu bar, and choose **Delete** from the pull down menu.
4. Click **OK** when prompted. The selected providers will be deleted from the list.



Tax Configuration

Introduction

Taxes can be configured in the **Administration** subsystem so that specified rates are calculated and added to the total price during the checkout process. Depending on your configuration, it is also possible to combine and apply multiple taxes (such as federal, state and local tax) to a purchase.

Taxes can be set up and maintained using two methods: 1) creating/editing each tax control manually or 2) importing all data using a CSV file. Here we will discuss both methods and also provide you with a few examples to demonstrate how this works.

Method 1: Configuring Taxes Manually

To set up your taxes manually, you will need to work with the following areas in the **Administration** tab of the Admin Site – **Tax Categories, Tax Jurisdiction Groups, Tax Jurisdictions, and Taxes** – as well as the configuration pages for each of the catalog items.

The steps below summarize the process you need to follow to configure taxes.

1. **Create and configure Countries and Regions (Go to Administration > System Settings > Dictionaries > Countries):** In Countries section create the countries you plan to sell your products in and set the appropriate country codes. For the country codes, it is important that you use the **ISO Short** code provided in the following link (<http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms866171.aspx>). Using the **ISO Long** code or anything else will not correctly calculate taxes during checkout.
2. **Create new Tax Categories (Go to Administration > Catalog System):** In this step you will create tax categories that will be used later to associate your catalog items with the tax rates you define. For example you may create categories such as "General Sales," "Food," and "Luxury Items" depending on the tax regulations for your item types. The categories you create here will become selectable on the Page Details of your items (i.e., Variations/SKU Edit page) and on the **Tax Edit** page.
3. **Create and configure Tax Jurisdictions (Go to Administration > Order system > Tax Configuration):** In this step you will specify particular Tax Jurisdictions. You can create different Tax Jurisdictions for a particular region by specifying zip codes, country codes, etc. Tax rates will be applied to whatever level of information you specify for each Jurisdiction. For example, if you specify only the country code as US, all shoppers with a US address (regardless of state, county etc.) will be included in this jurisdiction. **Note:** Country Code and Region Code you enter in the **Jurisdictions Edit** page must match the codes you used in step 1.
4. **Create and configure new Tax Jurisdiction Groups (Go to Administration > Order system > Tax Configuration):** New Tax Jurisdiction Groups created here can include multiple Tax Jurisdictions.
5. **Create and configure Taxes (Go to Administration > Order System > Tax Configuration):** Here you will specify tax rates and also associate the Tax Categories and Jurisdiction groups created in Steps 2 and 4.
6. **Associate Catalogs to the Tax Categories** created in Step 2 (Go to **Order Management > Catalogs**): Now you will switch over to the Catalog Management subsystem and link specific catalog items to the appropriate Tax Categories. This can be done on the Pricing/Inventory page within each Variation/SKU Edit page.

Method 2: Configuring Taxes Using CSV Import

Using the CSV Tax Import functionality is a convenient way to quickly setup and update tax data in bulk. Creating a CSV tax file with a specified format (see "Example Scenarios" below) will allow you to

complete steps 2 through 5 in one shot (above in Method 1). Step 6 of Method 1 can be done manually, but you can also use the CSV import functionality in the Catalog Management subsystem to associate catalogs to tax categories. Click [here](#) to see how CSV Catalog Import works.

Import your CSV tax file into your Commerce Manager by following the steps:

1. Select the Administration tab in the Commerce Manager.
2. In the navigation tree drill down to Taxes: **Order System > Taxes Configuration > Taxes**.
3. Click **Import Taxes** on the menu bar.
4. Choose **Add New File** and then **Browse** to select and upload your CSV tax file. The path of your chosen file will appear in the field.
5. Click **Upload File** and then **Save The File** icon. The CSV tax file will appear under the **Files Available for Import** section.
6. Select and highlight the CSV file and click the "Start Import" button.
7. Your import should begin and complete successfully in a pop-up dialog box.
8. You will now be able to view your tax setup in the Commerce Manager.

If you want to edit the existing setup, simply repeat steps 1 through 8 with your modified file.

Caution: Re-importing CSV files only edits existing information or adds new data, but nothing gets deleted. If you delete an entire row of data in the CSV file, you must manually delete those entries in the Commerce Manager. If in doubt, you can always delete all the tax data and perform the CSV tax import from scratch.

Sample CSV Files and Example Scenarios

Example 1: Single Tax Per Catalog Item Based on a Single Jurisdiction

For example, if your variable is State, then you can specify the tax rate on a state-level. So let's say CA is 9% and MA is 6%. If you placed an order from California, then 9% sales tax would be applied during checkout.

Jurisdiction	Jurisdiction Group	Tax Rate	Tax Category
California	CA Tax Group	9%	General Sales
Massachusetts	MA Tax Group	6%	General Sales

A sample tax CSV file called test.csv is available in this directory – [taxcsvsample1.zip].

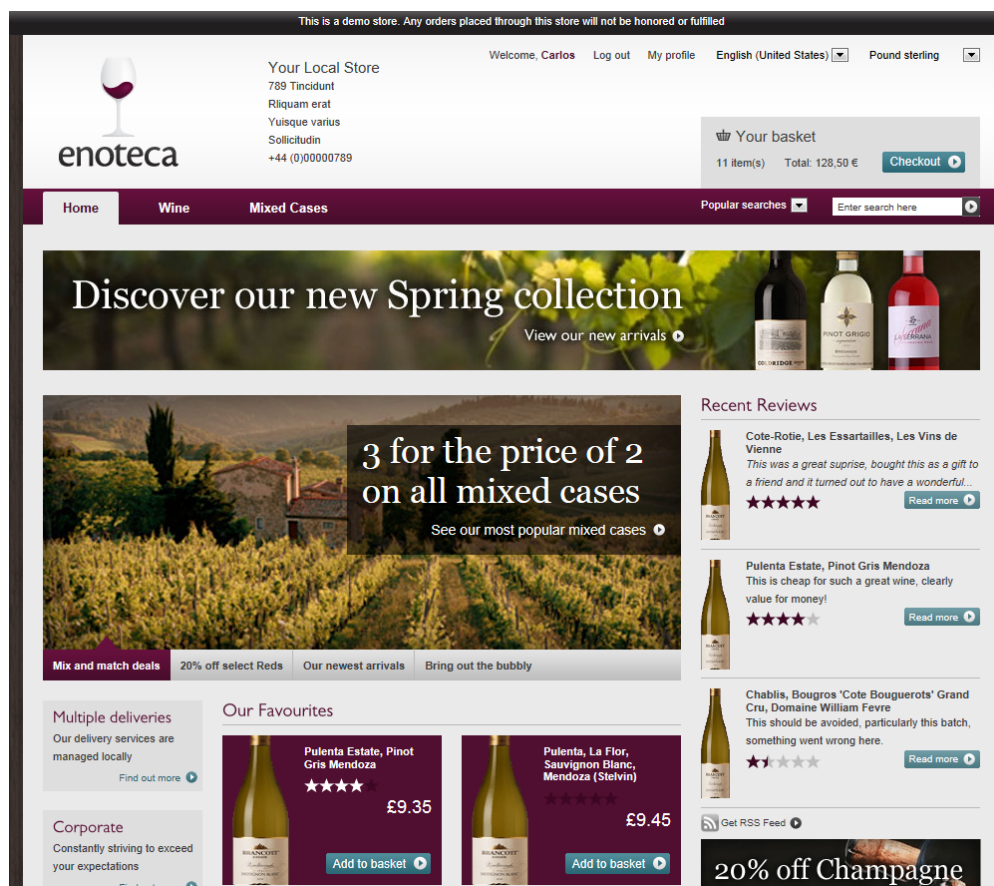
Example 2: Two or More Taxes Per Catalog Item Based on More Than One Jurisdiction

For example, if you have a luxury item that requires State and Federal tax to be applied, then you can specify tax rates on a state and federal level. So let's say a luxury item purchased in CA has a 9% state tax rate and a federal tax rate of 3%. Both taxes would be applied during checkout.

Jurisdiction	Jurisdiction Group	Tax Rate	Tax Category
California General	CA GS Tax Group	9%	General Sales
Massachusetts General	MA GS Tax Group	6%	General Sales
California Luxury	CA LX Tax Group	9%	Luxury Sales
Massachusetts Luxury	MA LX Tax Group	6%	Luxury Sales
US Federal Luxury	US LX Tax Group	3%	Luxury Sales

Sample Site

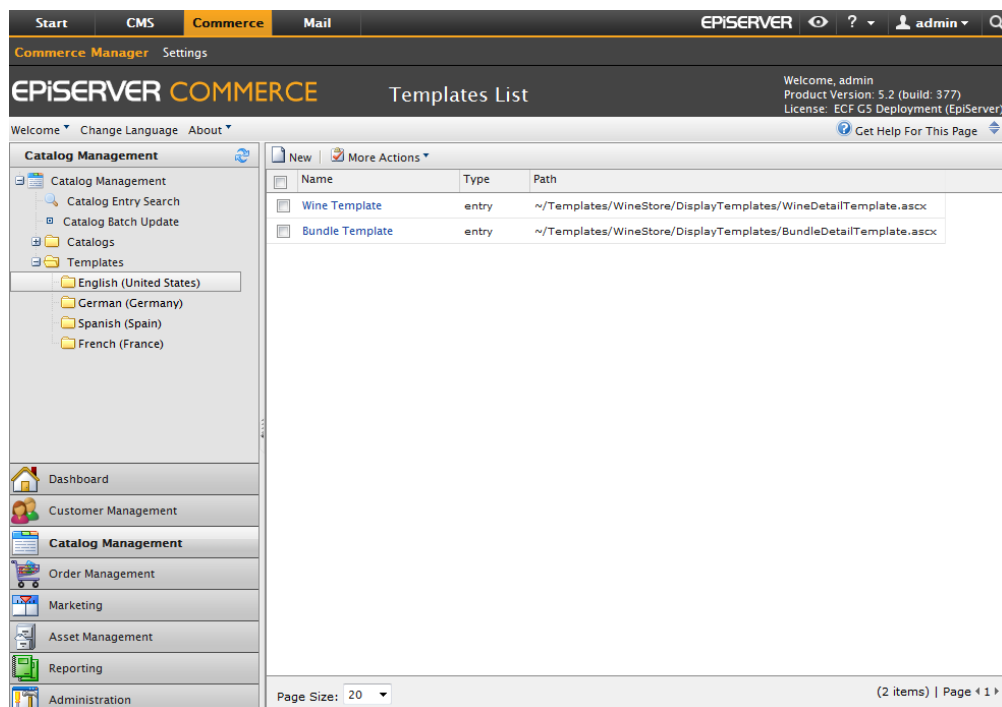
The "Enoteca winestore" sample site is a fully functional B2C and B2B e-commerce solution for a mid-size retailer.



The site provides a set of demo templates to illustrate the functionality of EPiServer Commerce. The sample template package is intended as inspiration when you build your own e-commerce site based on EPiServer Commerce. In the following the templates included in the package are described in more detail, explaining the setup and the possibilities with EPiServer Commerce to both developers and end-users.

Display Templates

To be able to display different products on the e-commerce site you need to define the display templates to be used. These can be different for different language groups on the site. On the EPiServer Commerce sample site, the display templates will automatically be imported and configured during the installation procedure. However, when new templates have been created you may want to define their use in the system, or modify the use of existing ones. This is done in Commerce Manager in the **Catalog Management** sub-system under **Templates**.



Adding a display template

1. Under **Catalog Management**, select **Templates** and click **New**.
2. In the **Name** field, enter the name of the display template, for instance "WineTemplate".
3. In the **Friendly Name** field, enter the display name for the template, for instance "Wine Template".
4. In the **Type** field, enter the type of display template, for instance "entry".
5. In the **Path** field, add the path to the display template, for instance:
~/Templates/WineStore/DisplayTemplates/WineDetailTemplate.ascx.
6. Click **OK** to save your changes.

Updating an existing display template

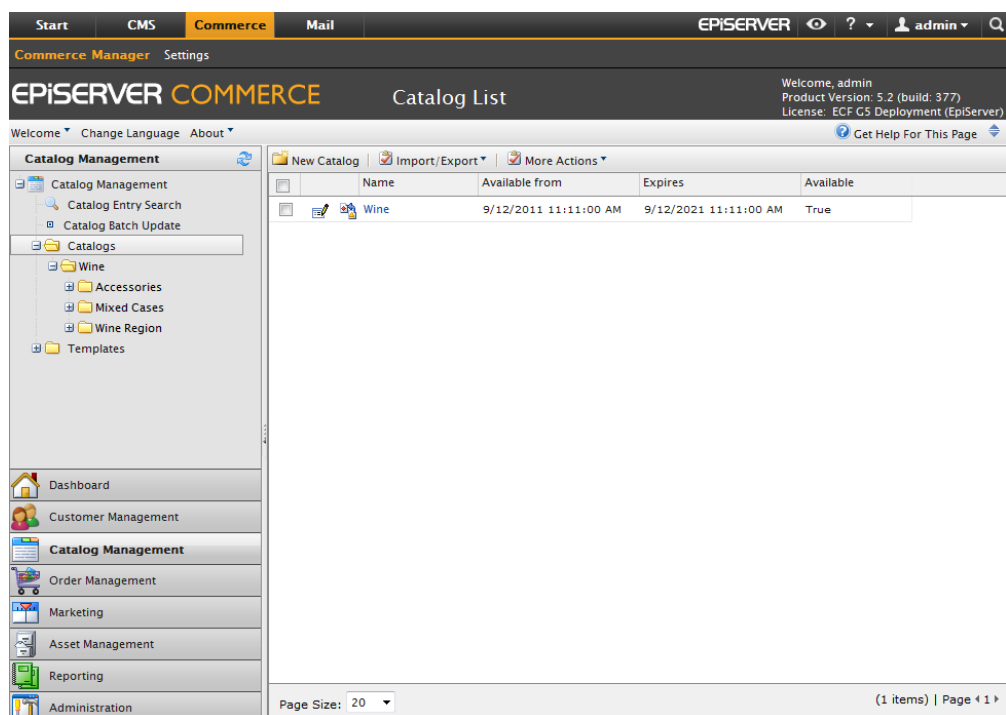
1. Under **Catalog Management**, select **Templates** and the language version and template that you want to update.
2. In the **Name** field, enter the name of the display template.
3. In the **Friendly Name** field, enter the display name of the display template.
4. In the **Type** field, enter the type of display template.
5. In the **Path** field, add the path to the display template.
6. Click **OK** to save your changes.

Sample Catalog

The product catalog contains information regarding brands and sales items. This information will either be displayed in the public site, or used for pricing and promotions. Product catalogs need to be imported into EPiServer Commerce. This will normally be done automatically during the installation procedure for the EPiServer Commerce sample site.

However, there may be occasions where you need to import a product catalog, and the procedure is therefore described in the following. There are different ways of doing this, and in this example we describe how you manually import the sample catalog for the sample site, using the import/export function in Commerce Manager. When product catalogs have been imported, they also need to be **indexed**, in order for the product search function to incorporate any changes.

Additional information on how to import product catalogs can be found in the *Catalog Management* section.



Importing the Sample Catalog

The sample site includes two product catalogs providing the "everything" and the "brand" view.

1. In Commerce Manager, select **Catalog Management** and then **Catalogs**.
2. Click on **Import/Export** and then **Import Catalog**, this takes you to the **Import Catalog** screen.
3. Select the catalog zip file, in this case "CatalogExport_Catalog_Wine_Sample.zip" and click **Start Import**.
4. When the import has completed, click **Close Window**.
5. Select "CatalogExport_Catalog_Wine_Sample.zip" and click **Start Import**.
6. When the import has completed, click **Close Window**.

Import

It is strongly recommended that you back up your ECF database before performing import.

To import catalog, please pick up an existing file from the grid below or upload a new one. Then click the button 'Start Import' to start importing.

Add New File

Files Available For Import:

Actions	File Name	Size	Created	Last Updated
Download Delete	CatalogExport_Catalog_Wine_Sample.zip	742.90 KB	Today, 2:35 PM	Today, 2:34 PM
1				

Page 1 of 1 (1 items)

[Start Import](#)

Indexing the Sample Catalog

After importing a product catalog, it also needs to be indexed.

1. In Commerce Manager, select **Administration, System Settings** and then **Search Index**.
2. Click **Rebuild Index** to index the catalog for the first time. The **Build Index** option is used for future updates when you import the same catalog again and only want to index the changes.

Start

CMS

Commerce

Mail

EPiSERVER

?

admin

Commerce Manager

Settings

EPiSERVER

COMMERCE

Search Manager

Welcome, admin
Product Version: 5.2 (build: 377)
License: ECF G5 Deployment (EPiServer)

Welcome

Change Language

About

Administration

Administration

System Settings

Dictionaries

Logs

Common Settings

Business Foundation

Workflow

Search Index

Left Menu

Catalog System

Order System

Dashboard

Customer Management

Catalog Management

Order Management

Marketing

Asset Management

Reporting

Administration

Index

Search Configuration

Default Search Provider: LuceneSearchProvider

Installed Search Providers: SolrSearchProvider; LuceneSearchProvider;

Indexers: catalog (built 2/8/2012 5:26:50 PM);

Index Operations

Rebuild Index

Build Index

Rebuild the Search Index. This operation will cause complete index rebuild.

Build the Search Index. This operation will build the index for items updated since last build.

Page Templates

EPiServer Commerce is based on the e-commerce module Commerce Manager and EPiServer CMS for managing content. The EPiServer Commerce package includes a **sample website** with a set of page templates with related page types. The page templates provide an example of how you can work with EPiServer Commerce to create your own web publishing and online store platform. Use the page templates as

inspiration and adapt them to your own online store environment. The sample site contains sample product data stored in a product database.

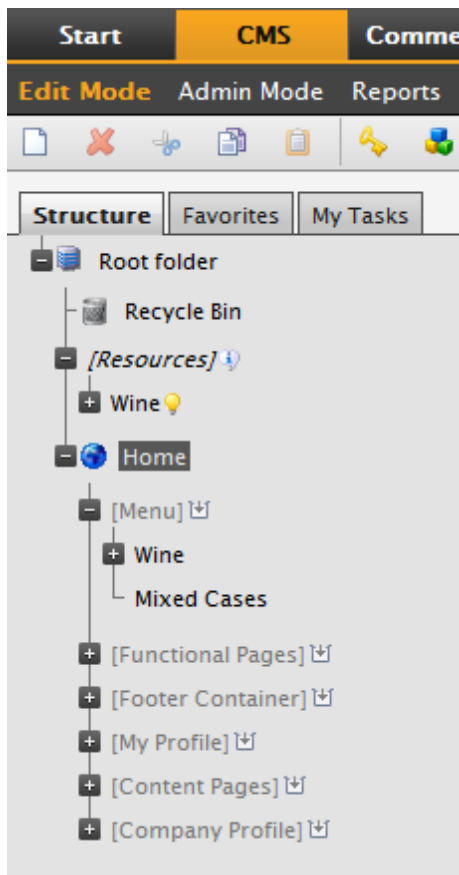
	Name	Description
Create	[WineStore] Create Account Page	Used to create a new user account
Create	[WineStore] Compare Page	This page type displays a list of products to be compared.
Create	[WineStore] Wine Detail Page	This page type contains the data for a wine.
Create	[WineStore] Shopping Basket Page	List added products.
Create	[WineStore] Login Page	This page will be used for user to login.
Create	[WineStore] Search Result Page	Used to show search result.
Create	[WineStore] Company Checkout Page	Checkout page for company user.
Create	[WineStore] Address Book Page	Page displays address book.
Create	[WineStore] My Orders Page	Page displays order history.
Create	[WineStore] Product Listing	This page type displays a list of products.
Create	[WineStore] My Page	Page contains information for standard users.
Create	[WineStore] Container Page	This page type will be used as a container and will not contains any data.
Create	[WineStore] My Settings Page	Page displays profile settings for users.
Create	[WineStore] Wish List Page	Page displays wish list for users.
Create	[WineStore] Order Detail Page	Detail information of a order.
Create	[WineStore] Standard Page	Standard Page
Create	[WineStore] Company Order Detail	Company order detail page.
Create	[WineStore] Edit Member	Page used to edit an existing company member.
Create	[WineStore] Create Member	Page used to create a new company member.
Create	[WineStore] Checkout Page	[WineStore] Checkout Page
Create	[WineStore] Members List	Page displays the list of members.
Create	[WineStore] Home Page	The start page is the main entry point to the web site containing a main and secondary body as well as different listings for news and events.
Create	[WineStore] Company Page	Page displays company profile overview.



The templates, tabs, fields and functions described in this documentation refers to a "standard installation" of an EPiServer Commerce sample site. The standard functions and fields of EPiServer CMS are not described here. Please refer to the EPiServer CMS documentation for editors and administrators available on world.episerver.com.

Page Tree Structure

When installing the EPiServer Commerce package with a sample site, a number of pages will be created and displayed in a specific structure in the page tree. Some of them will show editorial content. Some pages are used as containers for other pages. These will not display any content of their own and will be hidden in navigation menus.



The home page is built using the **Home** page type. The Home page contains numerous settings affecting the entire website, for instance top menus, search and login. This is also where you define pages to be used for shopping carts, payments and checkout.

The main menu navigation is built up by the page structure under **[Menu]**. The products listing is retrieved from the **[Resources]** section where the **Product Listing** page type which is used for displaying the products, fetching product information from the product catalog.

The **[Functional Pages]** section of the site structure holds the display templates for a number of general functions such as **Checkout**, **Login** and **Create Account**. These have their own specific page types linking to functions in the Commerce Manager module.

The **[My Profile]** section contains display templates for personal settings for online shoppers. Page types used here are for instance **My Orders**, **My Page** and **Wishlist**.

Editorial content pages are most often based on the page type **Standard Page**. These are pages where editors can create and edit content the usual way in EPiServer CMS. Examples of editorial content are the pages under the **[Content Pages]** and **[Footer Container]**.

The **[Company Profile]** section of the site structure holds display templates related to the B2B part of the sample site. This includes page types such as **Company Order Detail**, **Create Member** and **Company Page**.

Each of the page types mentioned here are described in more detail in the following sections of this documentation.

Home Page

The home page is based on the **Home Page** page type and is normally defined when the website is installed. The page holds a number of settings with references to other pages on the website. The main settings of the home page will most likely not be touched very often after the setup of the site. Other parts like special offer advertises and product campaign content may be updated more frequently.

Content Tab

Below are the properties that can be changed in Edit mode under the **Content** tab of the home page.

Name

The name of the page, as displayed in the page tree.

About Us Page

Provides linking to display content from the **About Us** page section stored in [Footer Container].

Deliveries Page

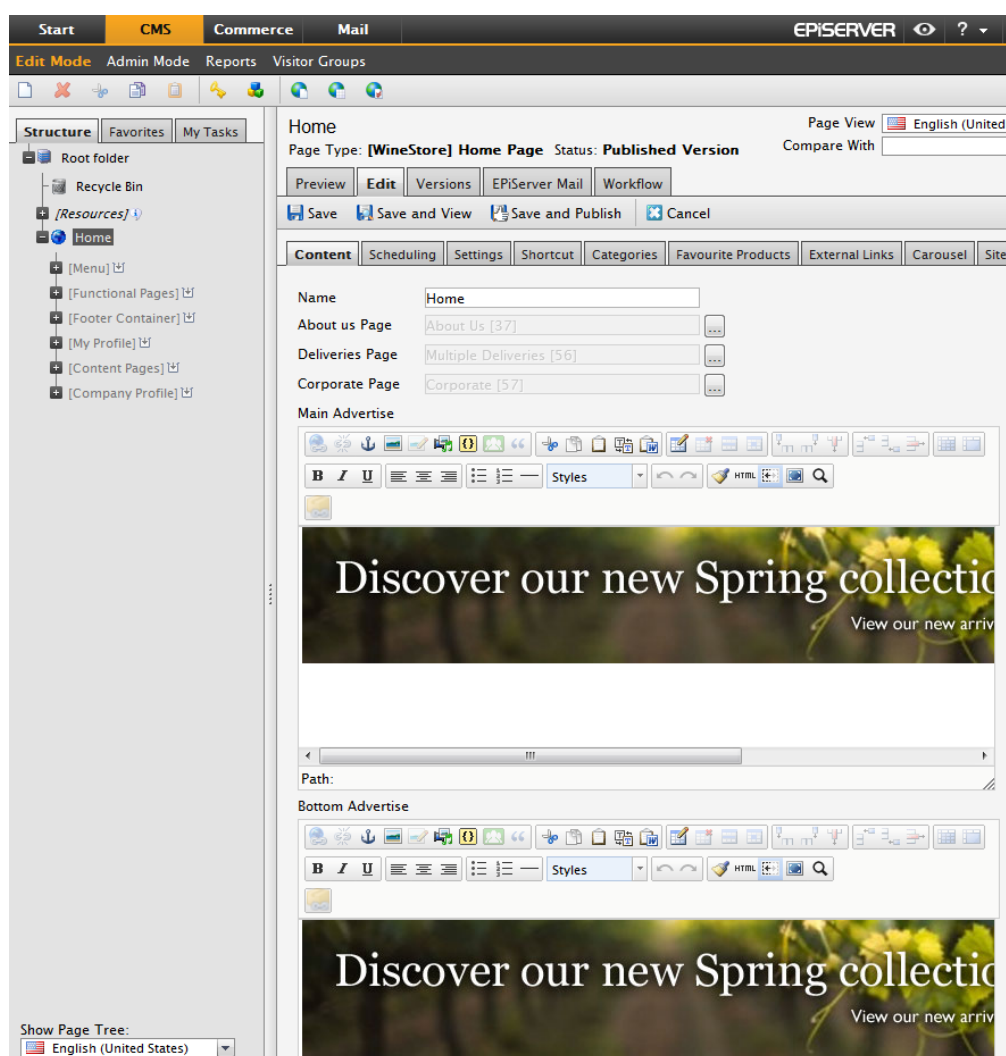
Provides linking to display content from the **Multiple Deliveries** page stored in [Content Pages].

Corporate Page

Provides linking to display content from the **Corporate** page stored in [Content Pages].

Main Advertise

Provides an editor area for adding editorial content to the main advertisement area at the top of the home page.



Bottom Advertise

Provides an editor area for adding editorial content to the advertisement area at the bottom of the home page

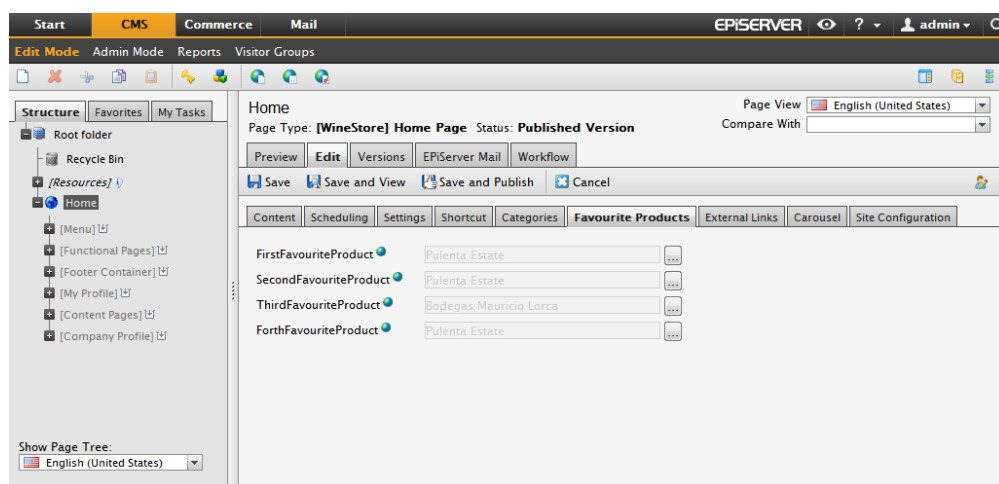
About Us Image

Provides linking to an image to be displayed with the "About Us" section on the home page.

Favorite Products Tab

Below are the properties that can be changed in Edit mode under the **Favorite Products** tab of the Home page.

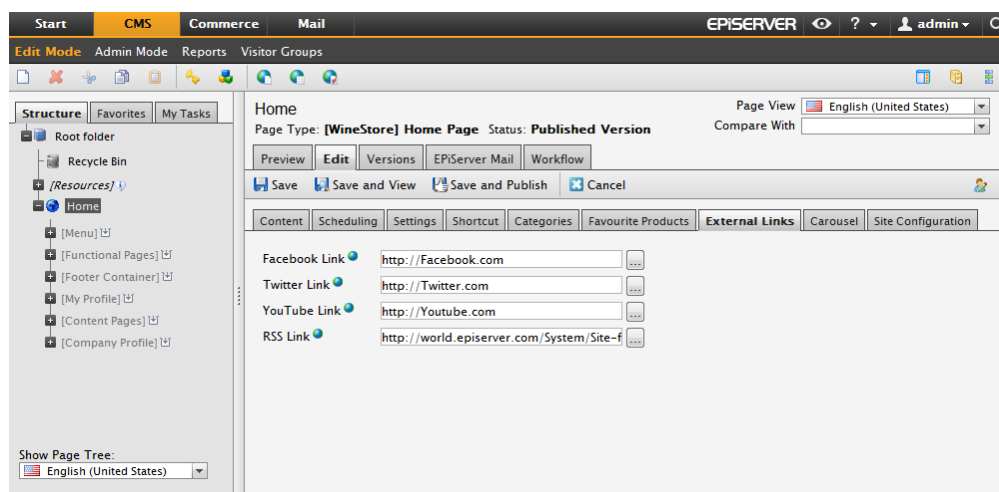
On this tab you define links to the (four) selected favorite products displayed under "Our Favorites" on the home page. The products are defined using the product link dialog which allows you to choose products from the product catalog. Find out more about this feature in the **Product Picker Property** section of the EPiServer Commerce Developer Guide.



External Links Tab

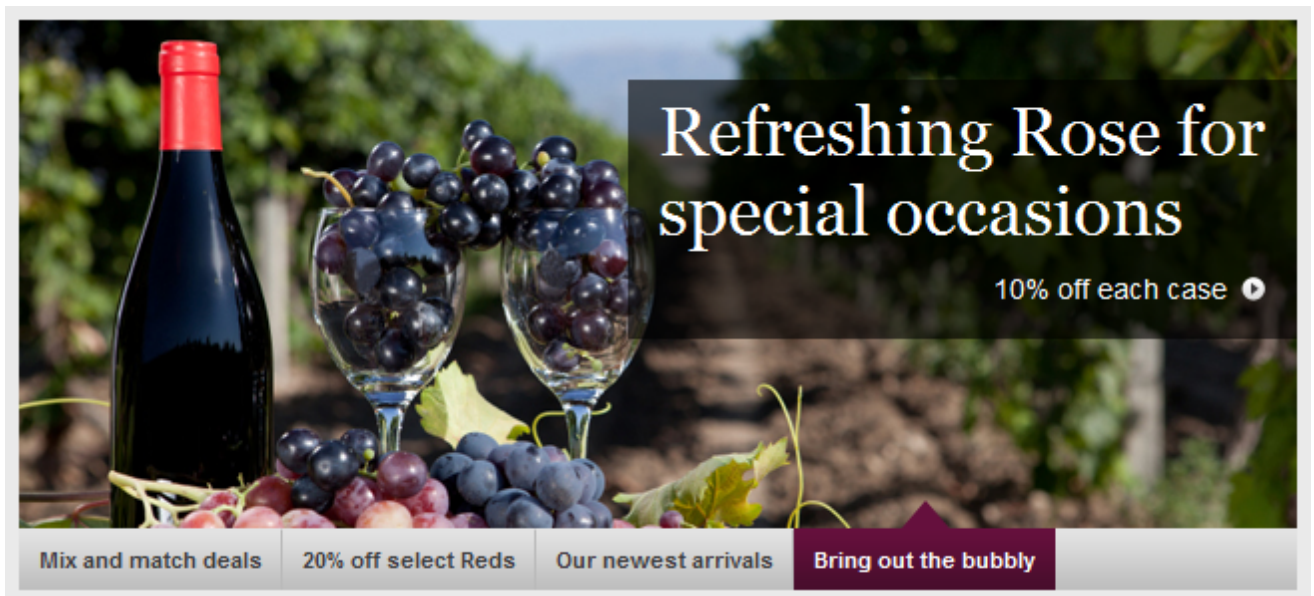
Below are the properties that can be changed in Edit mode under the **External Links** tab of the home page.

On this tab you define external links to the link selection displayed under "Follow Us" in the footer section at the very bottom of the home page. The links are defined using the ordinary link dialog tool in EPiServer CMS.



Carousel Tab

Below are the properties that can be changed in Edit mode under the **Carousel** tab of the home page. The "carousel" illustrates a common feature where you define a number of images that replaces each other in a slideshow. The images are selected from the file manager in EPiServer CMS.



It is possible to define four images, and for each image you can set the following:

- **Carousel Tab Name** - name displayed on the tab under each image.
- **Carousel Caption** - text displayed on the image for a selected tab.
- **Carousel Promotion Link** - the target link when clicking on a carousel image (defined in the link dialog).
- **Carousel Promotion Link Title** - the link text on a selected carousel image.

Start CMS Commerce Mail EPISERVER admin

Edit Mode Admin Mode Reports Visitor Groups

Structure Favorites My Tasks

Root folder
Recycle Bin
/Resources
Home
[Menu]
[Functional Pages]
[Footer Container]
[My Profile]
[Content Pages]
[Company Profile]

Show Page Tree:
English (United States)

Home
Page Type: [WineStore] Home Page Status: Published Version
Page View: English (United States)
Compare With:

Preview Edit Versions EPiServer Mail Workflow
Save Save and View Save and Publish Cancel

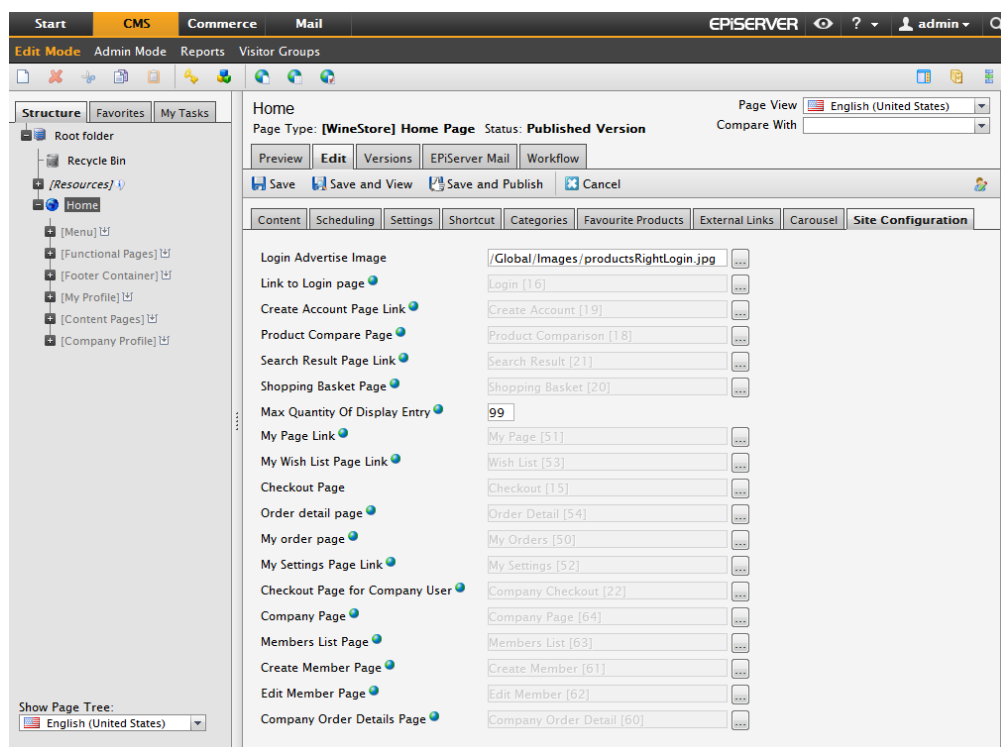
Content Scheduling Settings Shortcut Categories Favourite Products External Links **Carousel** Site Configuration

First Carousel Image Uri	/Global/Images/Carousel/home-adv-1.jpg
First Carousel Tab Name	Mix and match deals
First Carousel Caption	3 for the price of 2 on all mixed cases
First Carousel Promotion Link	Mixed Cases [25]
First Carousel Promotion Link Title	See our most popular mixed cases
Second Carousel Image Uri	/Global/Images/Carousel/iStock_000012
Second Carousel Tab Name	20% off select Reds
Second Carousel Caption	Save on Reds from Merlot to Malbec
Second Carousel Promotion Link	Red Wines [26]
Second Carousel Promotion Link Title	Sample every shade
Third Carousel Image Uri	/Global/Images/Carousel/iStock_000017
Third Carousel Tab Name	Our newest arrivals
Third Carousel Caption	Critical acclaim awaits these budding stars
Third Carousel Promotion Link	White Wines [27]
Third Carousel Promotion Link Title	Sample every new addition
Fourth Carousel Image Uri	/Global/Images/Carousel/iStock_000017
Fourth Carousel Tab Name	Bring out the bubbly
Fourth Carousel Caption	Refreshing Rose for special occasions
Fourth Carousel Promotion Link	Rose Wines [28]
Fourth Carousel Promotion Link Title	10% off each case

Site Configuration Tab

The settings under the **Site Configuration** tab when you edit the home page, are common website configuration items that are defined as properties on the start page and will be inherited to the sub-pages. Most often these settings are defined when the website is installed but it may be necessary to update them at some point.

Here you define settings for both a B2C (consumer) and a B2B (company) scenario. Note that the related function pages must be created first before you can define them on the home page.



Open the home page for editing in Edit mode to change the settings for the different properties. For the page links, select the appropriate page in the page tree structure and save and publish the page to update the settings.

Login Advertise Image

Here you define the image to be displayed to the right in the login page for the site, intended as an advertising space. Select an image in the EPiServer CMS file manager.

Link to Login Page

Defines the *login page* to be used when visitors log in to the website.

Create Account Page Link

This defines the display page for *creating an account* when a shopper registers to the website.

Product Compare Page

This setting defines the display page to be used when *comparing products*.

Search Result Page Link

This setting defines the display page for *presenting search results* on the website.

Shopping Basket Page

This is the page to be used when displaying a *shopping basket*.

Max. Quantity Of Display Entry

Here you define the maximum number of products to be displayed in a product listing. If you have a large amount of products in specific categories, it might be wise to limit the display number.

My Page Link

This page type displays a snapshot of recent *account activities* for a customer.

My Wish List Page Link

This setting defines the wish list page to be used when displaying a *customers wish list*.

Checkout Page

The page to be used when displaying the *check out page* for a customer.

Order Detail Page

Used for displaying the *details for a specific order*, when selected from the My Order page.

My Order Page

This page type displays the *order history* for a specific customer

My Settings Page Link

Here you define the page type to be used for displaying *account details* for a customer.

Checkout Page for Company User

Used for displaying a *checkout page for a company user* in the B2B scenario of the sample site.

Company Page

This page type displays a snapshot of *recent account activities for a company*.

Members List Page

This page type is used for *listing company members*.

Create Members Page

Here you set the display page for *creating a company member*.

Edit Member Page

This page type is used for *editing the settings of a company member*.

Company Order Details Page

This page type displays the *details of a company order*.

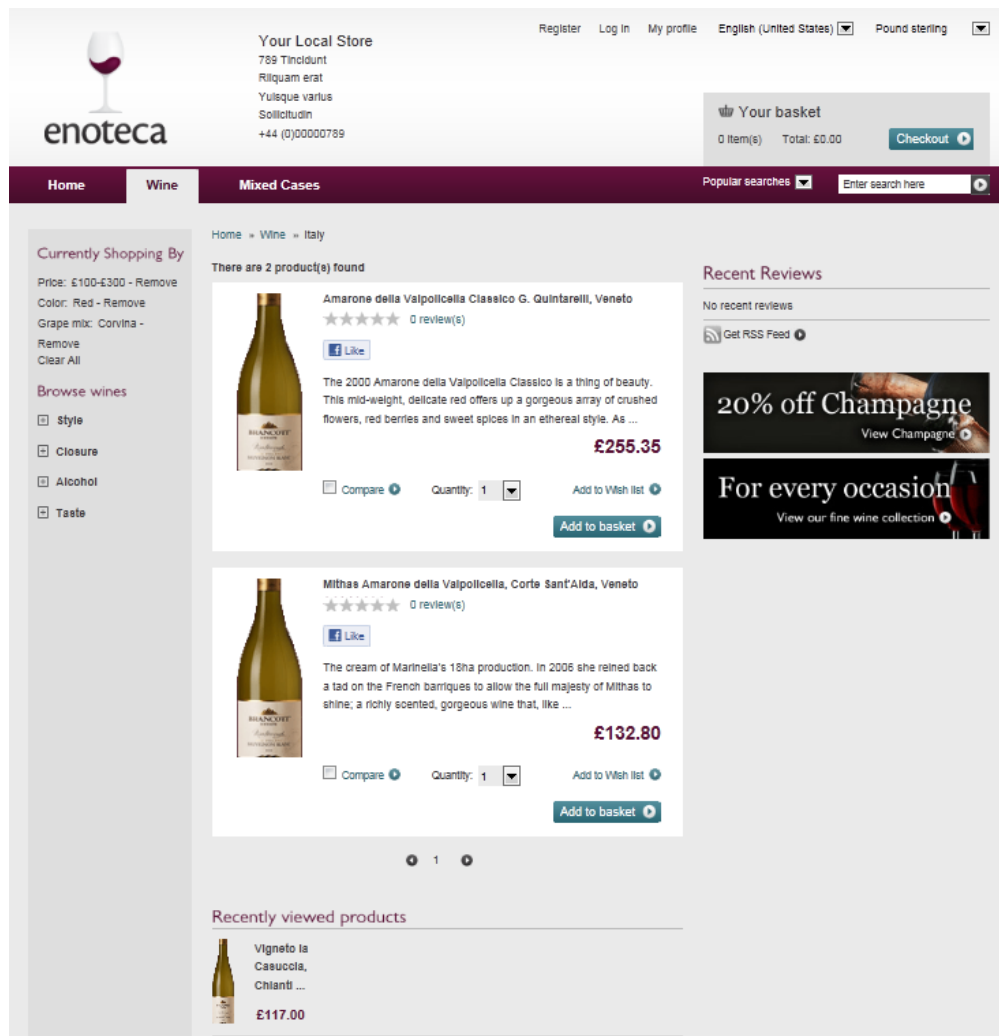
Each of the page types mentioned here are described in more detail in the following sections of this documentation.

Product Listing

The page type **Product Listing** is used for listing product information from the product catalog in Commerce Manager. The listing will be fetched from the selected product category (node) in the product catalog and will display an image of the product together with information about ratings, reviews and social plug-in features.

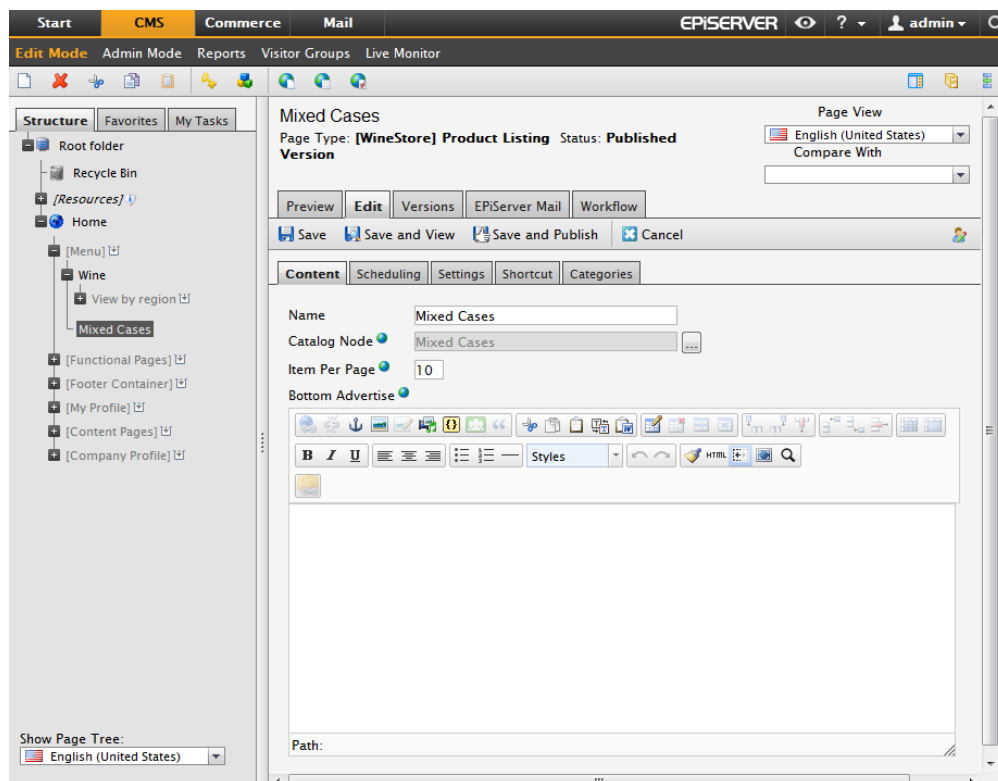
In the left column of the page it is possible to filter the product display according to a preset product categories. To the right on the page, information related to selected products will be shown. Under the product listing, the recently viewed products are displayed.

The page functionality also includes a product compare option as well as the **Add to basket** button for each product in the list. You can define the number of items to be listed per page, and a pager feature allows for browsing between the listed pages.



To define a product listing, create a page based on the page type **Product Listing** and select the desired product category (node) in the **Catalog Node name** field. The categories (nodes) available here are retrieved from the [Resources] section in the page tree structure which is set up at installation. This in turn reflects what is defined in the product catalog in Commerce Manager.

In the **Item Per Page** field you can define the number of items to be displayed on each page. The content of the **Bottom Advertise** editor field is displayed at the very left-hand bottom of the product listing page.

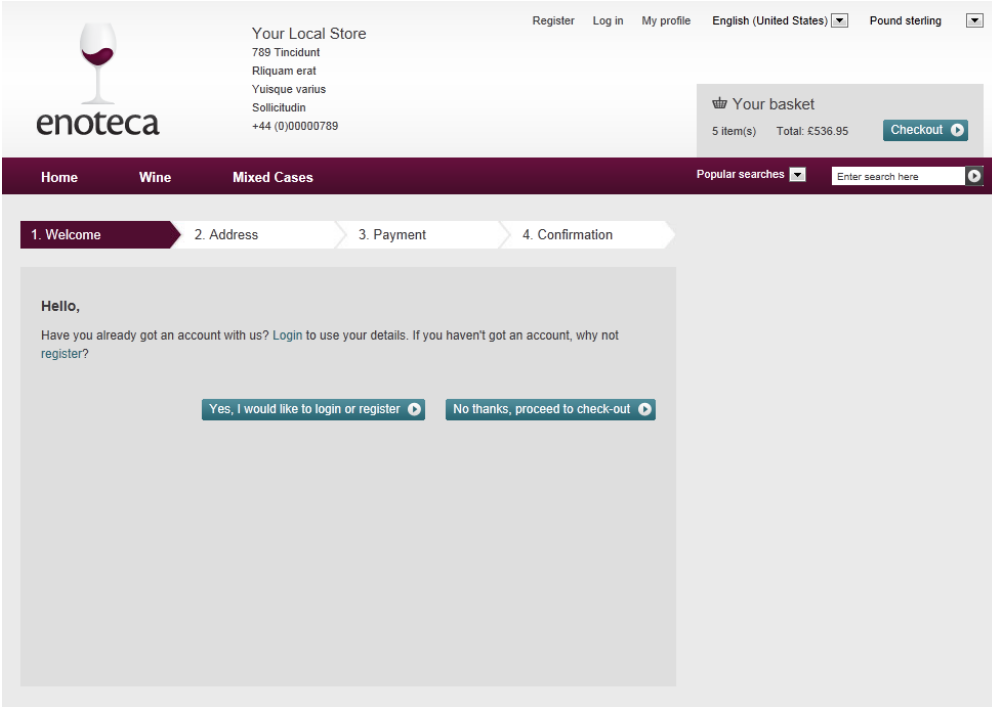


Functional Pages

The pages under the **[Functional Pages]** section in the page tree structure of the sample site holds a number of page types with general e-commerce functionality such as login, checkout and search result presentation. These page types are described more in the following sections of this documentation.

Check Out

The purpose of the **Check Out** page type is to display the steps of the check out procedure when a customer wants to finalize a purchase. The check out procedure is initiated when the customer selects the **Checkout** option. The checkout procedure may look differently depending on the payment and shipping options defined in the system. On this sample site the checkout procedure has four steps: **Welcome**, **Address**, **Payment** and **Confirmation**.

Step 1: Welcome

The screenshot displays the 'Step 1: Welcome' page of the Enoteca website. The header includes the Enoteca logo, contact information for 'Your Local Store' (789 Tincidunt, Rilquam erat, Yisque varius, Sollicitudin, +44 (0)00000789), and navigation links (Register, Log in, My profile). It also shows the current language (English (United States)) and currency (Pound sterling). A shopping basket summary indicates 5 items with a total of £536.95 and a Checkout button. The main navigation bar features Home, Wine, and Mixed Cases, along with a search bar. The checkout progress bar shows four steps: 1. Welcome (active), 2. Address, 3. Payment, and 4. Confirmation. The main content area greets the user and asks if they have an account, providing buttons for 'Yes, I would like to login or register' and 'No thanks, proceed to check-out'.

enoteca

Your Local Store
789 Tincidunt
Rilquam erat
Yisque varius
Sollicitudin
+44 (0)00000789

Register Log in My profile English (United States) Pound sterling

Your basket
5 item(s) Total: £536.95 Checkout

Home Wine Mixed Cases Popular searches Enter search here

1. Welcome 2. Address 3. Payment 4. Confirmation

Hello,
Have you already got an account with us? Login to use your details. If you haven't got an account, why not register?

Yes, I would like to login or register No thanks, proceed to check-out

In this first step the customer has the option to either log in or register to the site, or to proceed directly to the next step without registering.

Step 2: Address

1. Welcome

2. Address

3. Payment

4. Confirmation

Deliver and Billing Address

I. Choose delivery address

Address Title

Home

First Name

Mary

Last Name

Webster

Company

(Optional)

Email Address

mary@somemail.com

Phone Number

2345678

Country

United States

Postcode

CA 456789

Address Line 1

111 First Street

Address Line 2

(Optional)

Town

Sun City

County

(Optional)

Edit Address

Choose a delivery option

Free delivery (2-3 days)

☒

£0.00

First class delivery (1-2 days)

☐

£10.00

Express delivery (1 day)

☐

£20.00

2. Choose billing address



Different to delivery address

Here the customer enters name, address and contact details, if these are not already registered in the system. If they are, there will be an option to update the existing information. The available shipping options are selected in this step. It is also possible to choose a different billing address.

Step 3: Payment

1. Welcome 2. Address **3. Payment** 4. Confirmation

Payment

	Quantity	Price	Total
 Amarone della Valpolicella Classico G. Quintarelli, Veneto	2	£255.35	£510.70
 Bardolino Chiaretto DOC, Monte Del Fra	3	£8.75	£26.25

Subtotal	£536.95 (exc. VAT)
Shipping cost	£0.00 (exc. VAT)
Order discount	-£0.00 (exc. VAT)
TOTAL to pay	£536.95 (exc. VAT)

Payment Method

☐ Gift Card

Payment by Gift Card (exc. VAT)




Remain to pay (exc. VAT)

By one payment method below

[Update remain to pay](#)

☒ Pay By Phone

☐ Pay By Credit Card

Card number

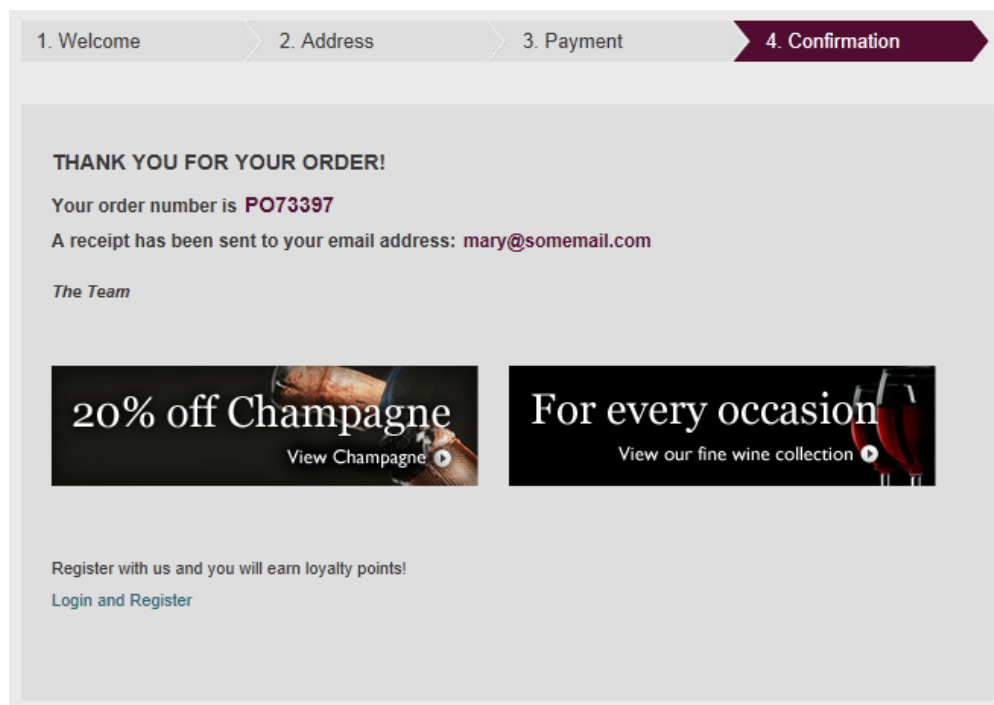
Name on the card

Expiry date 1 / 2010

CVV

[Back](#) [Continue](#)

Here the total order sum is calculated, and the desired payment method is selected. The sample site also has a giftcard option where the gift card details are entered and the total sum is recalculated based on this.

Step 4: Confirmation

The final step contains the order confirmation and displays the order number the customer. Also in this step an order confirmation email is sent to the customer.

The **Check Out** page is created in Edit mode and then defined in the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

For more information on different payment providers in EPiServer Commerce, please refer to the *Payment Providers section*.

Login

The **Login** page provides a login possibility for both website editors and administrators, as well as registered customers. A user name and password is required. The page has functionality for password recovery. It is also possible to log in to the site using Facebook account credentials.

The Login page is also the entrance for registration of new customers to the site. Clicking on the **Register** option will take the user to the *Create Account* page. To register, a name and email address is needed, together with a user name and a password.

Most of the functionality of the **Login** page is defined in code. However, in Edit mode you will find and editor field where it is possible to design a welcome message to new users registering on the site.


When created, the **Login** page must be defined in the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

Wine Detail

The **Wine Detail** page is a "product page", and as such plays a central role on this type of site, since it is used for displaying product details and related information. The page is displayed when a customer selects a specific product, and will display product information from the product catalog of Commerce Manager.

The product information is displayed in the center area, with options for comparing, adding to wish list and buying. Below the product information, any related review or ratings information will be displayed. The rest of the page is built up displaying other information related to the product. The information is selected based on type of product and meta data available in the product catalog.

[Home](#) » [Wine](#) » [Italy](#) » [Luciano Sandrone](#)



Barolo, Le Vigne, Az. Agr. Luciano Sandrone, Piedmont

★★★★★ 100 %

[Like](#)

Sandrone's dark ruby-colored 2001 Barolo Le Vigne presents a fantastic nose of flowers, minerals and crushed raspberries followed by generous amounts of very ripe red fruits, mint and eucalyptus notes with well-integrated oak and fine tannins. It is noticeably more structured than the 2000, with more balance, freshness and a longer finish. Traditional in design, but modern in execution, the 2001 Barolo Le Vigne presents tremendous harmony and elegance. Ideally a few years of cellaring are warranted although the wine is already drinking well today.

Wine Country: Italy
Color: Red
Style: Italy
Closure: Cork
Grape mix: Nebbiolo
Alcohol: 14
Taste: Dry
Vegetarians: False
Vegans: False

£117.00

[Compare](#) [Quantity](#) [Add to Wish List](#) [Add to Basket](#)


Reviews **Features In**

Fantastic!
admin, February 2012

This wine has a fantastic bouquet, you should try it out.

★★★★★ [Remove](#)

Italy



The wines of Italy offer breathtaking variety. From bright, fresh Pinot Grigio to the deep reds of Barolo, Italy has something for everyone, especially given our great range of wines.

[Find Out More](#)

"This wine has a fantastic bouquet, you should try it out. ..."

- admin
[Remove](#)

20% off Champagne
[View Champagne](#)

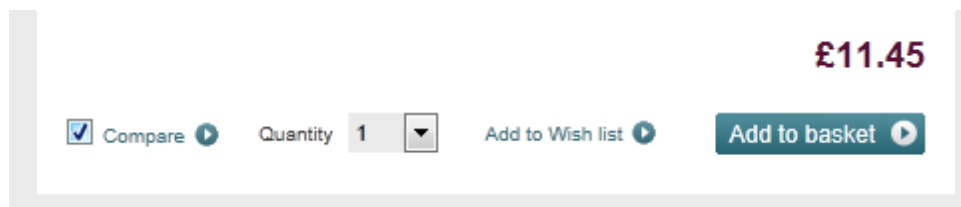
For every occasion
[View our fine wine collection](#)

20% off Champagne
[View Champagne](#)

The Wine Detail page type is linked to the information stored about the product in the product database. For instance, information such as name, code, catalog image, and display price is collected from the Commerce Manager product catalog. The page type contains no editable information.

Compare



The **Compare** page type holds functionality for displaying selected products for comparison. For each product you want to compare, you can select the **Compare** option, which will add the product to the Compare page. This page can then be accessed by clicking the **Compare** link/button.



The selected products are listed next to each other together with related product features, for easy overview and comparison. You can compare up to four products at the same time. A product can be removed from the comparison list, or added to the shopping cart or the wish list. The selected products will remain for display on the compared products page until they are removed or a new product selection is done by the user.

Compare products

Wine SKU

	 <p>Remove</p> <p>Barolo, Le Vigne, Az. Agr. Luciano Sandrone, Piedmont</p> <p>★★★★★</p> <p>£117.00</p> <p>Sandrone's dark ruby-colored 2001 Barolo Le Vigne presents a fantastic nose of flowers, minerals and crushed raspberries followed by generous amounts of very ripe red fruits, mint and eucalyptus ...</p> <p>Quantity: 1</p> <p>Add to basket</p> <p>Add to Wish List</p>	 <p>Remove</p> <p>Yarra Yering Dry Red No.2 Shiraz, Yarra Valley, Victoria</p> <p>★★★★★</p> <p>£51.00</p> <p>Predominantly Shiraz but with smatterings of both Vignier and Marsanne, both of which imbue a welcome floral note and a touch of lightness to the meaty, spicy power of the Shiraz. The inclusion of ...</p> <p>Quantity: 1</p> <p>Add to basket</p> <p>Add to Wish List</p>
Display Name	Barolo, Le Vigne, Az. Agr. Luciano Sandrone, Piedmont	Yarra Yering Dry Red No.2 Shiraz, Yarra Valley, Victoria
Region		
Margin Percentage	10	10
Color	Red	Red
Style	Italy	Australia
Closure	Cork	Cork
Grape mix	Nebbiolo	Syrah/Shiraz
Alcohol	14	14
Taste	Dry	Dry
Vegetarians	False	False
Vegans	False	False
Vintage		
Size		
Maturity		

Back

Remove all products from comparison

The **(Product) Compare** page holds no information of its own so it has no editor field. When the product compare page has been created, it must be defined in the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

Create Account

The **Create Account** page type provides the possibility to create new customer accounts on the website. Personal and login information such as name, e-mail and password is entered by the user, and there is

also an option to sign up for a newsletter.

When the user has agreed to and selected the **Terms and Conditions** option and clicked on **Continue**, a confirmation message will be displayed. The account will be created and the account details are saved in the customer database of Commerce Manager. Later on account details can be updated from the *My Profile* option.

Register an account

Personal details

Title

Mr

First name

Carlos

Last name

Santana

Email address

carlos@somemail.com

Your login details

Username

Carlos

Password

••••••

(min 6 characters)

Confirm password

••••••

Newsletter (optional)

I would like to receive enoteca emails.

☒

Terms and Conditions

I agree to the enoteca [Terms and Conditions](#)

☒


Back

Continue

The **Create Account** page holds no information of its own so it has no editor field. When the page has been created, it must be defined in the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

Shopping Basket

The purpose of the **Shopping Basket** page type is to display product items that a customer has added to the personal shopping basket. The page can be accessed from several instances, and the **Your basket** view option is always available in the tope menu of the site. The total value is instantly updated when something is added to the basket.


Your basket





2 item(s)

Total: £19.45

Checkout


The Shopping Basket page provides functionality for changing the quantity of items as well as removing items from the basket. The **promotion code** option will apply any discount from a selection of related discount options from the system.

Your basket - you have 2 item(s) in your basket

	Quantity	Price	Total	Remove
 Fantasia Torrontes, Bodegas Mauricio Lorca	1	£10.00	£10.00	
 Pulenta, La Flor, Sauvignon Blanc, Mendoza (Stelvin)	1	£9.45	£9.45	

Do you have a promo code? [Apply](#)

£0.00 discount awarded in this basket

 loyalty points recieved with this purchase.
(Log in to use your points)

Subtotal	£19.45 (exc. VAT)
Order discount	-£0.00 (exc. VAT)
Company discount	-£0.00 (exc. VAT)
Total Order	£19.45 (exc. VAT)

Back [Update basket](#) [Go to checkout](#)



The "Total" value in the shopping basket display does not include promotions.

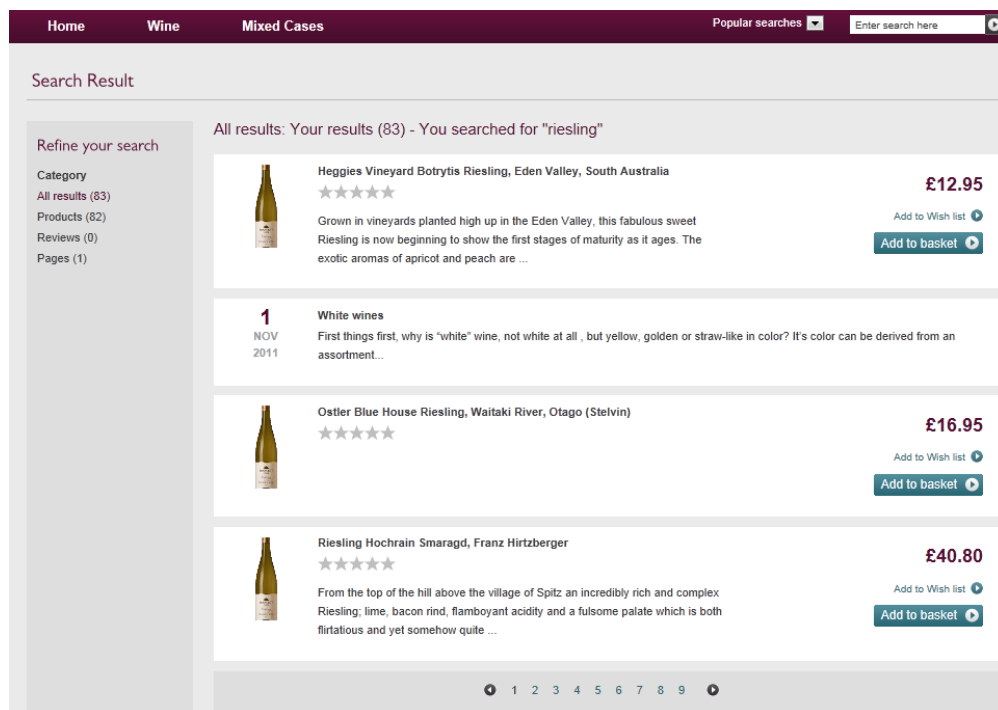
When the shopping basket information has been changed, clicking **Update basket** will cause the pricing information to be recalculated based on the new information. Information about loyalty points will also be calculated and displayed on the page. Clicking **Go to checkout** takes the customer to the first step of the shopping completion procedure.

The **Shopping Basket** page holds no information of its own so it has no editor field. When the page has been created, it must be defined in the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

Search Result

The **Search Result page** page type is used for displaying the results of a product search performed on the website. The matching search hits are shown in a listing with product details displayed. From here you have the possibility to add items to the shopping basket, or add items to the wish list. Clicking on an item will display the full product information page.

With the **Refine your search** option in the left column, the search results can be filtered based on categories.

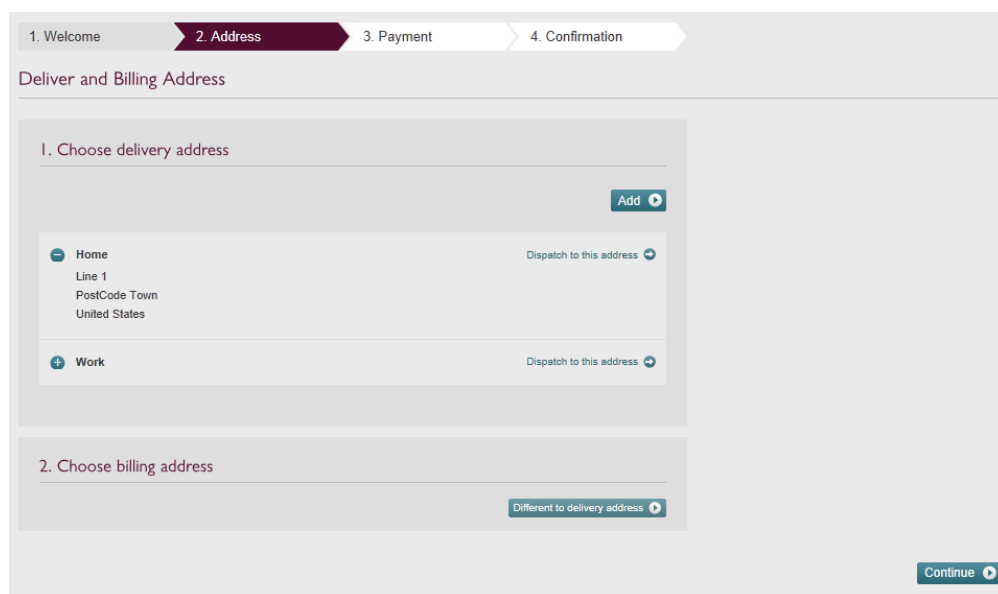


The **Search Result page** holds no information of its own. When the page has been created, it must be defined in the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

For more information on how to search in EPiServer Commerce, refer to the *Search* section of this documentation.

Company Checkout

The **Company Checkout** page is used in the B2B scenario, and is similar to the B2C *check out page*.

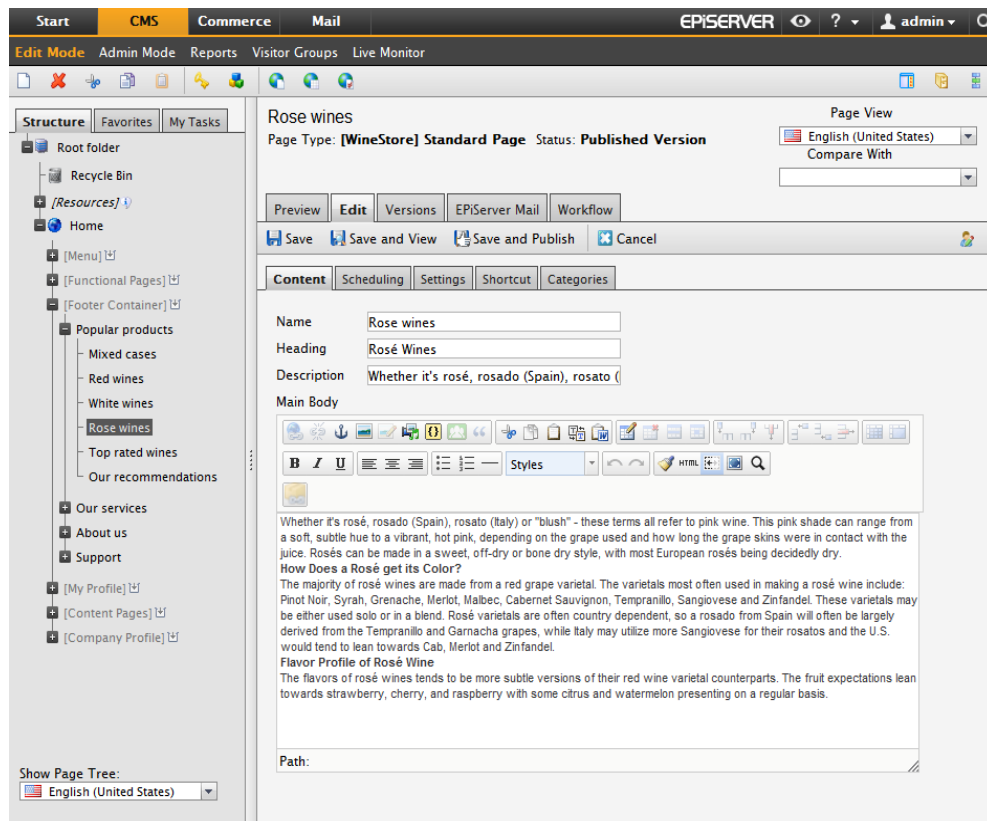


The **Company Checkout page** holds no information of its own. When the page has been created, it must be defined in the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

Standard Page

The page type **Standard Page** in EPiServer Commerce is used for creating an ordinary information page. On the sample site you will find it for example under the [Content Pages] and [Footer Container] sections of the page tree structure.

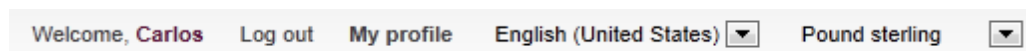
The page type is quite simple and contains a **Heading** and a **Description** field together with an editorial body. The editor toolbar contains the *Product Link tool* for creating links to products.



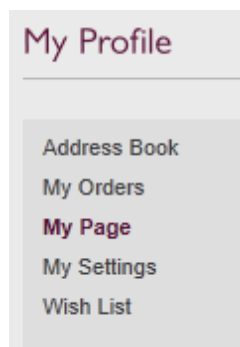
For more information on how to work with the editor field, refer to the user documentation for EPiServer CMS.

My Profile

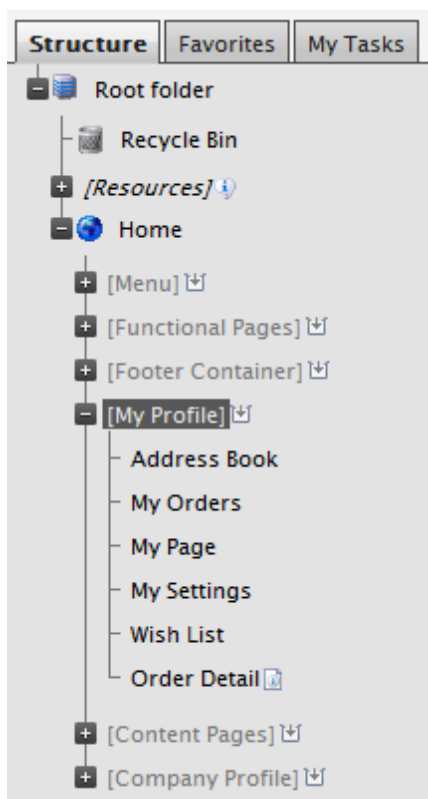
In the sample site, the personal user account related information is available from the **My profile** option at the very top of the page when the user is logged in.



The information is contained in a set of pages organized under the My Profile view.



The personal account related pages are stored under the **[My Profile]** container page in the page tree.



These pages are based on specific page types with functionality for extracting personal customer information from the customer management part of Commerce Manager. The page types hold no editorial information of their own. After they have been created, all the pages except Address Book must be defined in the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

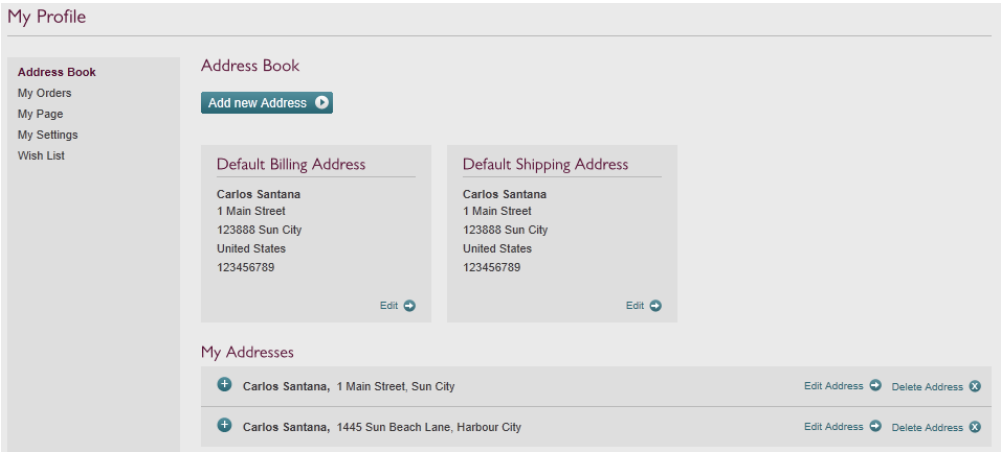
Address Book

The **Address Book** page holds functionality for adding, displaying and deleting address information for a user account. Multiple addresses can be added, and different shipping and billing addresses can be used. Specific addresses for billing and shipping can be set as default, and will be used in the checkout process.

New Address

Address Title	Home
First Name	Carlos
Last Name	Santana
Company	(Optional)
Email Address	carlos@somemail.com
Phone Number	123456789
Country	United States
Postcode	123888
Address Line 1	1 Main Street
Address Line 2	(Optional)
Town	Sun City
County	(Optional)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use as my Default Billing Address <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use as my Default Shipping Address	
<input type="button" value="Save"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

The address information is displayed as part of the information under *My Profile* for the user account.

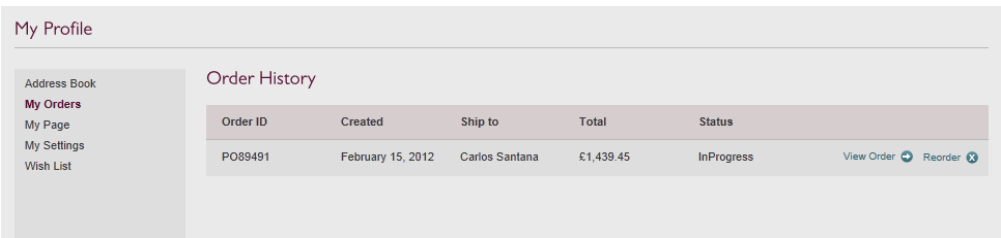


My Orders

The purpose of the **My Orders** page is to display the order history for a user account. The order information is collected from the customer management part of Commerce Manager, and is displayed as part of the information under *My Profile* for the user account.

The Order History overview displays the order ID number, creation date, receiver, and total order amount and status.

Clicking **View Order** will display further order details for the selected order. The options here are described in the *Order Detail* section. Clicking **Reorder** in the Order history view will initiate the creation of the exact same order.



The **My Orders** page holds no information of its own. When the page has been created, it must be defined in the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

My Page

The **My Page** page provides an overview of the personal account information, with user data and product reviews added by the user. The My Page information is displayed as part of the information under *My Profile* for the user account.

My Profile

Address Book
My Orders
My Page
My Settings
Wish List

Carlos Santana
Full Name: Carlos Santana
Email: carlos@somemail.com
[Edit settings](#)

Reviews

Avoid this!
Wednesday 15 February 2012
This should be avoided, particularly this batch, something went wrong here.
Posted in: France

Wonderful!
Wednesday 15 February 2012
This is a great wine, strongly recommended.
Posted in: France

[View all reviews](#)

Clicking **Edit settings** allows for editing of the account information. The settings here are described further in the *My Settings* section of this documentation.

Edit Account Information

Account details

Title: Mr
First Name: Carlos
Last Name: Santana
Email Address: carlos@somemail.com
Change Password ☐

Profile details

☒ I would like to receive newsletter and offers from Enoteca.com
☐ Please e-mail me offers from third party companies

[Save](#) [Cancel](#)

The **My Page** page holds no information of its own. When the page has been created, it must be defined in the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

My Settings

From the **My Settings** page a customer can update the user name, e-mail address and password for the account. From here it is also possible to sign up for newsletters and third-party information.

Edit Account Information

Account details

Title: Mr

First Name: Carlos

Last Name: Santana

Email Address: carlos@somemail.com

Change Password: ☐

Profile details

☒ I would like to receive newsletter and offers from Enoteca.com

☐ Please e-mail me offers from third party companies

Save **Cancel**

After creation the **My Settings** page must be defined in the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

Wish List

The **Wish List** page functionality displays product items in a personal wish list for a customer. The items are added to the list when the customer clicks on the **Wish List** option for a product.

£11.45

☒ Compare

Quantity: 1

Add to Wish list

Add to basket

The wish list itself is accessed when from the *My Profile* option at the very top of the page.

My Profile

Address Book
My Orders
My Page
My Settings
Wish List

Wish List

Masseto, Tenuta di Ornellaia Marchese Ludovico Antinori
★★★★★
The estate's 2007 Masseto is fabulous. Loads of black cherry, blackberry and cassis are intermingled with minerals, violets and French oak. This is an especially sensual Masseto that impresses ...
Quantity: 1 Add to basket Remove

L'Ermite, Alvaro Palacios
★★★★★
100% Garnacha in 2006, L'Ermite is made from 60-100 year old vines, farmed at 15 hl/hectare and then aged for 18-19 months in new French barrels. 2006 is the first time that the wine is made ...
Quantity: 1 Add to basket Remove

The **Wish List** page holds no information of its own. When the page has been created, it must be defined in the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

Order Detail

The **Order Detail** page displays order details for a selected order. The page is displayed when clicking **View Order** from the order history overview on the **My Orders** page under *My Profile*.

The information displayed includes contact details, address and payment information, shipping address and methods, product quantity and price, as well as the total order sum including taxes and any discounts. All of this is retrieved from Commerce Manager, and can only be viewed.

Order details - PO89491

Order number: PO89491
 Order Date: 2/15/2012 4:26:53 PM
 Order Email: carlos@somemail.com
 Status: InProgress

Billing Address

Carlos Santana
 1 Main Street
 123888 Sun City
 United States

Payment Information

Method(s):
 Pay By Phone (Processed)

Split Shipment - Part I

Name	Qty	Price	Total Discount	Total
Pulenta, La Flor, Sauvignon Blanc, Mendoza (Stelvin)	1	£9.45	£0.00	£9.45
Ch. d'Yquem, Sauternes	3	£410.00	£0.00	£1,230.00
Vieux Chateau Certan, Pomerol	1	£200.00	£0.00	£200.00

Shipping Address

Carlos Santana
 1 Main Street
 123888 Sun City
 United States

Shipping Method(s)

1 package via:
 Free delivery (2-3 days)

Subtotal £1,439.45 (exc. VAT)

Shipping & Handling £0.00 (exc. VAT)

Taxes (VAT) £0.00

Order discount -£0.00 (exc. VAT)

Total Order **£1,439.45**

Company Profile

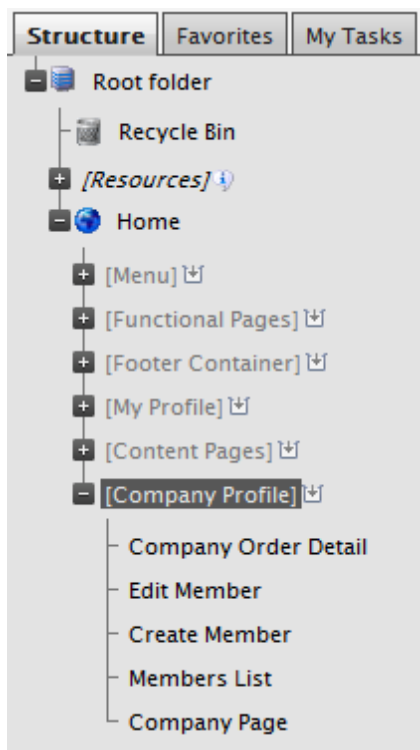
In the B2B scenario of the sample site, the **Company Profile** pages are used for displaying account information for a company with associated users. Through a company account, companies can add their employees as users, and deliveries can be shipped to multiple addresses.

As for users in a B2C scenario, the company account related information is available from the **My profile** option at the very top of the page for the company account **administrator** when this user is logged in.

Welcome, **Carlos** Log out **My profile** English (United States) ▼ Pound sterling ▼

The company information is displayed using the *Company Page* page type. Refer to the *Managing Company Accounts* section for more information on how to set up company accounts.

The company account related pages are stored under the **[Company Profile]** container page in the page tree.



These pages are based on specific page types with functionality for extracting company account information from the customer management part of Commerce Manager. The page types are only used for display and hold no editorial information of their own. After they have been created, all pages must be defined in the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

Company Page

The **Company Page** provides an overview of information related to a specific company. The page can be accessed by the company account **administrator** when logging in and selecting the **My Profile** option at the top of the page. If the user is a company account administrator, the Company Page will be displayed by default.

Company Profile

Members

- Mary Smith
Member Since: 23 Feb 2012
- Carlos Santana
Member Since: 23 Feb 2012
- Lisa Jones
Member Since: 19 Mar 2012

[Manage Members](#)

Members Latest Comments

Although is should be taken a little cooler than it actually says on teh bottle, be aware!
Carlos Posted In: Italy
Monday 19 March 2012

...try this out!
Carlos Posted In: Argentina
Wednesday 29 February 2012

[View All Reviews](#)

Company XYZ
Business Category: Food & Dining
Members: 3
[Edit Settings](#)

Orders

Monday 19 March 2012 PO28678	£378.00
Monday 19 March 2012 PO26407	£122.25
Monday 19 March 2012 PO15533	£233.38
Monday 27 February 2012 PO17865	£338.89

The page is built up of several sections. On the upper left side, a list of all **members** associated with the company account will be displayed. Selecting **Manage Members** here will display the *Member List page*, from where members and member information can be managed. In the lower left part, product **comments** and reviews added by members are listed.

The top main section displays company account information. Here, the **Edit Settings** option provides a possibility for the company account administrator to edit the account settings.

Edit Company Details

Company Name: Company XYZ

Business Category: Food & Dining

Orders

Monday 19 March 2012 PO28678
Monday 19 March 2012 PO26407

Settings that can be edited are the **Company Name** and the **Business Category** that it belongs to. Select **Save** to save the changes.

The middle part of the page displays a listing of **recent orders** for the company account. The order date, number, and total order sum is shown. Clicking an order number will display further order details using the *Company Order Detail page*.

The **Company Page** holds no information of its own. When the page has been created, it must be defined in the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

Company Order Detail

The **Company Order Detail** page displays order details for a selected order. The page is accessed when selecting an order in the **Orders** list of the *Company Profile overview page*.

Name	Qty	Price	Total Discount	Total
Ch. Suduiraut, Sauternes				2
				£28.00
				£0.00
				£56.00



The information here is read-only, it is not possible to update any order information from here.

The **Company Order Detail** page holds no information of its own. When the page has been created, it must be defined in the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

Members List

The **Members List** page provides an **overview of members** associated with the company account. The list is displayed when the company account administrator selects the **Manage Members** option in the left column of the *Company Profile overview page*.

From the **Members List**, the company account administrator can *create new members* associated with the account, *edit information for existing members*, and **delete** existing members from the account.

Member List			
Create a Member 			
	First Name	Last Name	
Carlos Santana	Carlos	Santana	Edit  Delete 
Lisa Jones	Lisa	Jones	Edit  Delete 
Mary Smith	Mary	Smith	Edit 



The company account administrator cannot be deleted from here, this information must be changed by an administrator in Commerce Manager.

The **Members List** page holds no editorial information of its own. When the page has been created, it must be defined in the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

Create Member

The **Create Member** page provides a possibility for the company account administrator to **add members** to be associated with the company account. The Create Member page can be accessed by the company account administrator by selecting the **Create a Member** option in the *Members List page*.

Company Profile

Create Members

Title

Ms

First Name

Lisa

Last Name

Jones

Email Address

lisa@somemail.com

Username

Lisa


Password


.....

(min 6 characters)

Confirm Password

.....

Save 

Cancel 

Enter information in all fields and click **Save** when done. The member will be added to the company account, and will be able to log in with the credentials provided.

The **Create Member** page holds no editorial information of its own. When the page has been created, it must be defined in the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

Edit Member

The **Edit Member** page provides a possibility for the company account administrator to edit the settings for an **individual member** of the company account. The Edit Member page can be accessed by selecting the **Edit** option in the *Members List page*.

The following information can be edited from here:

- **Personal information** for the company account member - name, e-mail address and resetting of the password. Click **Save** to update the changes.
- **Default billing and shipping addresses** used by the account member. Addresses can be edited and deleted, and the same information can also be updated by the individual member from the *User Profile pages*.

The **Edit Member** page holds no information of its own. When the page has been created, it must be defined in the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

Tools and Plug-ins

In this section we describe a number of tools and plug-ins for EPiServer Commerce. These are for example a plug-in for the EPiServer CMS Editor making it possible to select product details directly from the product catalog. The plug-ins described here are all included by default in the EPiServer Commerce sample site.

Product Link Tool

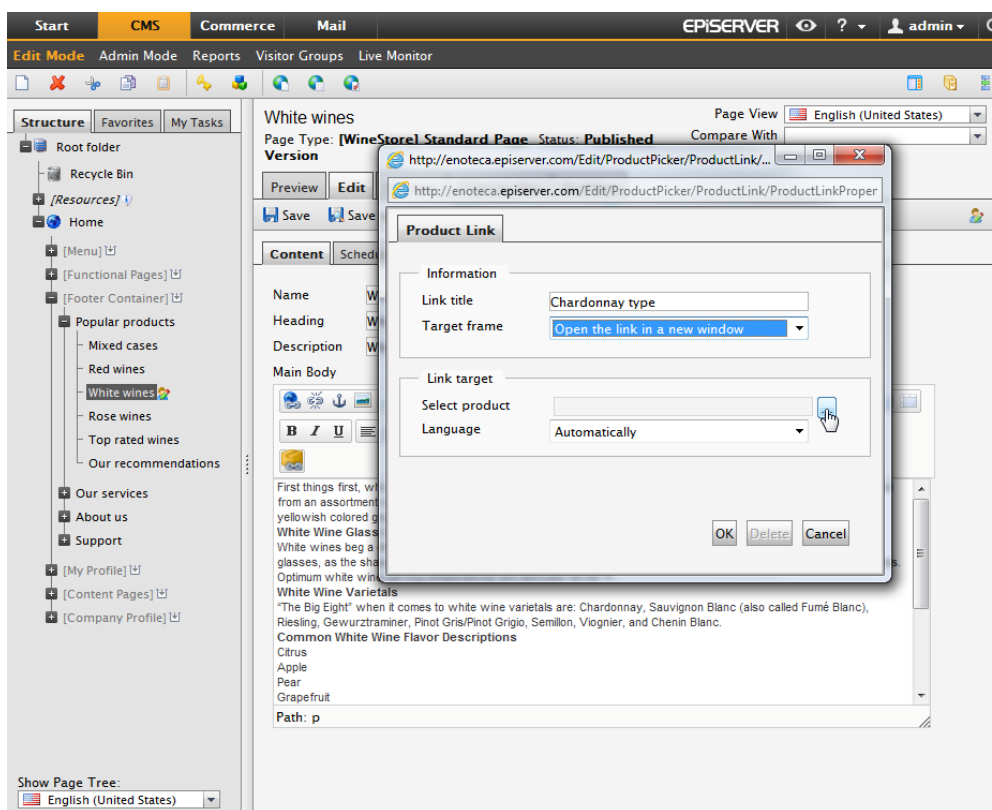
The **Product Link Tool** is a plug-in to the EPiServer CMS 6 Editor. The tool adds a new function to the toolbar allowing an editor to link content to products in the product catalog in Commerce Manager. When the link is clicked on, the visitor will be transferred to the product page "view mode" for that product.

Adding a Product Link

You can add product links to text, files or images in an EPiServer CMS page.

1. In **Edit** mode, select the text, files or images where you want to add a link to a product page in the product catalog.
2. Select the **Insert/edit Product Link** tool in the toolbar of the Editor.
3. When clicking the button in the **Select Product** field, the *product picker* dialog will open. When you expand the catalog tree on the left, related products will be displayed. You can browse the structure and select products. The product display can be sorted by clicking on product **ID** or **Name**. You can also search for a product by entering free text or product ID. Select a product in the list and click **Select**.
4. In the **Language** field you can choose to select the desired language version for the product page, or let the system decide by selecting **Automatically**.

5. Enter the details for the link such as title and target frame, just as you would for any link in EPiServer CMS. Click **OK**.
6. The product link will be displayed in the Editor.



EPiServer Commerce supports permanent links, meaning that when a product is renamed the URL will be remembered and will not be broken.

Editing a Product Link

1. Select the link and choose the **Insert/edit Product Link** tool in the toolbar. This will open the **Product Link** dialog.
2. Edit the link options as desired and click **OK** to save your changes.

Removing a Product Link

Select the link and click the **Unlink** tool in the Editor toolbar. This will remove the link from the selected text.



The tool buttons in the editor toolbar can be customized, for instance you can change the grouping and orders of the buttons. This is done from the EPiServer CMS administration interface and is described in the *Configuring the HTML Editor* section of the *EPiServer CMS user documentation*.

Product Dynamic Content

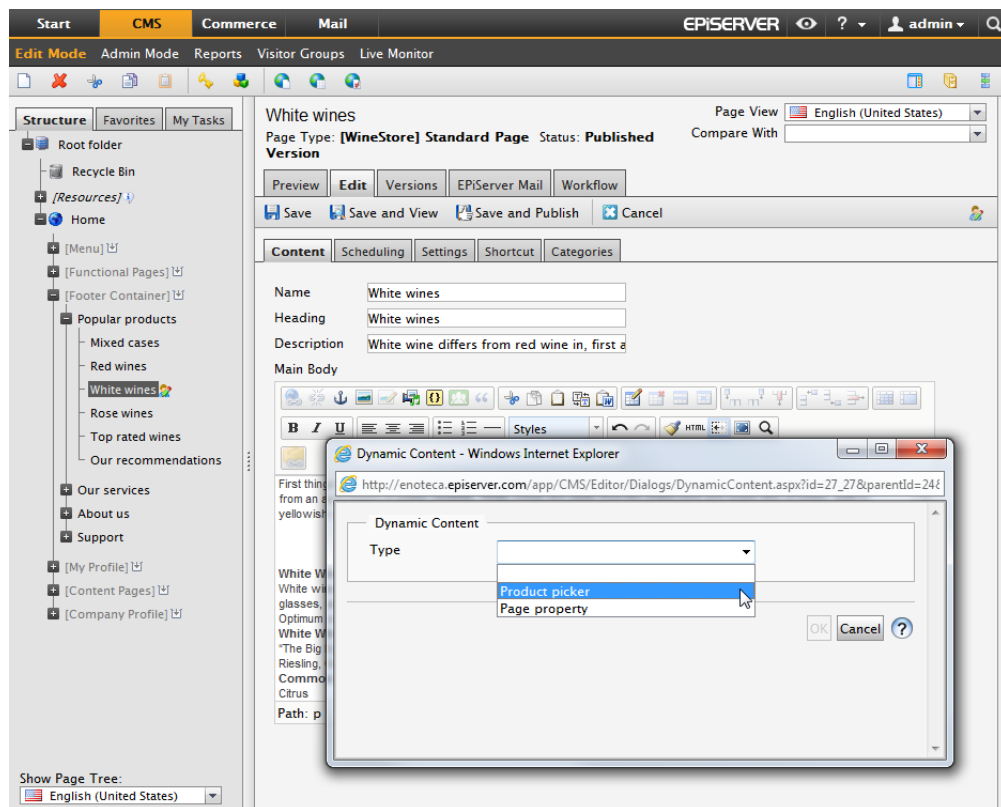
The **Product Picker Dynamic Content** function is used for displaying products as dynamic content. In Edit mode in EPiServer CMS, the editor can use the function to display product information from the prod-

uct catalog. This adds to the many possibilities with dynamic content, where you can reuse and display content in multiple places on the website, but will only need to update the information in one location.

Adding Product Information as Dynamic Content

Do the following to add product information as dynamic content to a page:

1. Open the page for editing in **Edit** mode and place the cursor in the editor where you want to add the information.
2. Select the **Dynamic Content** tool in the toolbar.
3. Select **Product picker** in the **Select plug-in** field. The product picker fields will appear in the **Settings** section.
4. In the **Select product** field, click the button to select a product from the Commerce Manager product catalog.
The *product picker* dialog will appear, and you can select a product or a product category by expanding the product category tree, or searching in the search field. Select the desired product and click **Select**.
5. The product display template is defined in the **Select display path** (can be changed here if needed).
6. Click **OK**. A dynamic content box will appear in the editor. Save your changes and view the result in preview or view mode.



You can also personalize dynamic content, and display customized information to different visitor groups. Find out more under the *Personalization* section.

Editing Dynamic Content for a Product

Do the following to edit dynamic content for a product:

1. Open the page for editing in **Edit** mode and place the cursor in the editor where you want to add the information.
2. In the dynamic content box, select the **Edit** option. The product picker dialog will appear, and you can select another product or product category. Click **OK** when done.
3. Save your changes and view the result in preview or view mode.

Removing Dynamic Content for a Product

Do the following to remove dynamic content for a product:

1. Open the page for editing in **Edit** mode.
2. Select the dynamic content box and press **Delete** on your keyboard.
3. Save your changes to the page.

Gadgets

A gadget is a small application which can be displayed on the **EPiServer OnlineCenter dashboard** for quick access. EPiServer OnlineCenter comes with a number of predefined gadgets, for example, viewing form postings and changed web pages, but there are also gadgets that are specific for each EPiServer product. Read more about gadgets in EPiServer OnlineCenter and how to use them, see the *EPiServer Web Help*.

You can use some of the gadgets in iPhone or iPad, see *EPiServer Mobile Center*.

You can also develop and customize your own gadgets to suit your needs, see the technical documentation on *EPiServer World*.

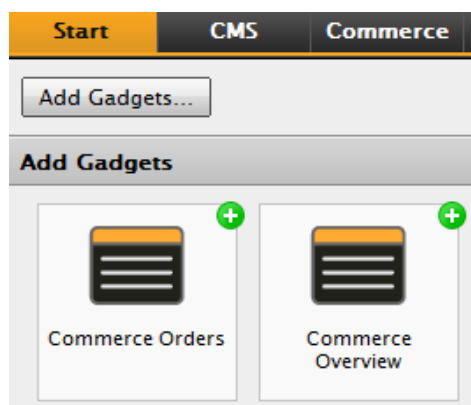
Gadgets that are specific for EPiServer Commerce are described in the following.

Commerce Orders Gadget

The **Commerce Orders** gadget displays orders statistics in the form of a sales graph and a list of purchase orders in a time interval of your choice.

Do the following to add and configure the Commerce Orders gadget:

1. Log on to EPiServer Commerce and select **Dashboard** in the right-click menu.
2. Select the **Dashboard** tab under which you want the gadget to appear.
3. Select **Add Gadgets** in top left corner of the dashboard, and then select the **Commerce Orders** gadget by clicking on it in the list. The gadget will be displayed on the dashboard. By default, it will be updated to display new data every 30 seconds.
4. To update the refresh interval, select **Edit** in the drop-down menu of the gadget, and enter a new time interval. Click **OK** to save your changes.



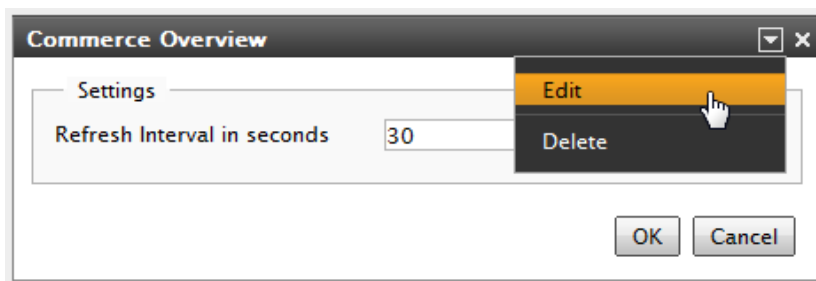
When the Commerce Orders gadget has been added to your dashboard, you will be able to easily monitor sales activities for your EPiServer Commerce website.

Commerce Overview Gadget

The **Commerce Overview** gadget shows sales data from the e-commerce system. The data is grouped by products, categories, orders, customers and promotions.

Do the following to add and configure the Commerce Overview gadget:

1. Log on to EPiServer Commerce and select **Dashboard** in the right-click menu.
2. Select the Dashboard tab under which you want the gadget to appear.
3. Select **Add Gadgets** in top left corner of the dashboard, and then select the **Commerce Overview** gadget by clicking on it in the list. The gadget will be displayed on the dashboard. By default, it will be updated to display new data every 30 seconds.
4. To update the refresh interval, select **Edit** in the drop-down menu of the gadget, and enter a new time interval. Click **OK** to save you changes.



When the Commerce Overview gadget has been added to your dashboard, you will be able to easily monitor sales data from your EPiServer Commerce website.

Comment Approval Gadget

Users logged on to the sample site can add **comments (reviews)** to products on the site. The **Comment Approval** gadget makes it possible for EPiServer Commerce administrators and editors to manage comments that are left by website visitors. This gadget provides an overview of the commenting status, and you can view, approve or delete comments from here.

Do the following to add and configure the Comment Approval gadget:

1. Log on to EPiServer Commerce and select **Dashboard** in the right-click menu.
2. Select the Dashboard tab under which you want the gadget to appear.
3. Select **Add Gadgets** in top left corner of the dashboard, and then select the **Comment Approval** gadget by clicking on it in the list. The gadget will be displayed on the dashboard.
4. By selecting **Edit** in the drop-down menu of the gadget, you can set the number of approval items to display, as well as the length of the description.
5. Click **OK** to save you changes. The gadget will be displayed on your dashboard.

Do the following to use the Comment Approval gadget:

1. Log on to EPiServer Commerce and select **Dashboard** in the right-click menu and select the Dashboard tab under which the **Approval** gadget is located.
2. You can chose to view all comments, or filter them according to their status - **Approved**, **Pending** or **Deleted**. Click **Refresh** to update the list if needed.

3. Select one or more comments for which you want to update the status, by clicking the checkbox to the left of each comment. Click the top left checkbox to select all comments displayed in the list.
4. Select the status you want to apply - **Approve**, **Mark Pending** or **Delete**. For instance, select **Approve** to approve the selected comments.

Comment Abuse Report Gadget

The **Comment Abuse Report** gadget makes it possible for EPiServer Commerce administrators and editors to manage comment abuse reports that have been created by website visitors. This gadget provides an overview of abuse reports, and you can remove selected comments from here.

Do the following to add and configure the Comment Abuse Report gadget:

1. Log on to EPiServer Commerce and select **Dashboard** in the right-click menu.
2. Select the Dashboard tab under which you want the gadget to appear.
3. Select **Add Gadgets** in top left corner of the dashboard, and then select the **Comment Abuse Report** gadget by clicking on it in the list. The gadget will be displayed on the dashboard.
4. By selecting **Edit** in the drop-down menu of the gadget, you can set the number of items to display, as well as the number of abuse reports to be displayed for each comment.
5. Click **OK** to save your changes. The gadget will be displayed on your dashboard.

Do the following to use the Comment Abuse Report gadget:

1. Log on to EPiServer Commerce and select **Dashboard** in the right-click menu and select the Dashboard tab under which the **Comment Abuse Report** gadget is located.
2. Select the comments you want to manage by clicking the checkbox to the left of each comment. Click the top left checkbox to select all comments displayed in the list.
3. Click **Remove Comment** to remove the comment. Select **Ignore** to leave the comment without any actions.

Commerce Settings for CMO Gadget

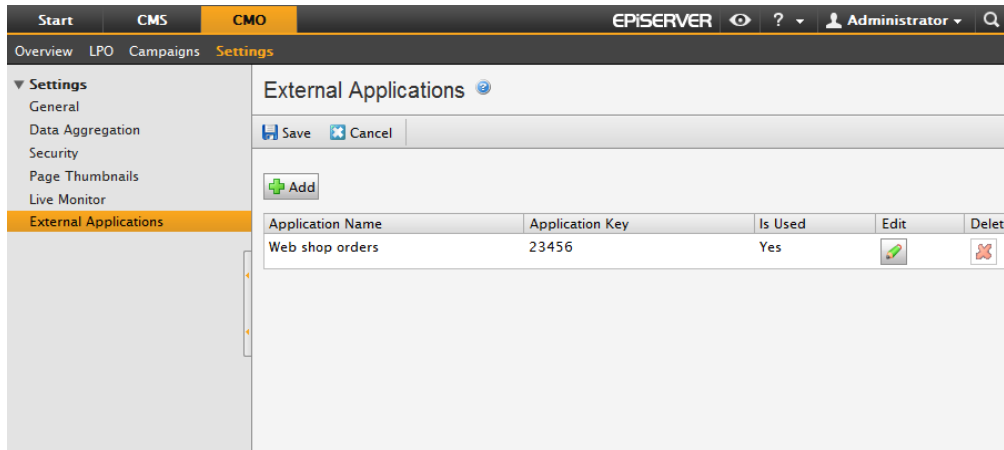
With **EPiServer Campaign Monitor and Optimization (CMO)** you can measure and monitor campaigns on your website and optimize your landing pages. EPiServer CMO provides a simple way to analyze campaigns and landing pages, rather than whole sites. Find out more about EPiServer CMO in the user documentation on world.episerver.com.

EPiServer CMO can also be used for monitoring activities on an EPiServer Commerce site. You can for instance monitor the number of views or orders for a specific product or product category. The logging of Commerce KPI data is supported using the **Generic KPI** function in CMO. The number of orders is an example of a generic KPI. This allows for external applications such as Commerce to send notifications using a specific application key. The application names and keys are defined in EPiServer CMO, which will then listen for incoming notifications with these specific key values, and collect and store the data.

The following procedure applies when setting up the integration between CMO and Commerce:

- Set up the web services to be used by EPiServer CMO and the corresponding URL to be used.
- Define the external applications, their application names and keys, in EPiServer CMO.
- Define the product views and/or product orders you want to monitor, using the EPiServer Commerce Settings for CMO gadget. Here you will need the application keys and the URL for the CMO Web Services.
- In EPiServer CMO, create a campaign and add the generic KPI for EPiServer Commerce.
- EPiServer Commerce will update the KPI value using web services.

- The monitoring result will be displayed on the campaign report page in CMO, or by using the **CMO KPI Summary** gadget for EPiServer Commerce on the site that has the EPiServer CMO service installed.



The collected data for EPiServer Commerce is defined in the EPiServer OnlineCenter using the **Commerce settings for CMO gadget**, as described in the following.



To use this gadget you need to have both EPiServer CMO and EPiServer Commerce installed on your website.

Adding the Commerce Settings for CMO Gadget

When you add and configure this gadget, you can choose to monitor activities for a selection of product(s) or order(s).

Do the following to add and configure the CMO gadget for EPiServer Commerce:

1. Open the EPiServer OnlineCenter for your website(s) and select **Add Gadgets**.
2. Click on the **Commerce setting for CMO** gadget to add it to your dashboard.
3. Click **Add** to define the monitoring parameters.
4. Select **Type**, choose either **Product View** or **Product Order**. The Product View will define views of a product or all products under a specific category (node). The Product Order will define orders for one selected product or all orders of products under a specific category (node).
5. In the **Product/Category** field, choose a product or a category by selecting an option in the tree structure on the left hand, and click **Search** in the area to the right. Select a product in the search list and click **Select**. Or, you can select an entire category (node). You can also search directly for a product name or ID. Click **Select** to add your selection.
6. In the **Application Key** field, enter the application ID (defined in EPiServer CMO).
7. In the **URL for CMO Web Service** field, enter the URL to be used by CMO for the web service (defined in EPiServer CMO).

Editing Commerce Settings for the CMO Gadget

Do the following to edit a set of settings for the CMO Gadget:

1. Open the EPiServer OnlineCenter Dashboard, and navigate to the **Commerce settings for CMO** gadget.
2. Click the **Edit** icon for the settings you want to edit.

3. Update the settings information, please refer to the section about adding the Commerce settings for CMO gadget.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes.

Deleting Commerce Settings for the CMO Gadget

Do the following to delete the settings for the CMO Gadget:

1. Open the EPiServer OnlineCenter Dashboard, and navigate to the **Commerce settings for CMO** gadget.
2. In the check box to the left, select the set of settings you want to delete.
3. Click the **Delete** button and click **OK** to confirm.

Faceted Navigation

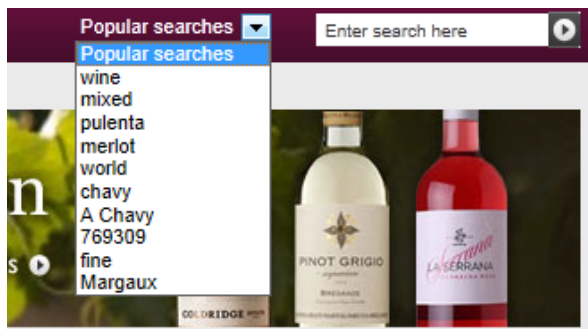
Faceted navigation is a feature allowing user to quickly navigate through many kinds of filters in product listing, for instance color, price range or taste. The faceted navigation feature is available on the EPiServer Commerce sample site when selecting "Wine" or "Mixed cases" in the main menu.

The screenshot displays the EPiServer Commerce sample site's faceted navigation interface. The top navigation bar includes 'Home', 'Wine', and 'Mixed Cases'. The 'Wine' tab is active, showing a breadcrumb trail: 'Home » Wine » Italy'. On the left, a sidebar titled 'Currently Shopping By' shows a price filter (£10-£20) and a 'Browse Wines' section with expandable filters for Color, Style, Closure, Grape mix, Alcohol, and Taste. The 'Grape mix' filter is expanded, listing various grape varieties with their counts. The main product listing area shows 'There are 30 product(s) found'. Two product cards are visible: 'Derthona, Colli Tortonesi, La Colombera, Piedmont' priced at £15.35 and 'Barbera d'Alba, Cru Serraboella, Az. Agr. Cigliuti, Piedmont' priced at £19.25. Each card includes a product image, a star rating, a 'Gilla' social media button, a description, and action buttons for 'Compare', 'Quantity' (set to 1), 'Add to Wish List', and 'Add to Basket'.

The product listing in the main area will be filtered based on the selections done by the user in the left menu. This offers a powerful way of guiding the user to the desired products in the product catalog. The faceted navigation can be easily customized through configuration, refer to the EPiServer Commerce Developer Guide for more information.

Tag Cloud Management




"Tags" are words describing the content of a website. Tags can be displayed in "tag clouds" to provide a visual depiction of what's popular on a site. In EPiServer Commerce tags are used to provide a list of popular searches generated by users when searching for a product on the site. The search tags are displayed under the **Popular searches** part of the main menu. Selecting a word in the list will display products where the specific search tag applies to the product description..



The EPiServer Commerce sample site comes with a **tag cloud plugin** for managing the tag cloud. This is accessed from the **Action Window** of EPiServer CMS. From the **Tag Cloud Management** section in the Action Window, you can manage the tag cloud list items, and perform tasks such as updating the name and hit count for a tag, or delete a tag.


Listing tag cloud items




























1. In EPiServer CMS Edit mode, open the **Action Window**.
2. In the Action Window, click **Tag Cloud Management**. A list of existing tag cloud items will be displayed.

EPISERVER  ?  admin 

Action Window Hide

Search for tag:

  Search

Name ▲	Hits	Delete	Edit
769309	1		
A Chavy	1		
barolo	1		
bordeaux	1		
chavy	1		
dry	1		
fine	1		
fruity	1		
Margaux	1		
merlot	4		
mixed	4		
pulenta	4		
riesling	1		
sauterns	1		
wine	5		
world	3		

Sorting the tag cloud list

The tag cloud list can be sorted by tag name or by hit count. Click column headers **Name/Hits** to sort in ascending or descending order.

Searching for a tag

To search for an existing tag, enter part of or the full tag name, in the **Search for a tag** field at the top of the tag list.

Updating a tag

To update a tag, click the **Edit** symbol next to the tag in the tag list. You can change the tag name and you can update the hit count number for the tag. Click **Save** to update the changes. Note that each tag must have a unique name.

Deleting a tag

To delete a tag, click the **Delete** symbol next to the tag in the tag list. Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.

Personalization

The personalization feature in EPiServer CMS allows you to create adapted content that will be displayed to targeted **Visitor Groups**. Based on user information collected when visitors access your website, different content will be shown to different visitor groups of your choice. You can for instance display different content to first time visitors and returning visitors on your website. The personalization feature is described in detail in the *user documentation for EPiServer CMS*.

The EPiServer Commerce sample site features a number of predefined visitor group criteria customized for an e-commerce site where you want to adapt content based on products and order information. Visitor groups can be applied to the various content on your EPiServer Commerce site, thus creating a personalized website visitor experience.

The visitor groups and their associated personalization criteria can be accessed by clicking **CMS** in the global menu, and then selecting **Visitor Groups** in the submenu displayed. Or, you can right-click in View mode and select **Visitor Groups** in the EPiServer CMS right-click menu.

The personalization criteria for EPiServer Commerce are available under **Commerce Criteria** when you click **Add** to define visitor groups for your site. The various criteria can then be dropped into the configuration area.

The predefined **personalization criteria** for EPiServer Commerce are described in more detail in the following.

Customer Properties Criteria

With the **Customer Properties** criteria you can personalize content based on for instance age and geographic location.

Personalize content based on the following information (select from drop-down list):

- **Date of Birth** - define an age range by entering a from/to date. Select a date in the calendar or enter a date directly in the field (default format mm/dd/yyyy).
- **Customer group** - select one of the existing groups Customer, Partner or Distributor.
- **Registration source** - enter the source of registration in free text format.

- **Country** - select a country from the list.
- **Region code** - select a region code based on the address region in addresses.
- **Address postal code** - based on state selected, select a postal code from the list.
- **State** - select a state from the list.



Only one property type with a related value can be selected for a criterion, but several Customer Properties criteria can be defined for a Visitor Group.

Order Frequency Criteria

With the **Recent Orders** criteria you can identify customers that have placed an order in the store "X" times in the last "Y" days.

Personalize content based on the following information:

- **Order times** - select the number of times an order has been placed.
- **Number of days** - select the number of days.

Product in Cart or Wish List Criteria

With the **Products in Cart or Wish List** criteria you can identify shoppers that have placed a product of a certain type or brand in their cart or on their wish list.

Personalize content based on the following information:

- **Specified product code** - enter the desired product code in free text format.
- **Product from a specified category** - select the desired product category from the list.
- **Product has a specified property and value** - enter the desired product property and value, for instance "brand" and "Sony".



Only one property type with a related value can be selected for a criterion. However, you can add several criteria of the type "Products in Cart or Wish List" to a Visitor group.

Recent Orders Criteria

With the **Recent Orders** criteria you can personalize content for visitors that have placed an order on the site in the last "X" days.

Personalize content based on the following information:

- **Number of days** - select the number of days.

Total Spent Criteria

With the **Total Spent** criteria you can personalize content for visitors that have spent "X" amount of money (in a specified currency) on the site in the last "Y" days.

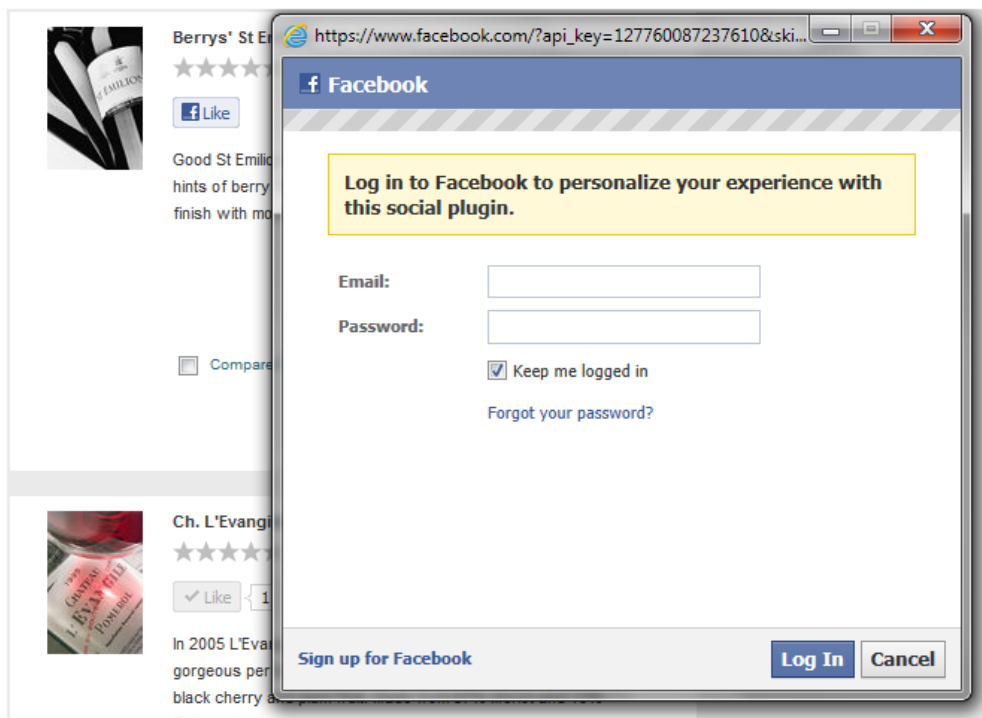
Personalize content based on the following information:

- **Spent at least** - select amount and currency.
- Select **number of days**.

Social Features

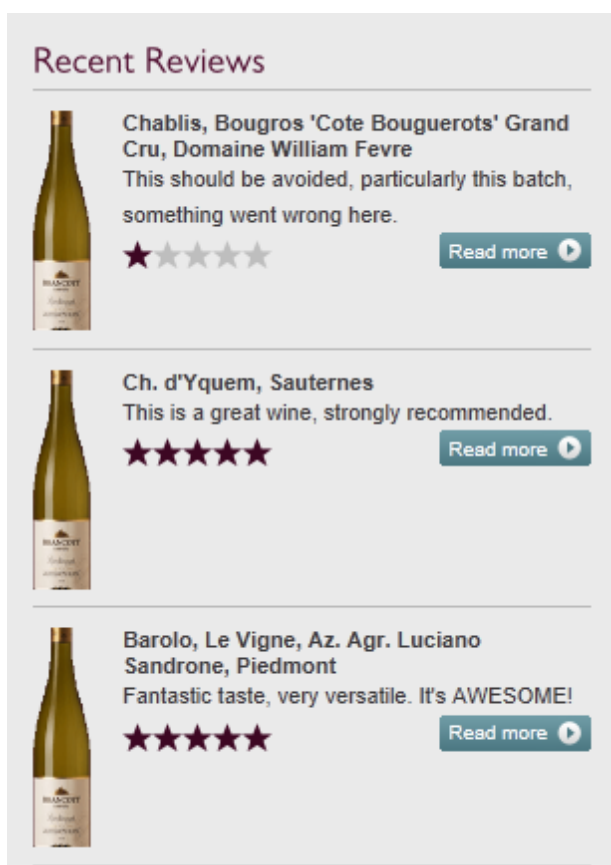
Facebook Integration

The EPiServer Commerce sample site has a built-in Facebook integration, allowing users to share "likings" of any product in the product catalog. This is a powerful way to promote the marketing of products in one of the largest social community networks.



Reviewing and Commenting

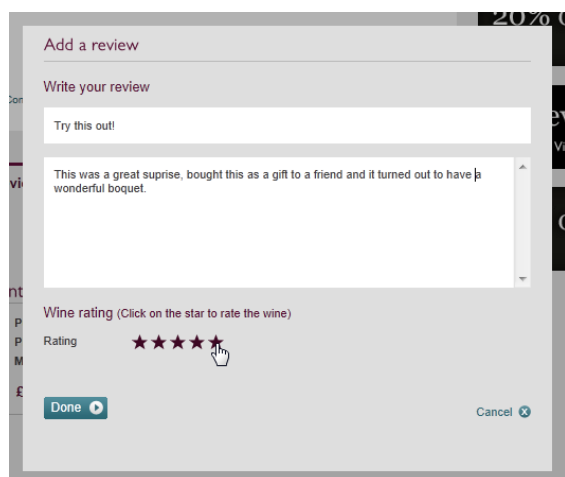
Customers that are logged on to the EPiServer Commerce sample site have the possibility to add **product reviews** by providing comments and rate the products. The resulting reviews are displayed for instance in the right-hand section of the page, as well as for each product.



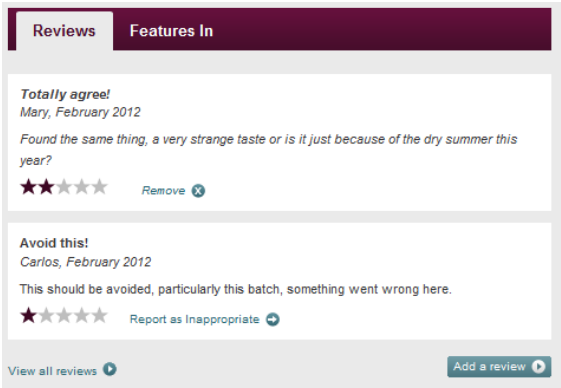
The reviews will be displayed to all visitors to the site regardless of whether they are logged on or not. Only the three latest reviews will be displayed at the same time, with the possibility to see all reviews if desired.

Adding Comments

When selecting a product, there will be an **Add a review** option available where a comment can be added as well as a rating (1-5). A user can rate a product, but only once. The average score of the ratings will be displayed as the rating for that product.



Logged on users can remove **their own comments** using the **Remove** option.



Approving comments

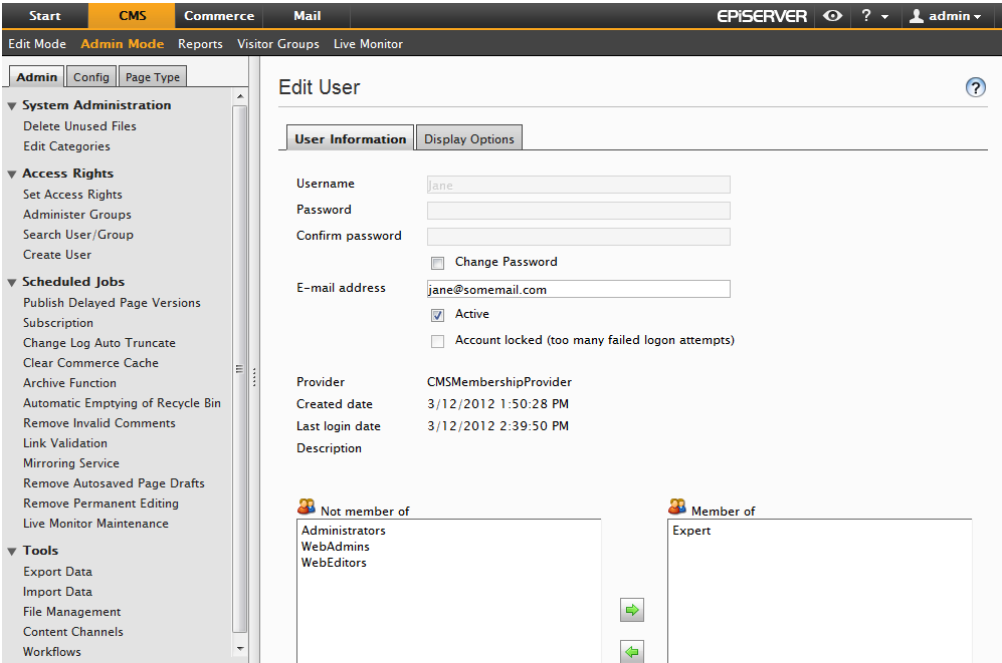
The sample site is configured so that comments added will receive status "pending" and must be approved by the site administrator before they are made visible to others on the site. The approval is done from the dashboard using the *Approval Gadget*. Commerce Manager administrators can see the status for each comment, and remove all comments, from the display for each product.

Abuse reporting of comments

When logged on to the website, you can abuse report comments that others have posted for a product. This is done using the Report as Inappropriate option on the review section for a product. Site administrators can then monitor inappropriate content using the *Abuse Gadget* on the dashboard. When a comment is reported as inappropriate, it will generate an item in the list of abuse reports for the site administrator to manage.

Experts

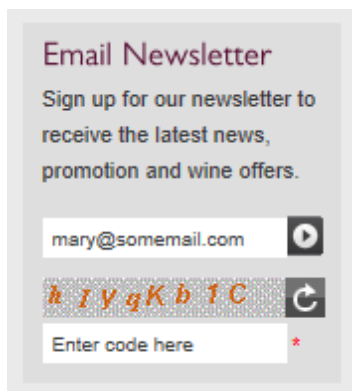
The EPiServer Commerce sample site includes functionality for **assigning experts** to be involved in rating and reviewing of products. An expert is someone with thorough product knowledge and trusted by the community. From the Admin mode in EPiServer CMS, website administrators can assign the "Expert" role to registered users on the site. Expert's reviews will be highlighted and will appear in the top of review list.



Newsletters


The EPiServer Commerce sample site has a newsletter feature based on EPiServer Mail. Visitors to the website can sign up for newsletter subscriptions. Editors can create newsletter pages using EPiServer CMS, and then distribute them using the mailing functionality in EPiServer Mail. For more information on these features, refer to the user documentation for these products.


The various sample page templates contain functionality for signing up for newsletters. Visitors do not have to register to receive newsletter, and the EPiServer Commerce sample site uses strong **captcha** functionality for challenge-response testing in order to prevent website attacks.



Email Newsletter

Sign up for our newsletter to receive the latest news, promotion and wine offers.

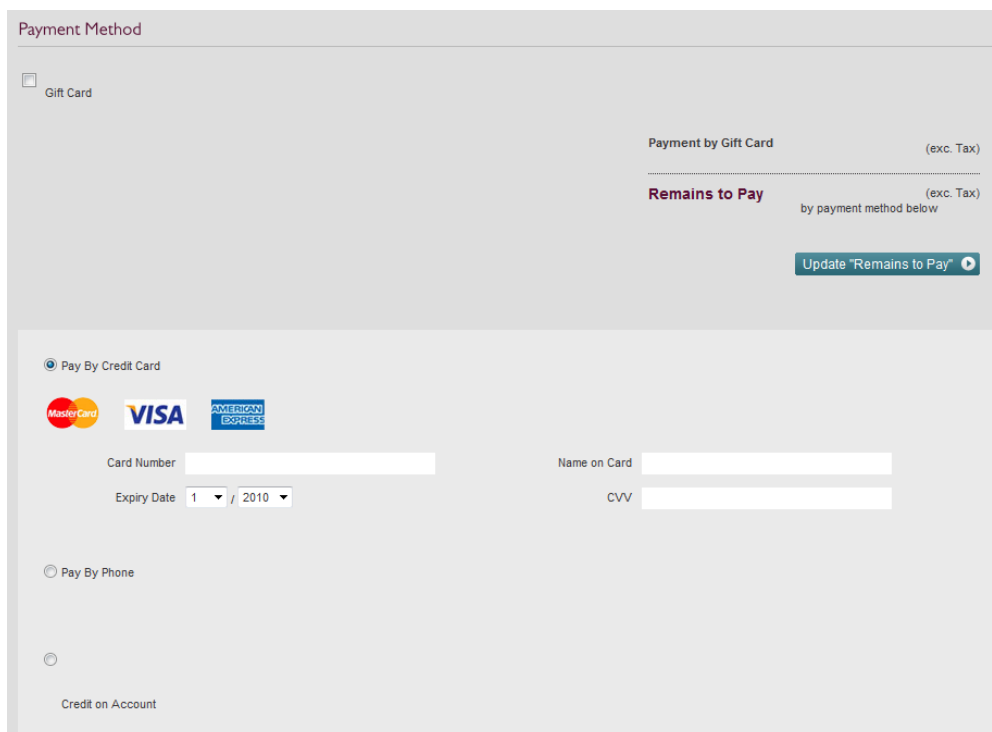
mary@somemail.com 

h I y q K b 1 C 

Enter code here *

Payment Providers

EPiServer Commerce is a flexible platform allowing you to use many of the most popular payment providers within e-commerce. There are a number of payment solutions for different markets available "out-of-the-box" for EPiServer Commerce. Some are installed automatically with the EPiServer Commerce sample site, and some are available as separate modules.




Payment Method




☐ Gift Card

Payment by Gift Card (exc. Tax)

Remains to Pay (exc. Tax)
by payment method below

[Update "Remains to Pay"](#) 

☒ Pay By Credit Card

Card Number

Expiry Date / 2010

Name on Card

CVV

☐ Pay By Phone

☐ Credit on Account

Payment Providers Available with the Sample Site

When you install the EPiServer Commerce sample site, the payment provider options listed below will be included by default:

- **Pay with Gift Card**- payment using gift card of certain values and types.
- **Pay by Credit Card** - payment using the most common credit cards.
- **Pay by Phone** - payment method where payment is done by phone.
- **Credit on Account** - credit payment option for a company account.

The following sections of this documentation briefly describes the user functionality for the various payment methods available. Refer to the *EPiServer Commerce Developer Guide* for more information on how to configure and customize the different payment methods.

Gift Card

The **Gift Card** payment provider is available by default in a standard installation of the EPiServer Commerce sample site. This option allows for purchases using gift cards with certain values. When the **Gift Card** option is checked, the customer can enter the card number and security code for the gift card to be used.

The screenshot shows a checkout page with the 'Payment Method' section. The 'Gift Card' option is selected with a checked checkbox. Below it, there are input fields for 'Card number' (containing '123444555') and 'Security code' (containing '159'). To the right, there is a summary section showing 'Payment by Gift Card (exc. VAT)' and 'Remain to pay (exc. VAT)' with the subtext 'By one payment method below'. At the bottom right of this section is a button labeled 'Update remain to pay' with a circular arrow icon.

The associated gift card value will be calculated, and when clicking Update remain to pay, the total remaining order sum will be calculated.

Gift cards are defined in Commerce Manager under Customer Management. Refer to the *Gift Card Administration* section for more information. Refer to the EPiServer Commerce developer documentation for more information on how to configure the different payment providers available.

Pay by Credit Card

The **Pay by Credit Card** payment provider is available by default in a standard installation of the EPiServer Commerce sample site.

This widely used payment option is used for managing payments for the major credit card providers. The customer enters credit card details such as card number, expiration date, card name and CVV (Card Verification Value) number. The system verifies the card information, and the payment transaction is carried out.

Refer to the EPiServer Commerce developer documentation for more information on how to configure the different payment providers available.

Pay by Phone

The **Pay by Phone** payment provider is available by default in a standard installation of the EPiServer Commerce sample site. This payment method makes it possible to manage payments over telephone.

Refer to the EPiServer Commerce developer documentation for more information on how to configure the different payment providers available.

Credit on Account

The EPiServer Commerce sample site has functionality for adding company accounts in a B2B scenario. The checkout procedure for company accounts includes by default the **Credit on Account** payment method, where businesses can pay using company account credit. Refer to the EPiServer Commerce developer documentation for more information on how to configure the different payment providers available.

Scheduled Jobs

A scheduled job is a service performing a specific task that can be executed repeatedly at a given time interval or when an administrator manually executes it. When installing EPiServer Commerce there will be a few scheduled jobs added to your website, that are specifically needed for Commerce functions. These scheduled jobs are administered from the EPiServer CMS administration interface, and are briefly described in the following sections.

For more detailed information about the EPiServer CMS administration interface, refer to the user documentation for EPiServer CMS.

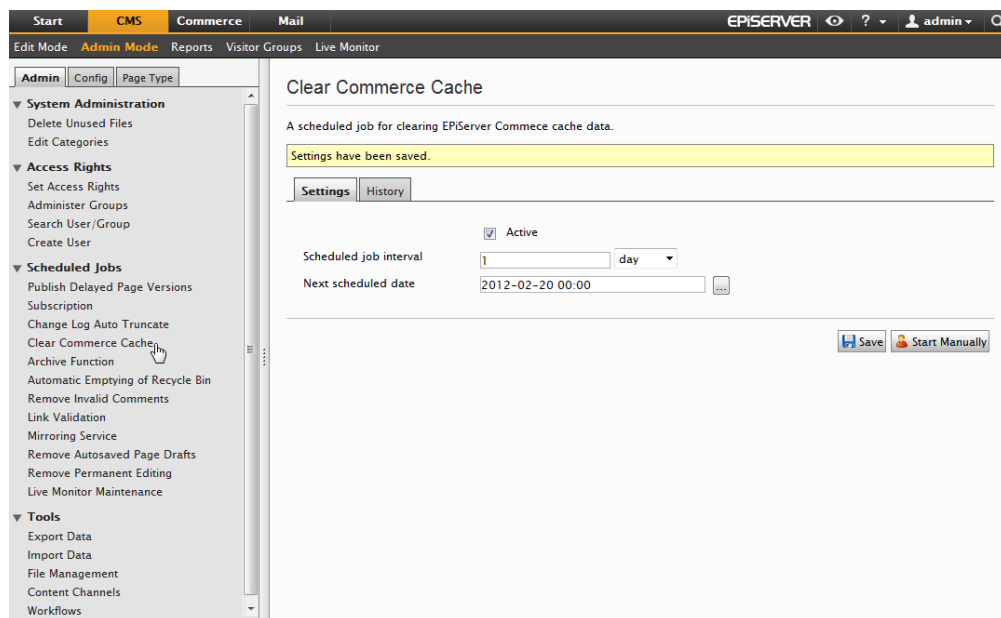
Clear Commerce Cache

When working with EPiServer Commerce and for instance importing or deleting a product catalog, it will be necessary to clean the runtime cache in order to make the website up to date. This is done using a scheduled job which is managed from the EPiServer CMS administration interface. The scheduled job can be executed repeatedly at given time intervals, or manually.

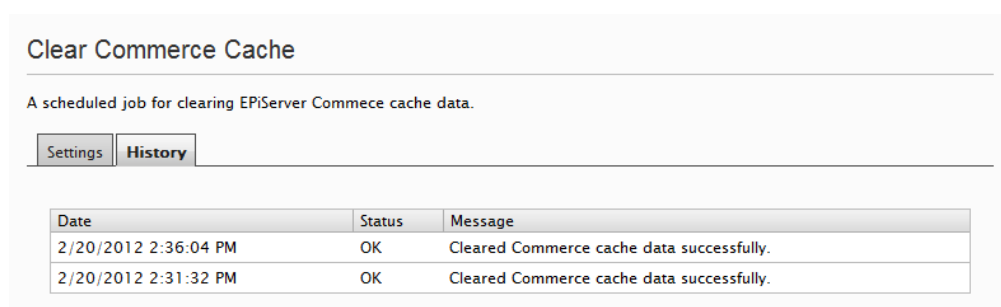
To find out more about how to work with product catalogs, please refer to the *Catalog Management section* in this documentation.

Do the following to manage the **Clear Commerce Cache** scheduled job:

1. Login as an administrator and navigate to the EPiServer CMS **Admin mode**.
2. Select **Clear Commerce Cache** under the **Scheduled Jobs** section of the **Admin** tab.
3. Check the **Activate** check box to activate the scheduled job.
4. If you want to run the scheduled job manually, click **Start Manually** and the job will be executed.
5. If you want the scheduled job to be run automatically, set the desired time interval in the **Scheduled job interval** field.
6. The time when the scheduled job will be run the next time will be displayed in the **Next scheduled date** field.
7. Click **Save** to save your changes.



Under the **History** tab, you can monitor the status and results when the scheduled jobs have been executed.



To verify that the cache has been cleared, you need to **refresh** the catalog display pages.

Remove Invalid Comments

In EPiServer Commerce it is possible for customers to review a product and add comments about it. When a product is deleted and no longer available in the system, it is also recommended to remove comments associated with the deleted product in order to maintain system accuracy. This is done by the **Remove Invalid Comments** scheduled job from the EPiServer CMS administration interface. The scheduled job can be executed repeatedly at given time intervals, or manually.

Do the following to manage the **Remove Invalid Comments** scheduled job:

1. Login as an administrator and navigate to the EPiServer CMS **Admin mode**.
2. Select **Remove Invalid Comments** under the **Scheduled Jobs** section of the **Admin** tab
3. Check the **Activate** check box to activate the scheduled job.
4. If you want to run the scheduled job manually, click **Start Manually** and the job will be executed.
5. If you want the scheduled job to be run automatically, set the desired time interval in the **Scheduled job interval** field.

6. The time when the scheduled job will be run the next time will be displayed in the **Next scheduled date** field.
7. Click **Save** to save your changes.

Remove Invalid Comments

A scheduled job for removing invalid comments.

Settings History

☒ Active

Scheduled job interval: 1 day

Next scheduled date: 2012-02-21 00:00

Save Start Manually

Under the **History** tab, you can monitor the status and results when the scheduled jobs have been executed.

Remove Invalid Comments

A scheduled job for removing invalid comments.

Settings **History**

Date	Status	Message
2/17/2012 3:52:03 PM	OK	[Missing text /WineStore/admin/plugins/removecommentjob/successmessage for en]
2/17/2012 3:51:27 PM	OK	0 comments were removed.

